

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

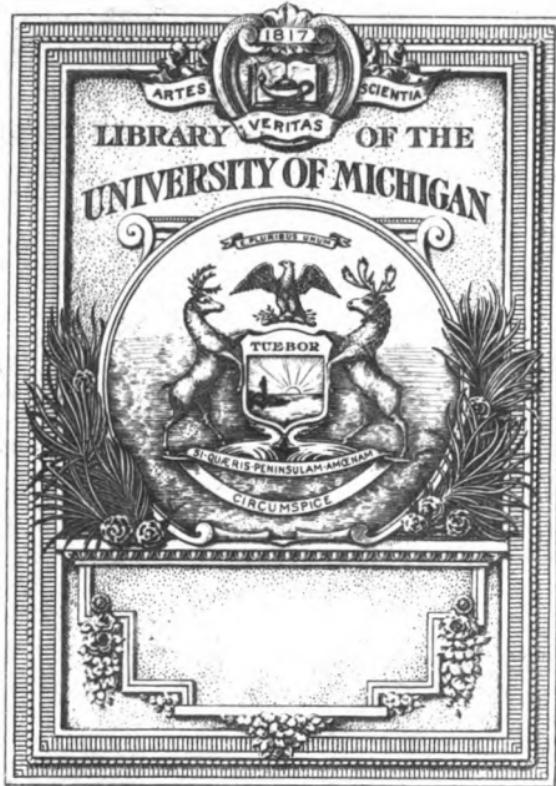
<http://books.google.com>



A  
Introduction  
TO  
HERALDRY  
BY HUGH CLARK

*An introduction to heraldry*

Hugh Clark, Thomas Wormull



BEQUEST OF  
MRS. JAMES HUNTLEY CAMPBELL

CR  
23  
.C 59  
1854

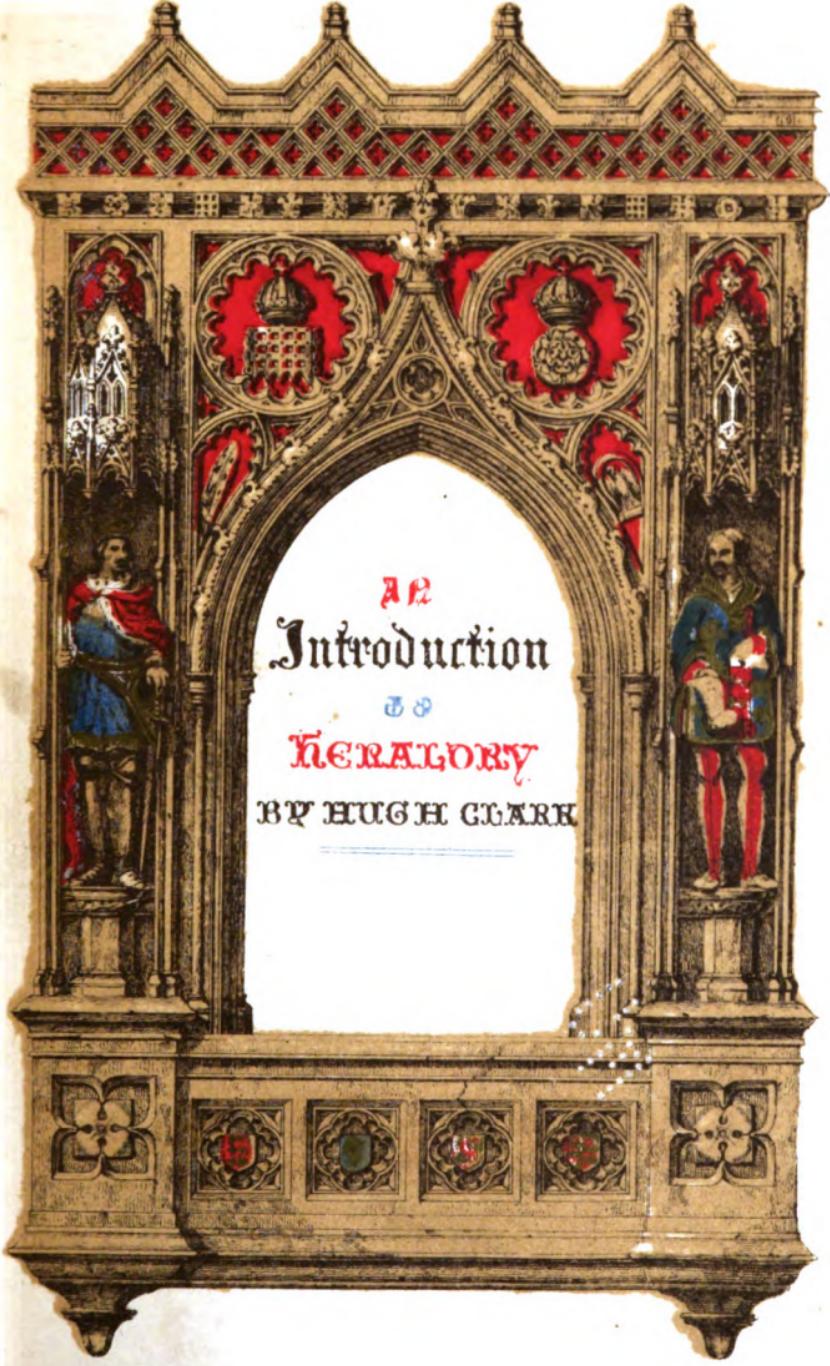






## **INTRODUCTION TO HERALDRY.**

१८



A  
Introduction  
TO  
HERALDRY  
BY HUGH CLARK



AN  
INTRODUCTION  
TO  
**H E R A L D R Y :**  
CONTAINING  
THE ORIGIN AND USE OF ARMS ;  
RULES FOR BLAZONING AND MARSHALLING COAT ARMOURS ;  
THE ENGLISH AND SCOTTISH REGALIA ;  
A DICTIONARY OF HERALDIC TERMS ;  
ORDERS OF KNIGHTHOOD, ILLUSTRATED AND EXPLAINED ;  
DEGREES OF THE NOBILITY AND GENTRY ;  
TABLES OF PRECEDENCY, ETC.  
TITLES AND DUTIES OF THE GREAT OFFICERS OF STATE ;  
AND OF THE  
OFFICERS OF THE COLLEGE OF ARMS, ETC.  
AND A NEW CHAPTER ON HERALDRY AS IN CONJUNCTION WITH  
ARCHITECTURE.



EMBELLISHED WITH FORTY-EIGHT ENGRAVINGS,  
ILLUSTRATIVE OF UPWARDS OF ONE THOUSAND EXAMPLES, INCLUDING THE  
ARMS OF NEARLY FIVE HUNDRED DIFFERENT FAMILIES.

BY HUGH CLARK.

—

---

THE FIFTEENTH EDITION.—IMPROVED AND ENLARGED.  
THE EIGHTY-FIRST YEAR OF PUBLICATION.

---

LONDON :  
HENRY WASHBOURNE & CO., IVY LANE,  
PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLIV.

LONDON :  
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

Bequest of Mrs. Jane  
Huntington Campbell  
1-20-32

## PREFACE.

---

THE design of the following pages is to arrange the rules of Heraldry, on a concise but comprehensive plan ; so that the result shall convey at once entertainment and instruction. From the intricate and voluminous character of some works on this subject, and the very scanty information to be gleaned from others, many who have attempted the study of this interesting art have desisted from the prosecution of their inquiries, in despair of ever acquiring proficiency in a science apparently so elaborate. An attempt is here made to compress the most useful materials, gleaned with great labour from costly and (to most persons) inaccessible works, within the space of a volume of moderate size and price, and to treat the subject, in all its details, in the most simple and intelligible manner.

The "points of the escutcheon," with which every learner should be perfectly acquainted, are first discriminated ; then follow *partition lines, metals,*

*colours, ordinaries, and their diminutives, charges, &c.*; whence the work proceeds *gradatim* to *blazonry*, and the *marshalling of coat-armour*; the whole illustrated by upwards of a THOUSAND examples, neatly engraved.

Plates A to J, in which the theory of the art of blazonry is reduced to practice (the engraved examples giving the coats-armorial, and the text their proper blazon), may be selected as particularly useful to the student; and a most valuable adjunct, as a source of ready reference, will be found in the "Dictionary of Technical terms," which is arranged alphabetically, and occupies a large portion of the volume with information at once indispensable and interesting.

As an "Introduction" to the study of Heraldry, this work has now been patronised by the public for the long period of *upwards of seventy years*; in the course of which, and especially since it has been under the control of the present publisher, it has been much improved, by frequent augmentation and amendment, the re-engraving of some of the Plates, and the addition of others. To initiate the youthful student, or curious inquirer, in the rudiments of a science which was the invention and delight of former days, connected with the spirit of chivalry,

and the proudest achievements of the noble and the great, is still the distinguishing characteristic of this volume ; yet it has other recommendations : these will be found in the various articles on the Orders of Knighthood, English and Scottish Regalia, Titles of Honour, and Degrees of Nobility in England ; the titles and duties of the great Officers of State, and of the Royal Household, the account of the Kings of Arms, and other officers of the College of Arms, &c. ; all of which additions have been grafted from time to time on the original design, and contribute to render the volume a useful appendage to the library, as well as an “Introduction to Heraldry.”

The present edition has been carefully revised by an experienced editor, and an additional Chapter on Heraldry in Conjunction with Architecture, &c., made to it ; and every endeavour has been used to render it deserving of a continuance of public favour.

---

NOTE.—Any suggestions for further improvement or correction will be acceptable, and, if possible, acted upon.

## REFERENCE TO THE PLATES.

---

TABLE 1	is on page	14	PLATE C	faces	page	44
2 faces . .	15		D	.	.	47
3 . . .	17		E	.	.	49
4 . . .	18		F	.	.	50
5 . . .	20		G	.	.	52
6 . . .	23		H	.	.	53
7 . . .	25		J	.	.	54
8 . . .	27		K	.	.	67
9 . . .	29		Regalia 1	.	.	209
10 . . .	31		2	.	.	211
PLATE A . . .	40		3	.	.	212
B . . .	42		4	.	.	214

**KNIGHTHOOD, Plate 1, faces page 224.**

" " 2, " " 232

" " 3, " " 234

The Plates from No. 1 to 22, end of the volume.



### ABBREVIATIONS USED IN REFERENCE TO THE PLATES.

T. refers to the *Tables*—P. to the *Plates* A to K, and  
No. 1 to 22—N. to the numbers of the different divisions upon  
each plate.

N.B.—*The Escutcheon of Pretence in the centre of the Royal Arms, (see Regalia, Plate 4, page 214,) containing the Arms of Hanover, is now omitted.*

## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE	
<b>ALPHABETICAL LIST OF HERALDIC TERMS, IN ENGLISH, FRENCH, AND LATIN . . . . .</b>	<b>194</b>	
<b>ARCHITECTURE AND HERALDRY . . . . .</b>	<b>69</b>	
<b>ARMS, THE USE OF . . . . .</b>	<b>1</b>	
<b>ARMS, ASSUMPTIVE . . . . .</b>	<b>10</b>	
<b>ARMS OF ALLIANCE . . . . .</b>	<b>11</b>	
<b>ARMS OF ADOPTION . . . . .</b>	<i>ib.</i>	
<b>ARMS OF A BACHELOR . . . . .</b>	<b>58</b>	
<b>ARMS OF A BISHOP . . . . .</b>	<b>60</b>	
<b>ARMS OF A BARONET . . . . .</b>	<b>61</b>	
<b>ARMS OF A COMMONER AND LADY . . . . .</b>	<i>ib.</i>	
<b>ARMS OF COMMUNITY . . . . .</b>	<b>10</b>	
<b>ARMS OF CONCESSION . . . . .</b>	<b>12</b>	
<b>ARMS, CANTING . . . . .</b>	<b>13</b>	
<b>ARMS OF DOMINION . . . . .</b>	<b>9</b>	
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND TWO WIVES</b>	}	57
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND THREE WIVES</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND FOUR WIVES</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND FIVE WIVES</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND SIX WIVES</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A HUSBAND AND SEVEN WIVES</b>	}	59
<b>ARMS OF AN HEIRESS AND CO-HEIRESS . . . . .</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A KNIGHT OF THE GARTER AND LADY MARRYING A COMMONER . . . . .</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A DOWAGER OR MAIDEN LADY . . . . .</b>		
<b>ARMS OF A MAID . . . . .</b>		
<b>ARMS OF PATRONAGE . . . . .</b>	10	
<b>ARMS OF PRETENSION . . . . .</b>	9	
<b>ARMS PATERNAL AND HEREDITARY . . . . .</b>	11	

*b*

	PAGE
ARMS QUARTERLY . . . . .	60
ARMS ROYAL . . . . .	209
ARMS OF SUCCESSION . . . . .	10
ARMS OF A WIDOW . . . . .	57
ARMS OF A WIDOW AND HEIRESS . . . . .	58
ARMS OF A WIFE AND TWO HUSBANDS . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
BADGES . . . . .	64
BARONETS . . . . .	237
BARONS . . . . .	222
BATH, ORDER OF THE . . . . .	230
BISHOPS . . . . .	220
BLAZONING, RULES OF . . . . .	34
BLAZONING OF ANIMALS . . . . .	36
BLAZONING OF BIRDS . . . . .	37
BLAZONING OF CHARGES . . . . .	35
BLAZONING OF HEAVENLY BODIES . . . . .	38
BLAZONING OF FISHES . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
BLAZONING OF ORDINARIES . . . . .	35
BLAZONING OF MAN AND HIS PARTS . . . . .	39
BLAZONING OF TREES AND VEGETABLES . . . . .	38
BORDERS . . . . .	20
CHAMBERLAIN OF THE HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	264
CHARGES . . . . .	24
CHARGES, THEIR VARIOUS HERALDIC TERMS . . . . .	28
COLLEGE OF ARMS . . . . .	260
COLOURS . . . . .	15
COMPTROLLER OF THE HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	266
CREST . . . . .	64
CROWNS . . . . .	69
CRUSADES . . . . .	5
CROSSES . . . . .	23
DICTIONARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS . . . . .	78
DISTINCTIONS OF HOUSES . . . . .	38
DUKE . . . . .	216
EARL . . . . .	218
EARL MARSHAL . . . . .	257

	PAGE
ESCUTCHEON, DESCRIPTION OF . . . . .	13
ESCUTCHEON, POINTS OF THE . . . . .	14
ESQUIRES . . . . .	239
EXTERIOR ORNAMENTS OF THE ESCUTCHEON . . . . .	62
FURS . . . . .	16
GARTER, KING OF ARMS . . . . .	261
GARTER, ORDER OF THE . . . . .	224
GARTER, GENTLEMEN PENSIONERS, BAND OF . . . . .	267
GENTLEMAN . . . . .	241
GREAT OFFICERS OF STATE AND ROYAL HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	253
GROOM OF THE STOLE . . . . .	265
HANOVERIAN GUELPHIC ORDER . . . . .	233
HATCHMENTS, EXPLANATION OF . . . . .	67
HELMETS . . . . .	62
HERALDS' COLLEGE, AND HERALDS . . . . .	260
HERALDRY IN CONJUNCTION WITH ARCHITECTURE . . . . .	69
KING . . . . .	200
KNIGHTHOOD, ORDERS OF, IN ENGLAND . . . . .	224
KNIGHTHOOD, LIST OF ORDERS OF, WITH ABBREVIATIONS	235
KNIGHTS BANNERETS . . . . .	237
KNIGHTS BACHELORS . . . . .	238
LION KING OF ARMS . . . . .	262
LORD HIGH TREASURER . . . . .	254
LORD CHAMBERLAIN . . . . .	255
LORD HIGH CONSTABLE . . . . .	257
LORD STEWARD OF THE HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	264
LORD HIGH STEWARD . . . . .	253
LORD ALMONEE . . . . .	266
LORD CHANCELLOR . . . . .	253
LORD PRESIDENT OF THE COUNCIL . . . . .	254
LORD PRIVY SEAL . . . . .	ib.
LORD HIGH ADMIRAL . . . . .	262
MANTLING . . . . .	62
MARQUIS . . . . .	218
MARSHALLING . . . . .	56
MASTER OF THE HORSE . . . . .	265

	PAGE
MOTTO . . . . .	65
NOBILITY AND GENTRY, THE DIFFERENT DEGREES . . . . .	216
ORDINARIES . . . . .	18
PARTITION LINES . . . . .	17
PRECEDENCY . . . . .	245
PRECEDENCY OF MEN, TABLE OF . . . . .	248
PRECEDENCY OF WOMEN, TABLE OF . . . . .	251
PRINCE OF WALES . . . . .	215
PRIVILEGES OF PEERS . . . . .	223
PRIVY COUNCIL . . . . .	263
PURSUIVANTS . . . . .	260
QUEEN . . . . .	204
REGALIA OF ENGLAND . . . . .	209
REGALIA OF SCOTLAND . . . . .	213
ROYAL ARMS AND STYLE . . . . .	206
RULES OF BLAZONING . . . . .	34
SECRETARIES OF STATE . . . . .	263
ST. PATRICK, ORDER OF . . . . .	232
SUPPORTERS . . . . .	65
THISTLE, ORDER OF THE . . . . .	232
TINCTURES AND FURS . . . . .	15
TOMBS AND MONUMENTS . . . . .	6
TOURNAMENTS . . . . .	3
TREASURER OF THE HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	265
ULSTER KING OF ARMS . . . . .	262
VISCOUNT . . . . .	220
WREATH . . . . .	63
YEOMAN . . . . .	243
YEOMEN OF THE GUARD . . . . .	266

## An Introduction to Heraldry.

---

THE study of Heraldry has been regarded by many as unprofitable, dry, and unentertaining :—but in this light it should not be viewed ; for, on the least inquiry into its origin and intent, it will be found, in many respects, essential to the antiquary and historian, and particularly to those who seek correct information respecting the history of their country, or love to trace the genealogical root of the tree from which they spring, and to revert with pride to the noble deeds of their progenitors, the memory of which has been handed down from generation to generation by those symbolical marks of honour and distinction which this work is designed to illustrate.

---

### THE USE OF ARMS.

The use of arms, or armorial bearings, as distinguishing marks, national or military, is undoubtedly of very remote antiquity. The necessity of some distinguishing ensign in war appears to have suggested, in very early ages, the adoption of symbolical devices. Hence originated the distinctive emblems for the regulation of armies : and hence the shield, helmet, back and breast-plates, and surcoats worn

over them, colours and standards, representations on shields, &c., served to distinguish chiefs and commanders from each other, and to render them conspicuous to those under their command, which, without some such peculiarities, could not have been effected, as their persons were obscured by the armour they wore.

There can be no doubt that emblems, very similar to the armorial bearings of the present day, have been used from time immemorial, both in war and peace. The shields of ancient warriors, and the devices on coins and seals, which have descended to us, bear a direct resemblance to modern blazonry. But the general introduction of such bearings into Europe, as hereditary distinctions, must be attributed in part to Tournaments, and in part to the Crusades. (See those titles respectively.)

It is observable that the ancients, for the most part, made choice of lions, tigers, dragons, and horrible chimeras; or of such animals, &c., as foxes, owls, and serpents, as might be supposed to be fit representatives of cunning, stratagem, or wisdom: such assumptions being obviously designed to indicate the possession of similar qualities by the bearers. The goat, which is made by Daniel the emblem of the Macedonian empire, was, it seems, the sign depicted on the standard of that people. An eagle was the symbol of ancient Rome, and the standard of Persia was an eagle displayed on a shield. The owl distinguished the state of Athens; a sphynx, Chios; a pegasus, Corinth, &c. Sir John Ferne says, "The first soueraigne that ever gave coate of armes to his soldiers was King Alexander the Great, who, after the manner of his auncestors, desirous to exalt by some speciall meanes of honour his stoutest captaines and soldiers above the rest, to provoke them to encounter their enimies with manly courage, and by the advice of Aristotle, he gives unto the

most valiant of his armies certain signes or emblemes, to be painted upon their armours, banners, and pennons, as tokens for their service in his wars."

#### TOURNAMENTS.

Tournaments, Joustings, Tiltings, &c., were honourable exercises, formerly used by all persons of note who desired to gain reputation in feats of arms, from the king to the private gentleman. The word tournament is derived from *tourner*, a French word (to run round), because to be expert in these military exercises, much agility, both of man and horse, was requisite, in riding round a ring, or in turning with rapidity and precision.

Their manner of assembling was thus:—Time and place being appointed, challenges were sent abroad for such as desired to signalise themselves at the lists; and appropriate rewards being prepared for the victorious, a great concourse assembled from all parts. It was the custom of those who went to these exercises to be in complete military equipment, with arms on their shields and surcoats, and caparisons on their horses; their esquires riding before them, carrying their tilting-spears with their pennons of arms attached; with the helmets, to be worn in the exercise, adorned with wreaths of silks, of the tinctures of their arms and liveries, and surmounted with their crests.

When tiltings or tournaments were proclaimed, two shields were hung upon a tree at an appointed place; and he that offered to fight on foot signified as much, by touching the shield suspended by the right corner; whilst, on the contrary, he who chose rather to exercise on horseback touched that which hung by the left. It was judged more honourable to fight on foot than on horseback.

While the lists destined for the tournaments were preparing, the armorial shields of those who designed

to enter the lists were exhibited through the cloisters of some neighbouring monasteries. It was the ancient custom to carry the coats of arms, helmets, &c., into the monastery before the tournaments began; and to offer up at the church, after the victory was gained, the arms and the horses with which they had fought. The former was done that they might be viewed by the lords, the ladies, and the young gentlewomen, to satisfy their curiosity; and a herald, or pursuivant at arms, named to the ladies the persons to whom each belonged; and if, amongst these pretenders, there was found any one of whom a lady had cause to complain, either for speaking ill of her, or for any other fault or injury, she touched the helmet or the shield of these arms to demand justice, and signifying that she recommended her cause to the judges of the tournaments. These, after having gained the necessary information, were to pronounce sentence; and if the crime had been judicially proved, the punishment followed immediately.

When a knight, &c., came near the barriers where the joustings were to be held, he blew a horn or trumpet, at which the herald's attendant came forth and registered his name, armorial bearings, and other proofs of his nobility; from whence came Heraldry, or the Art of Blazon, which signifies a regular description of arms in their proper terms; the word blazon, it is observable, being derived from the German *blatzen*, to blow a horn.

The two contenders on horseback being admitted at separate barriers, mounted on the ablest horses, after performing the usual ceremonies, and paying their respects to the sovereign, judges, and ladies, took their respective stations; and being thus in readiness, when the trumpets sounded, both at the same time couched their lances, and, spurring their horses, ran fiercely one against the other, in such a manner that the point of their spears, lighting upon

each other's armour, gave a terrible shock, and generally flew in pieces.

If neither party received any damage, they usually ran three heats, which was accounted very honourable ; but if a man was beaten off his horse, shaken in the saddle, let fall his lance, lost any piece of his armour, or hurt his adversary's horse, he was considered as disgraced.

These tournaments first began in Germany, in the tenth century, and were afterwards very generally practised through Europe. They contributed essentially to the more general use of armorial bearings, as heraldic distinctions, from the various and fanciful devices with which the champions of these feats of chivalry were arrayed and distinguished.

#### CRUSADES.

The second grand occasion of the advancement of heraldry was the croisades, or crusades, which were expeditions to the wars in the Holy Land against the infidels, begun in the year 1096, and terminating about the year 1270. These expeditions, in which, at three distinct periods, Europe was embodied in arms against the Saracens, were so named from the French *croisades* (of the Latin *crux*, French *croix*, a cross), because it was in defence and for the propagation of Christianity that they were undertaken. Sovereigns, nobles, knights, gentlemen, and persons of all ranks and conditions, vied with each other in the martial ardour and religious enthusiasm, which prompted them to join in what was deemed a holy warfare, and what appeared to open a path to glory here, and happiness hereafter ; for it was undoubtedly the belief that all who were slain in such a cause received immediately the reward of martyrdom. Millions enlisted, and for distinction's sake, most of the adventurers assumed new heraldic devices, previously unknown in armorial ensigns, such as alle-

rions, bezants, scallop-shells, martlets, &c. (see Dictionary of Terms), but more especially crosses, of an infinite variety of colour and shape. It was the second crusade, in 1147, in which the English were more prominently concerned ; and most antiquaries refer to that period for the introduction of armorial bearings into this country. It is certain, at least, that they had never previously been so general, or so well regulated. About the year 1189, they were usually depicted on a small escutcheon, and worn at the belt ; and the reign of Richard I. is said to supply the earliest instance of their being borne upon an ordinary shield, though, from their being found upon *seals* so early as the seventh and eighth centuries, there seems reason to question the conclusion. The presumption appears to be, that Heraldry, like most known inventions, was introduced and established gradually ; and that, after being vague and unsettled for many ages, the feudal system contributed to its adoption, and tournaments and the crusades methodised and perfected its application and use.

#### TOMBS AND MONUMENTS

Are closely connected with, and in many cases comprised within the cognisance of, the science of Heraldry ; for, as it is the part of heralds to range men in their due stations, and to appoint them their proper coats of arms, whilst living, so it belongs to them to regulate what ceremonies are to be observed at their funerals, and what memorials erected to them, after their death. The most ancient, and even the most barbarous nations, paid this honour to the deceased, considering it as an incentive to others to perform glorious actions, and a respect indispensable to be paid to him who had been an example of virtue whilst surviving in this world.

Nisbet says, it was a custom of those Romans who were *Nobiles* to have the statues of their ancestors

made of wood, brass, marble, &c., and sometimes in wax, painted on the face, to represent their likeness, and dressed according to their quality; if they had been consuls, with the *prætexta*, or long white robe edged with purple; if *censors*, their robes were purple; if they had triumphed, their habits had gold flowers: they were likewise adorned with the *fasces*, or bundle of rods, their axes, and other marks of their magistracy, and the spoils taken from the enemy. These statues were kept in their courts, in a cabinet of wood; upon solemn days the cabinets were set open, and the statues ornamented and set out to view, in the court, just before the porch or gate, that the people might behold their merit and bravery; and when any of the family died, the statues of their ancestors were not only so exhibited, but they were also carried before the corpse at the funeral, as ensigns of nobility.

Of all nations, none exceeded the Romans in the magnificence of their monuments; all the great roads about their city were adorned with costly structures; for they did not then bury in their temples, reserving them only for the service of their gods; nor was it the custom to bury in churches until some centuries after the Gospel had dispelled the darkness of idolatry. In process of time, the practice of entombing in churches began to prevail: and then all families of note appointed the place of repose for themselves and their successors, and erected stately monuments adorned with figures, coat-armour, and epitaphs. That there might be some distinctive marks between the several persons so interred, the ancients established certain rules, which were observed upon such occasions.

Kings and princes, however they died, were represented on their tombs in their armour, with their escutcheons, crowns, crests, supporters, and all other marks of royalty.

Knights and gentlemen could not have their effigies after that manner, unless they lost their lives in battle, or died within their own lordships.

Those who died in battle, of the victorious party, were represented with their swords naked, the points upward, on the right side, and their shields on the left, with their helmets on their heads.

Those who died prisoners, were represented on their tombs without spurs, helmet, or sword.

Such as died in battle on the vanquished side, were represented without their coat over their armour, their swords in the scabbard, their vizors lifted up, their hands joined on the breast, and their feet resting on a *dead lion*.

The son of a general, or governor of a stronghold, if he died when the place was besieged, was represented in complete armour, his head resting on a helmet instead of a pillow.

If a gentleman had served in armies during most part of his life, and in his old age became a religious man, he was represented in the lower part in complete armour, and above in the habit of the order he had professed.

If a gentleman, or knight, who had been killed in single combat, had a monument, he was to be in complete armour, with his battle-axe out of his arms lying by him, and his left arm crossed upon his right.

On the contrary, the victor was led in triumph to the church to give thanks to God; and when he died he was represented on his tomb armed at all points, his battle-axe in his arms, with his right arm across over the left.

If any person had been accused of treason, murder, rape, or of being an incendiary; instead of being honourably interred, he was treated in the vilest manner, his arms broken, and his body dragged on a hurdle, and cast out to be devoured by the fowls of the air, or hung upon a gallows.

Every person has now assumed to himself the right to erect what monument he pleases, and to place thereon any figures, and in whatever posture he likes best ; but the above examples may suffice to show what was the ancient practice ; many proofs of which are to be found in churches, &c., at this day.

Arms, being placed upon the fronts and other parts of noble and ancient seats, show travellers to whom they formerly belonged, and oftentimes whose they at present are : painted windows inform us also who were the founders and benefactors of ancient abbeys, churches, and other religious houses ; also of colleges, as those in our two famous Universities ; and other public buildings, such as hospitals, alms-houses, &c., so frequent in our kingdom.

#### ARMS OF DOMINION

Are those which emperors and kings constantly bear, and which, being annexed to their territories to express their authority and power, are stamped on their coins, and displayed on their colours, standards, banners, coaches, seals, &c.

#### ARMS OF PRETENSION

Are those of kingdoms, provinces or territories, to which a prince or lord pretends to have some claim, and which he therefore adds to his own, although they be possessed by some other prince or lord. Thus, the kings of England quartered the arms of France with those of England from the year 1330 (when Edward III. laid claim to that kingdom, as son to Isabella, sister of Charles the Handsome, who died without issue) till the year 1801, although at the latter date all pretensions to France on the part of England had long ceased. On the union of this kingdom with Ireland, the arms of France were first omitted, and the ensign of Ireland inserted in their

stead. In like manner Spain quarters the arms of Portugal and Jerusalem ; and Denmark those of Sweden.

#### ARMS OF COMMUNITY

Are those of bishoprics, cities, universities, academies, societies, companies, and other bodies corporate.

#### ASSUMPTIVE ARMS,

Now disused, were such as a man assumed of his proper right, with the approbation of his sovereign and of the king of arms. In the days of chivalry, according to Sir John Ferne, it was considered lawful that the victor, upon making captive any gentleman or warrior of higher degree than himself, might assume the shield of arms of his prisoner ; and the acquiring of coat-armour by such feats of valour was esteemed highly honourable.

#### ARMS OF PATRONAGE

Are, in one sense, such as governors of provinces, lords of manors, patrons of benefices, add to their family arms, as a token of their superiority, rights, and jurisdiction ; in another, they are part of the arms of such lords, assumed by and added to the paternal arms of persons holding lands in fee under them. Thus, as the earls of Chester bore garbs, many gentlemen of the county bore the same ensign ; and numerous instances of this kind of bearing may still be adduced in England, Scotland, and indeed in most parts of Europe.

#### ARMS OF SUCCESSION

Are those taken up by such as inherit certain lands, manors, &c., either by will, entail, or donation ; which they impale or quarter with their own arms.

## ARMS OF ALLIANCE

Are such as (when heiresses marry into families) are taken up by their issue, to show their descent paternal and maternal ; and by this means the memory of many ancient and noble families, extinct in the male line, is preserved and conveyed to posterity ; which is one of the principal reasons of marshalling several coats, pertaining to distinct families, in one shield.

## ARMS OF ADOPTION

Are those which a man takes from another family to be quartered with his paternal ones ; for instance, the last of a family may by will adopt a stranger to possess his name, estate, and arms, and thereby continue the name and grandeur of his family in the world after his decease. If the adopted stranger be of more noble blood and family than the adopter, he is not obliged by the testament to disuse his own name or arms ; but if he be inferior, he must abandon his own name, as also his proper arms, unless he will marshal them after the arms of the adopter. The present custom for persons adopted, is to apply to the sovereign for a special warrant to empower them to fulfil the will of the testator, or to the parliament for an act.

## ARMS PATERNAL AND HEREDITARY

Are such as are transmitted from the first possessor to his son, grandson, great-grandson, &c. In such case they are arms of a perfect and complete nobility, begun in the grandfather, or great-grandfather (as heralds say), growing in the son, complete in the grandson, or rather great-grandson ; from which rises the distinction of gentleman of blood in the grandson, and, in the great-grandson, gentleman of ancestry. Nisbet says, we may date the origin of arms, as hereditary marks of honour, soon after the subversion of

the Roman empire by the Goths and Vandals, who sank many liberal arts and sciences, but gave birth and life to heraldry (placing it in the room of *Jus imaginum*), which is made up of the figures of animals, vegetables, and of other things suitable to their genius, for distinction in time of battle. Thus the strong bore lions, boars, wolves, &c.; for wit and craft they bore serpents, dogs, &c. This being the practice of the conquering Goths, it was afterwards, through the ambition of some, and virtuous desire of others, continued to represent their progenitors, as well by carrying the marks of their honour, as by bearing their names, and enjoying their fortunes; which natural figures being cast in a form by rules, their position, disposition, situation, and colours became hereditary, and fixed within the shield as ensigns of honour: whence the titles *Scutifer* and *Escuyr* became honourable, to distinguish their possessors from those of an inferior rank.

#### ARMS OF CONCESSION

Are augmentations granted by the sovereign, of part of his ensigns or regalia, to such persons as he pleaseth to honour therewith. Henry VIII. honoured the arms of *Thomas Manners* (whom he created Earl of Rutland) with an augmentation, upon account of his being descended from a sister of King Edward IV. His paternal arms were, *or, two bars azure, a chief gules*. The augmentations were, the *chief quarterly, azure and gules*; on the first, *two fleurs de lis in fess, or*; on the second, *a lion passant gardant, or*; third, as the second; fourth, as the first. See Plate A. n. 3. The same monarch also granted, as an augmentation of honour, to Lady Jane Seymour, *a pile gu., with three lions passant gardant, or*, to be marshalled with her paternal coat; and many similar instances might be adduced of our sovereigns giving special proof of their favour by granting arms of concession

by their royal warrant, recorded in the College of Arms. But these augmentations did not always consist of part of the royal bearings. Thus, Queen Anne granted to Sir Cloutesley Shovel *a chevron between three fleurs de lis in chief, and a crescent in base*, to denote three victories gained by him, two over the French, and one over the Turks: Lord Heathfield was permitted to assume a fortress, to commemorate his gallant defence of Gibraltar. The arms of many other of our heroes, naval and military, as Nelson, Collingwood, Wellington, may also be referred to, as justly bearing these augmentations of honour, called by the French heralds *armes de concession*.

#### CANTING ARMS.

Canting or allusive arms, are coats of arms whose figures allude to the names, professions, &c. of the bearer; as *a trevet*, for Trevet; *three herrings*, for Herring; *a camel*, for Camel; *three covered cups*, for Butler; *a pine-tree*, for Pine; *three arches*, for Arches; *three harrows*, for Harrow, &c.

Having shown the antiquity and use of arms, we will proceed to the study of their essential and integral parts, viz. *the points of the escutcheon, colours, furs, partition lines, ordinaries, charges, and distinctions of houses*.

It is highly necessary, before a person attempt to blazon a coat of arms, that he should be well acquainted with the terms and rules laid down in the following tables, which may be acquired by a little practice and application.

#### THE ESCUTCHEON.

The shield or escutcheon, (from the Latin word *scutum*, a hide, of which shields are supposed to have been originally made,) represents the defensive implement of that name used in war, and on which armorial ensigns were originally borne. The ground or sur-

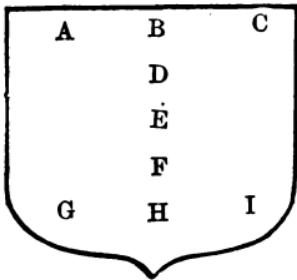
face of it is called the *field*, and here are depicted the figures which make up the coat of arms.

The field of the escutcheon is divided into nine integral parts, used to mark the position of the bearings. They are termed the *points* of the escutcheon, and are clearly illustrated below, Table I.

It should be particularly observed, that the side of the escutcheon which is opposite to the left hand of the person looking at it is the *dexter* or right side of the escutcheon, and that opposite the right hand the *sinister* or left side. Great care should also be taken to understand the points; for the very same figures and tinctures, differently located, constitute distinct and different arms.

TABLE I.

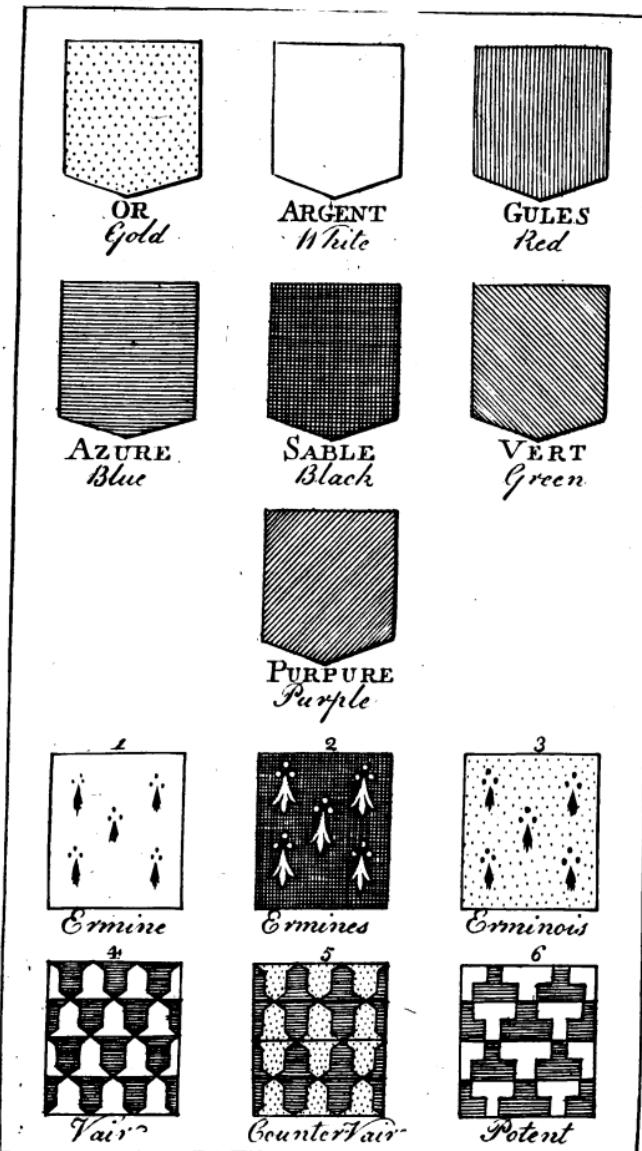
## POINTS OF THE ESCUTCHEON.

A	B	C	
D		E	
F		G	
H		I	
			The sinister or left hand side of the escutcheon.
A Dexter chief. B Middle chief. C Sinister chief. D Honour point. E Fess point. F Nombril point. G Dexter base. H Middle base. I Sinister base.			

*Note.*—The *chief* is the top or chief part of the escutcheon, marked A, B, C; the base is the lower part of the escutcheon, marked G, H, I.



TABLE 2.



## TABLE II.

## TINCTURES AND FURS.

THE tinctures, or colours generally used in the science of heraldry, are *red, blue, black, green, purple*; termed in this science *gules, azure, sable, vert, and purpure*. *Yellow and white*, termed *or* and *argent*, are metals:

NAMES.	COLOURS.
Or - - - -	Gold, or yellow.
Argent - - -	Silver, or white.
Gules - - -	Red.
Azure - - -	Blue.
Sable - - -	Black.
Vert - - -	Green.
Purpure - - -	Purple.

Colours and metals, when engraved, are known by dots and lines; as OR, the metal gold, is known by dots; ARGENT, which signifies white, or the white metal silver, is always left plain; GULES, is expressed by lines perpendicular from top to bottom; AZURE, by horizontal lines from side to side; SABLE, by horizontal and perpendicular lines crossing each other; VERT, by diagonal lines from right to left; PURPURE, by diagonal lines from left to right. See the examples Table II. S. Petrasancta, an Italian herald, about two centuries ago, is said to have been the first who thought of expressing the tinctures by lines and points.

English heralds admit of two other colours, namely, orange, called *tine*, and blood-colour, called *sanguine*; but these are rarely to be found in British bearings. When used, *tine* is expressed by diagonal lines from left to right, crossed by horizontal lines; and *sanguine*, by lines crossing each other diagonally from left to right and from right to left.

## FURS.

Furs are not only used for the linings of robes and garments of state, the linings of the mantle, and other ornaments of the shield, but also in the coat-armours themselves: viz. *ermine*, *ermes*, *erminois*, *erminatis*, *pean*, *vair*, *vair-en-point*, *counter-vair*, *potent-counter-potent*. All these may be seen under each head in the Dictionary of Terms; but for illustration we have selected only the most common in use: viz.

Ermine,  
Vair,

Ermines,  
Counter-Vair,

Erminois,  
Potent.

**ERMINE** is described by sable spots on a white field, the tail terminating in three hairs: see *Table 2*, n. 1.

**ERMINES** is a field black, with white spots, n. 2.

**ERMINOIS** is a field gold, with black spots, n. 3.

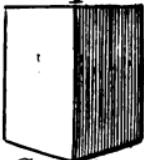
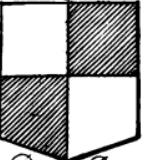
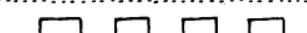
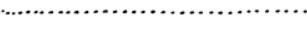
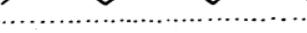
**VAIR** is white and blue, represented by figures of small escutcheons, ranged in a line, so that the *base argent* is opposite to the *base azure*, n. 4.

**COUNTER-VAIR** is when bells or cups of the same colour are placed *base* against *base* and *point* against *point*, n. 5.

**POTENT-COUNTER-POTENT** is a field covered with figures like crutch-heads, termed potents *counter placed*, n. 6.



TABLE 3.

		
<i>Party Per Pale</i>	<i>Party Per Bend</i>	<i>Party Per Fess</i>
		
<i>Party Per Chevron</i>	<i>Party Per Cross</i>	<i>Party Per Saltire</i>
<i>Engrailed</i>		
<i>Invecked</i>		
<i>Wavy</i>		
<i>Nebule</i>		
<i>Imbattled</i>		
<i>Raguly</i>		
<i>Indented</i>		
<i>Dancette</i>		
<i>Dove Tail</i>		



## TABLE III.

## PARTITION LINES.

SHIELDS are divided by lines, called *partition lines*, which are distinguished by different names according to their different forms. These lines are either straight or curved. The straight lines are perpendicular, horizontal, diagonal dexter, and diagonal sinister; termed *per pale*, *per fess*, *per bend*, &c., as explained below. The shield is said to be *party*, or divided, by these lines; as thus:—

PARTY PER PALE is the field divided by a perpendicular line, as T. 3, n. 1.

PARTY PER BEND is a field divided by a diagonal line from the dexter chief to the sinister base, as T. 3, n. 2. *Party per bend, Or and Vert*, name Hawly.

PARTY PER BEND Sinister is precisely the reverse of the above; the partition line running from the sinister chief to the dexter base, instead of from the dexter to the sinister.

PARTY PER FESS is a field equally divided by a horizontal line, as n. 3.

PARTY PER CHEVRON is a field divided by such a line as helps to make the chevron, as n. 4. *Party per Chevron, Sable and Argent*, name Aston.

PARTY PER CROSS, or *quarterly*, is a field divided by two lines, the one perpendicular, the other horizontal, crossing each other in the centre of the field, as n. 5. *Party per Cross, Argent and Gules*, name Cock, of Hertfordshire.

PARTY PER SALTIRE, is a field divided by two diagonal lines, dexter and sinister, crossing each other in the centre of the field, as n. 6.

The curved lines of partition are the *engrailed*, *invecked*, *wavy*, *nebulé*, *imbattled*, *raguly*, *dancette*, *indented*, and *dove-tail*. See examples conspicuously engraved in T. 3.

## TABLE IV.

## ORDINARIES.

ORDINARIES are those figures which, by their ordinary and frequent use in a shield of arms, are become most essential to the science of Heraldry: viz. The chief, pale, bend, bend sinister, fess, bar, chevron, cross, and saltire; with her diminutives, the *fillet*, *pallet*, *endorse*, *garter*, *cost*, *ribbon*, *baton*, *closet*, &c. as in T. 4.

The CHIEF is formed by a horizontal line, and contains in depth the third of the field, as n. 1. *Gules, a chief Argent*, name Worksley. Its diminutive is termed a *fillet*, and does not exceed one fourth of the chief. The line may be indented, wavy, &c.; but this must be noticed in the blazonry.

The PALE consists of two perpendicular lines, drawn from the top to the base of the shield, and occupying one-third of its centre, as n. 2. *Gules, a Pale Or.*

The pale has two diminutives—the half of the pale is called a *pallet*, as n. 3; and the half of the pallet is called an *endorse*, as n. 4.

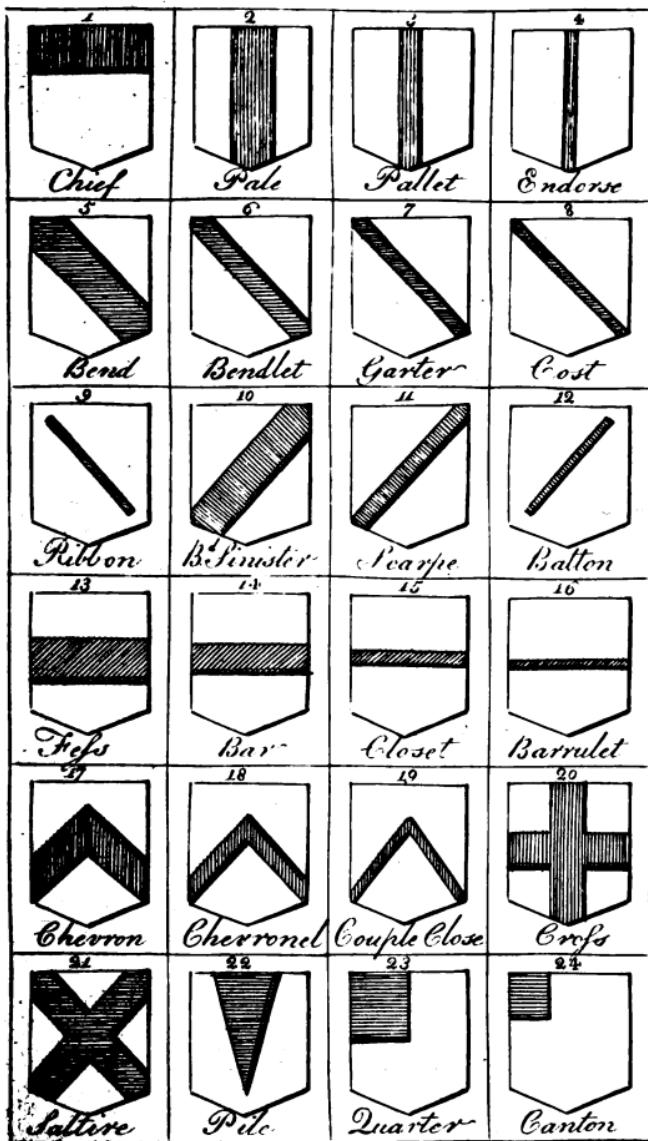
The BEND is formed by two parallel lines, drawn from the dexter chief to the sinister base, as n. 5. *Argent, a bend engrailed Sable.* It contains a fifth part of the shield in breadth, if uncharged, and a third part if charged.

The bend has four diminutives, the *bendlet*, n. 6; the *garter*, n. 7; the *cost*, n. 8; and *ribbon*, n. 9.

The BEND SINISTER, which passes diagonally from the sinister chief to the dexter base of the shield, as n. 10. The Bend Sinister has two diminutives; the *scarp*, which is half the bend, as n. 11; and the *baton*, which is half of the scarp, as n. 12.

The FESS is formed by two horizontal lines across

TABLE 4.





the shield: it occupies the third part of the field, and is always confined to the centre, as n. 13.

The BAR is formed of two horizontal lines, and contains the fifth part of the field, as n. 14. The Bar is never borne single: it has two diminutives; the *closet*, which is half the bar, n. 15; and the *bar-rulet*, which is half the closet, n. 16.

The CHEVRON is formed of two lines placed pyramidically, like two rafters of a house joined together, and descending in form of a pair of compasses to the extremities of the shield, n. 17. The Chevron has two diminutives; the *chevronel*, which is half the chevron, n. 18; and the *couple-close*, which is half the chevronel, n. 19.

The CROSS. The Cross is formed by the meeting of two perpendicular with two horizontal lines near the fess point, where they make four right angles: the lines are not drawn throughout, but discontinued the breadth of the cross, n. 20. *Azure, a Cross Or*, name Shelton, of Norfolk.

The SALTIRE is formed by the bend-dexter and bend-sinister crossing each other at right angles, n. 21. *Argent, a Saltire Gules*, name Gerrard, of Lancashire.

The PILE is composed of two lines which form a long wedge, n. 22.

The QUARTER is formed of two lines, one perpendicular, the other horizontal, taking up one fourth of the field, and is always placed in the chief, n. 23.

The CANTON is a square figure like the *quarter*, but possessing only the ~~third~~ part of the chief, n. 24.

## TABLE V.

AMONG THE SUB-ORDINARIES ARE THE FOLLOWING :—

A **GYRON** is a triangular figure, composed of two lines, one diagonally from the dexter chief angle to the centre of the shield ; the other drawn horizontally from the dexter side of the shield, and meeting the other line in the centre of the field, as n. 1.

**FLANCES** are formed by two circular lines, and are always borne double, as n. 2.

The **LABEL**, though used as a distinction of houses, is placed by Holme as an ordinary, from its being variously borne and charged, n. 3.

The **ORLE** is an inner border of the same shape as the escutcheon, but does not touch the extremities of the shield, the field being seen within and round it on both sides, as n. 4, *or, an Orle azure.*

The **TRESSURE** is a diminutive of the orle, half its breadth, and is generally borne flory and counter-flory, n. 5.

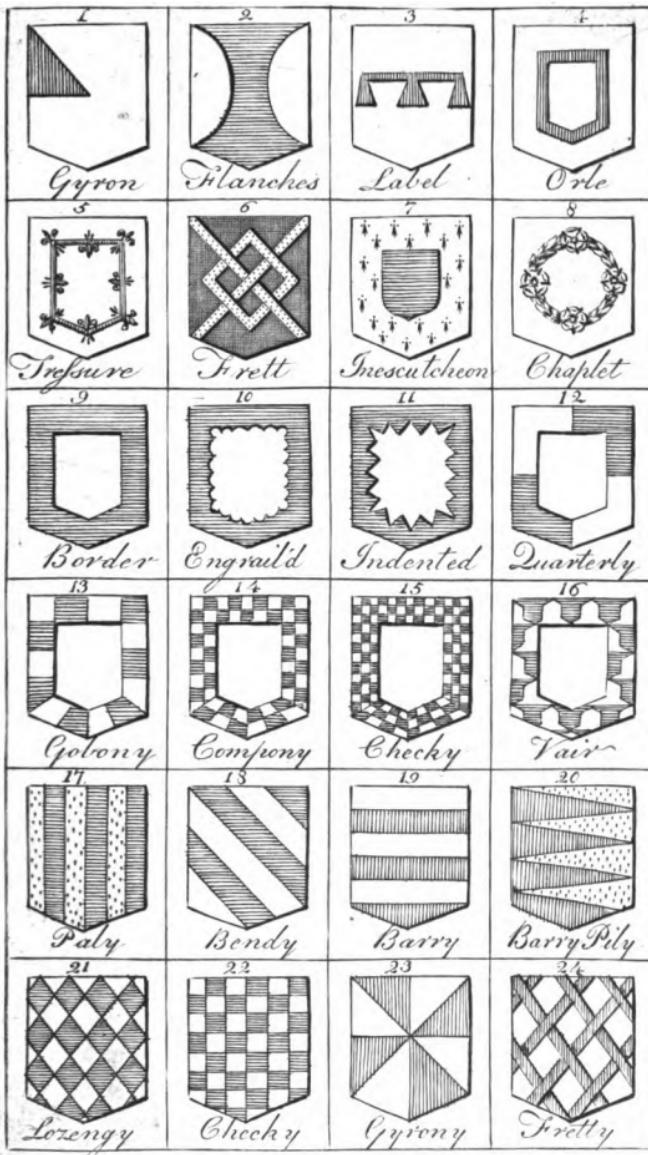
The **FRETT** is composed of six pieces, two of which form a saltire, and the other four a mascle, which is placed in the centre. The saltire pieces must be interlaced over and under the pieces that form the mascle, as n. 6. *Vert, a frett Or,* the arms of Sir George Whitmore, a lord mayor of London.

The **INESCUTCHEON** is a small escutcheon borne within the shield, in the middle of a coat, or in chief. If there are more than one in a coat, they are usually called escutcheons, n. 7.

The **CHAPLET** is always composed of four roses only, all the other parts being leaves, n. 8.

A **BORDER** is a bearing that goes all round and parallel to the boundary of the shield in form of a hem, and contains the fifth part of the field, n. 9.— When a border is plain, as the example, it need not be termed *plain*, as it is always understood so in the

TABLE 5.





science: viz. *argent, a border azure*; but if the border be engrailed, indented, &c. you must express it: viz. *argent, a border engrailed azure*. See the two examples, n. 10 and 11. In blazon, borders always give place to the *chief*, the *quarter*, and the *canton*; as for example, *argent, a border gules, a chief azure*; therefore the chief is placed over the border, see P. 16, n. 2. So that in coats charged with either a *chief*, *quarter*, or *canton*, the border goes round the field until it touches them, and there finishes, see P. 16, n. 3; but in respect to all other ordinaries, the border passes over them, see P. 16, n. 4.

In a coat which has a border impaled with another, be it either the man's or the woman's, the border must terminate at the impaled line, see P. 16, n. 5. This method is also to be observed in impaling a coat that has either a single or double tressure, as P. 16. n. 6.

**A BORDER ENGRAILED.** This border is bounded by small semicircles, the points of which enter the field, as n. 10.

**A BORDER INDENTED** is the same in shape as the partition line indented, n. 11.

**A BORDER QUARTERLY** is a border divided into four equal parts by a perpendicular and horizontal line, as n. 12.

**A BORDER GOBONATED** is a border composed of one row of squares, (*of two colours,*) and no more, as n. 13.

**A BORDER COUNTER-COMPONY** is a border composed of two rows of squares, as n. 14.

**A BORDER CHECKY** is a border composed of three rows of squares, as n. 15.

**A BORDER VAIR.** Vair is represented by the figures of little bells, or cups reversed, ranged in a line, so that the *base argent* is opposite to the *base azure*, as n. 16.

**PALY** is a field divided into four, six, or more

(even number of) parts, by perpendicular lines, consisting of two colours ; the first beginning with *metal*, and the last consisting of *colour*, as n. 17.

BENDY is a field divided into four, six, or more (equal) parts diagonally, from the dexter to the sinister, or from sinister to dexter, and consisting of two colours, as n. 18.

BARRY is a field divided by horizontal lines, into four, six, or more (equal) parts, and consisting of two tinctures, as n. 19.

BARRY PILY of eight pieces argent and gules, as n. 20.

In paly, bendy, and barry, the number of divisions is always even, and to be specified ; as four, six, eight, ten, or twelve, viz. *Paly of six, barry of six, bendy of six, Barry pily of eight, argent and gules*. See the examples, T. 5.

LOZENGY is a field or bearing covered with lozenges of different tinctures alternately, as *lozengy, argent and azure*, n. 21.

CHECKY is a field or bearing covered with small squares of different tinctures alternately, as n. 22. When on ordinaries, it always consists of three or more rows.

GYRONNY is a field divided into six, eight, ten, or twelve triangular parts, of two or more different tinctures, and the points all meeting in the centre of the field, as n. 23.

FRETTY consists of eight, ten, or more pieces, each passing to the extremity of the shield, and interlacing each other, as n. 24.



TABLE 6.

<i>Cross</i>	<i>Moline</i>	<i>Flory</i>	<i>Patonce</i>
<i>Potent</i>	<i>Pattee</i>	<i>Avellane</i>	<i>Botonney</i>
<i>Fomme</i>	<i>Creslet</i>	<i>Croslet Fitchu</i>	<i>Phons</i>
<i>Ermine Spots</i>	<i>Mill Rind</i>	<i>Mill Rind</i>	<i>Rayonnant</i>
<i>Lozenge</i>	<i>Fusil</i>	<i>Masche</i>	<i>Water Bouet</i>
<i>Trefoil</i>	<i>Quarterfoil</i>	<i>Cinquefoil</i>	<i>Rose</i>



## TABLE VI.

## CROSSES.

A CROSS. The Cross is one of the *ordinaries* before mentioned. It is borne as well *indented*, *engrailed*, &c., as plain ; but when *plain*, as the example, n. 1, a cross only is mentioned, which is understood to be plain.

A CROSS MOLINE signifies a cross which turns round both ways at the extremities, as n. 2. *Azure, a Cross Moline pierced Lozengy, or;* name Molineux, of Lancaster.

A CROSS FLORY. This signifies the ends of the cross to terminate in *fleurs-de-lis*, as n. 3.

A CROSS PATONCE. This cross terminates like the bottom of the *fleur-de-lis*, as n. 4.

A CROSS POTENT. This cross terminates like the head of a crutch, which anciently was called a potent, as n. 5.

A CROSS PATTÉE, or spread out, is one which is small in the centre, and so goes on widening to the ends, which are very broad, as n. 6.

A CROSS AVELANE, so termed from its parts resembling the *nux avellanae*, filbert, or hazel-nut, as n. 7.

A CROSS BOTONNÉ, or *budded*, is so termed because its extremities resemble buds of flowers. The French call it *croix trefflée*, on account of its nearer resemblance to the trefoil ; n. 8.

A CROSS POMMÉE signifies a cross with a ball at each end ; from *pomme*, an apple. See n. 9.

A CROSS CROSLLET is a cross crossed again at the extremities, at a small distance from each of the ends ; as n. 10.

A CROSS CROSLLET FITCHY. So termed when the under-limb of the cross ends in a sharp point, as n. 11.

A CROSS OF FOUR PHEONS. That is, *four Pheons in Cross*, their points all meeting in the centre, as n. 12.

A CROSS OF FOUR ERMINE SPOTS, or *four Ermine Spots in Cross*, their tops meeting in the centre point, as n. 13.

A CROSS MILRINE. So termed as its form is like the mill-ink, which carries the millstone, and is perforated as that is. See n. 14, 15.

A CROSS RAYONNANT is a cross from the angles of which issue rays, as n. 16.

#### CHARGES.

CHARGES are all manner of figures or bearings borne in an escutcheon.

A LOZENGE. The shape is the same with that of a pane of glass in old casements, as n. 17. In this form the arms of maidens and widows should be borne. The true proportion of the Lozenge is to have its width three parts in four of its height.

A FUSIL. The Fusil differs from the Lozenge, being longer and more acute. See the difference in n. 17 and 18.—*Note.* If a Fusil is four inches in height, it must be but one inch and three-quarters in width, and so in proportion to any other height.

The MASCLE is formed like the Lozenge, but is exactly square, and the centre is perforated, as example, n. 19.

A WATER BOUGET was a vessel anciently used by soldiers for carrying water in long marches, n. 20.

A TREFOIL, or three-leaved grass, as n. 21.

A QUATREFOIL, or four-leaved grass, as n. 22.

A CINQUEFOIL, or five-leaved grass. This charge is very frequent in armoury, n. 23.

A ROSE in heraldry is always represented full-blown, with its leaves expanded, seeded in the middle, with five green barbs, as n. 24.



TABLE 7

Mullet	Estoile	Gal-trap	Phœn
Annulet	Crescent	Incrocent	Decrescent
Chess Rook	Fountain	Rest	Portcullis
Manche	Garb	Martlet	Bar Gemell
Catherine Wheel	Escarbuncle	Pelican	Phoenix
Antelope	Heraldic Antelope	Cockatrice	Wyvern



## TABLE VII.

CHARGES (*continued*).

A MULLET, n. 1. Some have confounded stars and mullets together, which is easily rectified, by allowing mullets to consist of five points and stars to be of six, eight, or more points.

An ESTOILE, or star of six waved points. See n. 2.

A GAL-TRAP ; an instrument of iron composed of four points, so that whichever way it lies on the ground, one point is always upwards ; they are used to impede the enemy's cavalry in passing fords, mottes, &c. See n. 3.

A PHEON is the iron part of a dart with a barbed head, n. 4.

An ANNULET, or Ring, by some authors said to be rings of mail. See n. 5.

A CRESCENT, or Half Moon, has the horns turned upwards. See n. 6.

An INCRESCENT is a Half Moon with the horns turned to the dexter side. See n. 7.

A DECRESCENT is a Half Moon with the horns turned to the sinister side. See n. 8.

A CHESS-ROOK, a piece used in the game of chess, as n. 9.

A FOUNTAIN is drawn as a roundle *barry wavy of six, Argent and Azure*, as n. 10.

A REST. This figure by some is termed a rest for a horseman's lance ; others apply it as a musical instrument called a clarion, n. 11.

A PORTCULLIS ; used in fortifying the gateways of a city, town, or castle, as n. 12.

A MANCHE ; an old-fashioned sleeve with long hangers, as n. 13.

A GARB signifies a sheaf of any kind of grain, as n. 14.—If it be a sheaf of wheat, it is sufficient to say a garb ; but if of any other grain, it must be expressed.

A MARTLET ; a bird shaped like a martin, but represented without legs, as n. 15.

BAR-GEMEL signifies two bars placed near and parallel to each other, as n. 16.—*Note.* Gemels are much narrower than bars, and are always borne in couples.

A CATHERINE-WHEEL ; named from St. Catherine, whose limbs were broken in pieces by its iron teeth, n. 17.

An ESCARBUNCLE ; supposed to be a precious stone, and drawn by the ancient heralds as n. 18. It is composed of an annulet in the centre, from which issue eight or more sceptres.

A PELICAN. The Pelican in heraldry is generally represented with her wings indorsed, her neck embowed, and pecking at her breast, as n. 19. When in her nest, feeding her young, it is termed in blazon, *a Pelican in her piety*.

A PHENIX is an imaginary bird, like an eagle in shape, and in heraldry is always represented in flames, so that seldom more of the bird is seen than what is in the example, n. 20.

An ANTELOPE ; a well-known slender-limbed animal of the deer kind, with two straight taper horns : it is drawn according to nature, as n. 21.

An HERALDIC ANTELOPE. This imaginary animal is represented with a body like a stag, with a unicorn's tail, a tusk issuing from the tip of the nose, a row of tufts down the back part of the neck, and the like tufts on his tail, chest, and thighs, as n. 22.

A COCKATRICE is also a chimerical figure ; its wings, beak, legs, comb, wattles, and spurs, partake of the fowl, and its body and tail of the snake, as n. 23.

A WYVERN. This figure also is of heraldic creation : it differs from the cockatrice in its head, and is without a comb, wattles, or spurs, as n. 24.



TABLE 8.

<i>Dragon</i>	<i>Harpy</i>	<i>Tyger</i>	<i>Billets</i>
<i>Cannet</i>	<i>Allerion</i>	<i>Welke</i>	<i>Gutty</i>
<i>Bozant</i>	<i>Plate</i>	<i>Torteaux</i>	<i>Hurt</i>
<i>Pollet</i>	<i>Pomey</i>	<i>Golpe</i>	
<i>Couped</i>	<i>Erased</i>	<i>Demy</i>	<i>Dormont</i>
<i>Couchant</i>	<i>Sejant</i>	<i>Passant</i>	<i>Statant</i>



## TABLE VIII.

CHARGES (*continued*).

A DRAGON is an imaginary beast, drawn by heralds as the example, n. 1.

A HARPY is a poetical monster, composed of the head and breasts of a woman joined to the body of a vulture, as n. 2.

An HERALDIC TIGER, so termed from being different from the tiger of nature, owes its origin to the ancients, who represented it like the example, n. 3.

BILLETS are oblong squares, and are generally supposed to be letters made up in the form of the example, n. 4.

A CANNET; a term for a duck, without beak or feet, as n. 5. This is only used in foreign arms.

An ALLERION is an eagle displayed, without beak or feet, as n. 6.

A WELK; the name of a shell fish. See n. 7.

GUTTES, signify drops of anything liquid, and are represented as n. 8. As these drops differ in colour, they receive different terms. Being much used in English heraldry, it is necessary to introduce them; viz.

When they are	{ Or, Argent, Vert, Azure, Sable, Gules,	they are termed	{ Guttes d'or, Guttes d'eau, Guttes d'olive, Guttes de larmes, Guttes de poix, Guttes de sang,	and	meant to be like	{ Drops of gold, Drops of water, Drops of oil of olive, Drops of tears, Drops of pitch, Drops of blood.
---------------	---	-----------------	---	-----	------------------	--

The French heralds use none of the above variations, but say *gutté* (i. e. dropped) of such a colour.

ROUNDLES are round figures; if of metal, as the bezant and plate, they are to be flat; if of colour, they are drawn globular, and termed according to

the colour or metal they are composed of. See T. 8, n. 9 to 15 ; viz.

When they are	Or, Argent, Vert, Azure, Sable, Gules, Purpure,	Bezants, Plates, Pommes, Hurts, Pellets, Torteaux, Golpes.
---------------	---	--

If there be two, three, or more in a coat, counter-changed, being of any colour or metal, they retain the name of roundle.—*Note.* Foreigners term the round figures, when of metal, bezants ; when of colour, torteaux ; viz., *Bezants d'or*, or *d'argent*, *torteaux de gules*, *d'azure*, *de sable*, &c.

#### CHARGES, AND THEIR VARIOUS HERALDIC TERMS.

**COUPED.** A term for any charge in an escutcheon that is borne *cut* evenly off, as the example ; viz., *A Lion's Head Couped*, n. 16.

**ERASED.** A term for anything torn or plucked off from the part to which nature had fixed it. The part torn off must be expressed jagged, as the example ; viz. *A Lion's Head Erased*, n. 17.

**DEMI** signifies the half of anything ; viz. *A Demi-Lion*, n. 18.

**DORMANT**, or sleeping ; viz. *A Lion Dormant*, with its head resting on its fore paws, as n. 19.

**COUCHANT**, lying or squatting on the ground, with the head upright ; viz. *A Lion Couchant*. See n. 20.

**SEJANT.** A term for any beast *sitting* in the position of the example ; viz. *A Lion Sejant*, n. 21.

**PASSANT.** A term for any beast when in a walking position ; viz. *A Lion passant*, n. 22.

**STATANT.** A term for a beast standing, with all four legs on the ground, as n. 23.



TABLE 9.

<i>Rampant Gardant</i>	<i>Rampant</i>	<i>Rampant Gardant</i>	<i>Rampant Regardant</i>
<i>Rampant combattant</i>	<i>Saliant</i>	<i>Rampant Addorsed</i>	<i>Counter- Gardant</i>
<i>Counter- Saliant</i>	<i>Counter- Tripping</i>	<i>Sejant Addorsed</i>	<i>Passant Regardant</i>
<i>at Gare</i>	<i>Tripping</i>	<i>Springing</i>	<i>Courant</i>
<i>Lodged</i>	<i>Cabossed</i>	<i>Closed</i>	<i>Rising</i>
<i>Displayd</i>	<i>Volant</i>	<i>Demy Vol.</i>	<i>Indorsed</i>



## TABLE IX.

PASSANT-GARDANT. A term for a beast when walking with his head *affronté*, or looking full-faced, as example n. 1.

RAMPANT. A term for lions, bears, tigers, &c., when standing erect on their hind leg. *A Lion Rampant*, n. 2.

RAMPANT-GARDANT signifies a beast standing on his hind leg, looking full-faced, as example, *A Lion Rampant-Gardant*, n. 3.

RAMPANT-REGARDANT. A term for a beast standing upon his hinder leg, looking towards its tail; viz. *A Lion Rampant-Regardant*, as n. 4.

RAMPANT-COMBATANT. A term for beasts fighting, or rampant face to face, as the example, *Two Lions Rampant-Combatant*. See n. 5.

SALIANT. A term for beasts of prey when leaping or springing forward, as the example n. 6.

ADDORSED signifies beasts, birds, or fish turned back to back, as the example, *Two Lions Rampant Addorsed*. See n. 7.

COUNTER-PASSANT; for two beasts, as lions, &c., when walking different ways, the one to the dexter, the other to the sinister, as the example n. 8.

COUNTER-SALIANT. A term for two beasts when leaping different ways from each other, as the example, *Two Foxes Counter-Saliant in Saltire, the dexter surmounted of the sinister*, n. 9.

COUNTER-TRIPPING. This term is given when two rams, deer, &c., as the example, are tripping, the one passing one way, and the other another. See n. 10.

SEJANT ADDORSED. A term for two animals sitting back to back, as the example n. 11.

PASSANT-REGARDANT. A term for a beast when walking with its head looking behind, n. 12.

AT GAZE. The stag, buck, or hind, when looking affronté, or full-faced, is said to be at Gaze, n. 13. All other beasts, when in this attitude, are termed Gardant.

TRIPPING. A term which signifies a stag, antelope, or hind, &c., when walking, as n. 14.

SPRINGING. This term is used for beasts of chase, in the same sense as Saliant is for beasts of prey, n. 15. This term is likewise used for fish when placed in bend.

COURANT. A term for stag, horse, or greyhound, or any other beast, represented running, as the example n. 16.

LODGED. This term is for stags, &c., when at rest, lying on the ground, n. 17. Beasts of chase are said to be lodged; beasts of prey, when lying down, are termed couchant.

CABOSSED. This term is used to express the head of a stag or other animal placed full-faced, and without any part of the neck being visible, n. 18.

CLOSE. This term is for the wings of birds (of flight) when they are down and close to the body, n. 19. But must not be used to the peacock, dung-hill-cock, nor to any others that are not addicted to flight.

RISING. A term for birds when in a position as if preparing to fly, as n. 20.

DISPLAYED. The term is used for the wings of eagles, and all other birds, when they are expanded, as n. 21.

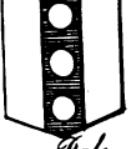
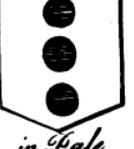
VOLANT. Thus we term any bird that is represented flying, as n. 22.

DEMI-VOL. A term for a single wing, n. 23.

INDORSED. A term for wings when placed back to back, as n. 24.



TABLE 10.

			
Erect	Inverted	Naissant	Hauriant
			
Respecting	Naissant Embowed	Domy Lion Passant	Domy Fleur de lis
			
Fessant	Rousant	Slipped	Tirret
			
on a Chief	in Chief	on a Pale	in Pale
			
on a Bend	in Bend	on a Fess	in Fess
			
on a Cross	in Cross	on a Saltire	in Saltire

## TABLE X.

**ERECT** signifies anything perpendicularly elevated, as the example: viz. *Two wings conjoined and erect*; that is, the points of the wings are upwards, n. 1.

**INVERTED.** This example is the reverse position of the former, the points of these being downwards: viz. *Two wings conjoined and inverted*, n. 2.

**NAIANT.** A term for fish when borne horizontally across the field as swimming, as n. 3.

**HAURIANT** signifies the fish to be erect, as the example n. 4.

**RESPECTING.** A term for fish, or birds, when placed upright, and apparently *looking* at each other, as n. 5.

**NAIANT EMBOWED.** This term is used for the dolphin, to signify the crookedness of his motion when swimming, as the example n. 6.

**DEMI-LION PASSANT** is one half of a lion in a walking position, as n. 7.

**DEMI FLEUR-DE-LIS** is the half of a fleur-de-lis, as n. 8, also as P. 7, n. 24.

**ISSUANT**, or issuing, signifies coming out of the bottom of the chief, as the example n. 9.

**ROUSANT** signifies heavy birds, as if preparing to fly, with the wings indorsed, as n. 10.

**SLIPPED.** A term for a flower, branch, or leaf, when plucked from the stock, and not cut off, n. 11.

**TIRRET.** A modern term, derived from the French, for *manacles*, or hand-cuffs, n. 12.

The following twelve examples are introduced for the instruction of the learner, as he should be well acquainted with the difference of the two mono-syllables in *blazon*, viz. *on* and *in*; which, by observing, he will see makes a great difference in a coat of arms—the *former* expressing the bearing to

be placed on one of the ordinaries ; the *latter* as if the bearings were left remaining, but the ordinaries taken away.

## ON A CHIEF.

13. Argent *on a chief*, gules, three lozenges, or.

## IN CHIEF.

14. Argent, three lozenges *in chief*, gules.

## ON A PALE.

15. Argent *on a pale*, azure, three plates.

## IN PALE.

16. Argent, three hurts *in pale*.

## ON A BEND.

17. Gules, *on a bend*, argent, three mullets, azure.

## IN BEND.

18. Argent, three mullets *in bend*, sable.

## ON A FESS.

19. Argent, *on a fess*, vert, three trefoils, or.

## IN FESS.

20. Argent, three trefoils, *in fess*, vert.

## ON A CROSS.

21. Purpure, *on a cross*, argent, five crescents, gules.

## IN CROSS.

22. Argent, five crescents *in cross*, gules.

## ON A SALTIRE.

23. Azure, *on a saltire*, argent, five torteaux.

## IN SALTIRE.

24. Argent, five torteaux *in saltire*.

### Distinction of Houses.

THESE differences inform us how the bearer of each is descended from the same family ; they also denote the subordinate degrees in each house from the original ancestor, viz.

#### FIRST HOUSE.

See engraved example, Plate 10.

For the heir, or	the Label . . . . .	1.
First son,		
Second son,	the Crescent . . . . .	2.
Third son,	the Mullet . . . . .	3.
Fourth son,	the Martlet. . . . .	4.
Fifth son,	the Amulet . . . . .	5.
Sixth son,	the Fleur-de-lis . . . . .	6.
Seventh son,	the Rose . . . . .	7.
Eighth son,	the Cross Moline . . . . .	8.
Ninth son,	the Double Quatrefoil . . . . .	9.

#### SECOND HOUSE.

The crescent, with the label on it, for the first son of the second son. Plate 10, Second House.

The crescent on the crescent for the second son of the second son of the first house, and so on. See the engraved examples, Plate 10.

### Rules of Blazoning.

THIS science, according to the *Notitia Anglicana*, teaches how to describe the things borne in proper terms, according to their several gestures, positions, and tinctures ; and how to marshal or dispose regularly divers arms on a field, in which particular care must be observed, because the adding or omitting any part is oftentimes an alteration of the coat.

In blazon the following rules must be carefully followed :—

First, in blazoning a coat, you must always begin with the field ; noticing the lines wherewith it is divided, whether *per pale*, *per fess*, *per bend*, &c., as also the difference of those lines, whether *indented*, *engrailed*, &c. ; then proceed to the next immediate charge. By an immediate charge is meant that which lieth next the field, and nearest the centre ; this must be first named ; and then those which are more remote ; for example, *azure*, *a crescent*, *between three stars argent* ; thus the *crescent* is first named, as being next the centre of the field. See Plate B, n. 21.

If a coat consist of two colours only, as the coat of Robinson, you are to blazon it *vert*, *a chevron*, *between three bucks standing at gaze*, *or* ; which implies that both the chevron and bucks are *or*. See Plate D, n. 15.

When colour and metal are placed several times one upon the other, as Plate A, n. 13, *Azure, on a chevron, between three besants, as many pallets, gules*. Here the *chevron* is named *first* after the field, because it is nearest the centre ; and as the *pallets lie upon the chevron*, so they are most remote from the *field*, and must be last named. But when bearings are described without expressing the point of the escutcheon where they are to be placed, they are then

understood to possess the centre of the shield : for instance, *argent, a lion rampant, gules*; but if I say, *argent, a lion rampant in base, gules*, it must be placed in the base part of a shield, which is the bottom.

A repetition, in blazoning a coat, of such words as *of, or, and, with*, is accounted a great fault, for tautology should be particularly avoided ; as, for example, *or, on a saltire azure, nine lozenges of the first*; and not, *or, on a saltire azure, nine lozenges or*; because the word *or* is then named twice. But be careful that, by endeavouring to be concise, you are not ambiguous, and that you omit nothing which ought to be mentioned.

Arms composed of metals and colours together were introduced as well to represent them at a greater distance, as to imitate the military cassock of the ancients, who embroidered their titia, or cloth of gold and silver, with figures in colours of silk ; and their coloured silk, on the contrary, with gold and silver ; and hence it is a general rule, *that metal shall never be placed upon metal, nor colour upon colour*.

#### CHARGES.

In blazoning of charges, be they of what nature or kind soever, whether animate or inanimate, if you perceive them to be of the natural and proper colours of the creatures or things they represent, you must always term them *proper*, and not *argent, or, gules*, or by the like terms of this science, which should always give place to definitions more natural.

#### ORDINARIES.

In blazoning of ordinaries formed of straight lines, you must only name the ordinary, without making mention of the straightness of the line whereof it is composed ; for example, T. 4, n. 5, *Argent, a bend*

*azure*; but if the ordinary, &c., should be *engrailed*, *wavy*, *nebuly*, *imbattled*, it must not be omitted; for example, Plate A, n. 12, *ermine*, on a chevron *engrailed*, *azure*, three estoiles *argent*.

#### ANIMALS.

The teeth, claws, or talons, of lions, tigers, bears, leopards, boars, wolves, dragons, and all ravenous beasts, are called their arms, because they are weapons of defence and offence. When these are of a different tincture from their bodies, the colour must be named; and when their tongues are of the colour of their arms, then they are said to be *langued*, as a lion *argent*, *armed and langued*, *gules*. The claws and tongue of a lion are always *gules*, unless the field or charge be *gules*; then they must be *azure*. Ferne observes, "that the invention of armes wherein beasts be borne, is borrowed from the Huns, the Hungarians, Scythians, and Saxons, cruell and fierce nations, who delighted in bearing in their armes lions, leopards, wolfes, hyenas," &c.

Among such beasts as by nature are milder, and by custom more sociable, may be reckoned the bull, ox, goat, ram, &c., which are endowed by nature with weapons, as horns, which, together with their hoofs, are very often different from their bodies; we then say *armed and hoofed*, or *unguled*, of such or such tinctures.

Deer, being by nature timorous and without courage, are supposed to wear their lofty antlers, not as weapons, but ornaments; therefore, in blazon, we say *attired*.

As to the dog, there are various kinds, bred up to divers exercises and games; so that the first consideration is, what kind of dog is borne, as greyhounds, spaniels, talbots, &c.; what sport he seems fitted for; and hence the particular terms of *beating*,

coursing, scenting, &c., are very proper if they be found in gestures suitable to their several exercises.

Nisbet says, when animals are painted upon banners, they must look to the staff; when upon caparisons and other horse furniture, they ought to look to the head of the horse that bears them; and so of all things whose parts are distinguished by *ante* and *post*.

#### BIRDS.

In blazoning birds of prey, as the eagle, vulture, hawk, kite, owl, &c., all whose weapons, viz., beaks and talons, are termed arms, we say *armed and membered* so and so, when they differ in colour from the body.

But when you meet with swans, geese, ducks, cranes, herons, cormorants, &c., which are a kind of river-fowl, and have no talons, instead of armed, you must say *beaked and membered*; the last term signifying the leg of any fowl, as the feet of swans, geese, ducks, &c., are webbed, and in some measure resemble the palm of a man's hand; so in blazon they are sometimes termed *palmipedes*.

In blazoning the cock, you must say *armed, crested, and jelloped*; *arnied* signifies his *beak and spurs*; *crested*, his *comb*; and *jelloped*, his *wattles*: when his comb, beak, wattles, and spurs, are of a different tincture from his body, then in blazon they must be named; for instance, *azure, a cock argent, armed, crested, and jelloped, gules*.

As to the falcon, this bird is carried in the same postures as the eagle, so hath the same terms, except when with *hood, bells, virols* (or rings), and *leashes*: in blazon he is said to be *hooded, belled, jessed, and leashed*, and the colours thereof must be named; *pouncing* is a term given when he is striking at his prey.

Edmondson remarks, that when small birds are

borne in coat-armour, they are most usually drawn in the form and shape of blackbirds, although they are represented in all the different colours and metals of heraldry, and consequently no distinction of species is made : therefore, in blazon they are called by the general terms of birds only. Hence then, when you find birds mentioned in a blazon without expressing the sort they are of, they must always be drawn as blackbirds in shape.

#### FISHES.

When the fins of fishes are of a different tincture from their bodies, they are then said to be *finned of such a colour*, naming it, *as a dolphin proper, finned or.*

#### HEAVENLY BODIES.

Should the bearing be of any heavenly body, such as a planet, &c., your first consideration is, in what state or condition such planet appears to be : as the sun, *whether in his meridian or eclipse*; or the moon, *whether in her increase or decrease*, &c. ; then give your description in proper astronomical terms : for it is a rule that all blazons are the more elegant when expressed in the proper terms of the several arts or sciences which the figures to be described are of, or belonging to; yet you must take care not to omit any *armorial term necessary to be used*. Thus, in the coat of St. Clere, *azure, the sun in his meridian, proper*, the word *proper* must not be omitted.

#### TREES AND VEGETABLES.

When you meet with any kind of tree, or any vegetable, or their parts, you must observe, first, in what condition it seems to appear, as whether *spread or blasted* ; what kind of tree, *whether bearing fruit or not* ; if a part only, *what part* ; whether the trunk,

*branches, fruit, or leaves*; if the former, whether *standing or not*; if not, in what manner it seems to have been *felled*; whether *eradicated* or torn up by the roots; see Plate C. n. 22. If the bearing consist of members, as its *branches, fruit, or leaves only*, whether *with fruit or withered*; or simply alone, *whether slipped*, as Plate H. n. 9, 10; *pendent* (drooping) or *erect*; which last holds good for all kinds of flowers or grain, when borne simply, or on their stalks.

#### MAN AND HIS PARTS.

Man, and the parts of his body, are frequently charges in coat-armour; as to which these considerations follow. First, as is said of other things, whether he is borne *whole, or in part*; if whole, *in what kind of gesture or action*; also, *whether naked or habited*; if the latter, after what manner, as *whether rustic, in armour, or in robes*.

When the temples of a man or woman are encircled with *laurel, oak, ivy, &c.*, you are to call it *wreathed with laurel, oak, or ivy*.

### Examples of Blazonry.

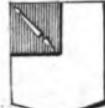
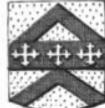
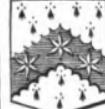
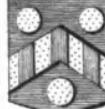
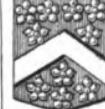
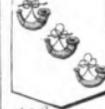
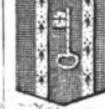
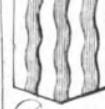
HAVING now explained rudimentally the terms, &c., of the science, and concisely enumerated the rules of blazon, we proceed to illustrate the theory by examples, which, if carefully examined, one by one, cannot fail to prove of the highest utility to the young student.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE A.

1. Argent, on a chief gules, two mullets pierced or; name, *St. John*.
2. Argent, a fess, and in chief three lozenges sable; name, *Aston*.
3. Or, two bars azure, a chief quarterly, azure and gules, on the first two fleurs-de-lis, or; the second, a lion passant-gardant of the last; the third as the second; the fourth as the first; name, *Manners*. *Note*. The term *on the first* is to be understood on the field of the first quarter; *the second* is the field of the second quarter charged *of the last*, that is, of the last-mentioned colour or metal, which is *or*; *the third as the second, the fourth as the first*, which signifies the third quarter like the second, and the fourth quarter like the first.
4. Gules, a chief argent; on the lower part thereof a cloud, the sun's resplendent rays issuing thereout proper; name, *Leeson*.
5. Ermine, on a canton sable, a harp argent; name, *Fraunces*.
6. Argent, on a quarter gules, a spear in bend or; name *Knight*.
7. Argent, on a fess sable, three mullets, or; name, *Clive*.
8. Azure, a fess super-im battled, between six estoiles or; name, *Tryon*.
9. Or, on a fess, between two chevrons sable, three cross-croslets of the first; name, *Walpole*.

*N.B.* *Of the first* is of the colour or metal of the field, which is always first mentioned.

## A

				
<i>S<sup>r</sup> John</i>	<i>Aston</i>	<i>Manners</i>	<i>Leesons</i>	<i>Fraunces</i>
				
<i>Knight</i>	<i>Clive</i>	<i>Tryon</i>	<i>Walpole</i>	<i>Woodvile</i>
				
<i>Pigot</i>	<i>Smyth</i>	<i>Hope</i>	<i>Jones</i>	<i>Dudley</i>
				
<i>Renton</i>	<i>Barkley</i>	<i>Frampton</i>	<i>Stourton</i>	<i>Wingfield</i>
				
<i>Hightord</i>		<i>Wagstaff</i>	<i>Puckring</i>	<i>Hunter</i>
				
<i>O'Hara</i>		<i>Mendorf</i>	<i>Knot</i>	<i>Dennes</i>
				
<i>Amherst</i>	<i>Snigg</i>	<i>Dallison</i>	<i>Dixton</i>	<i>Hulse</i>





10. Argent, a fess and canton conjoined gules; name, *Woodvile*.
11. Ermine, three lozenges conjoined in fess, sable; name, *Pigot*.
12. Ermine, on a chevron engrailed azure, three estoiles argent; name, *Smy*.
13. Azure, on a chevron between three besants, as many pallets gules; name, *Hope*.
14. Ermine, a chevron couped sable; name *Jones*.
15. Azure, a chevron engrailed, voided plain, or; name, *Dudley*.
16. Sable, a chevron *cotised* between three cinquefoils, or; name, *Renton*.
17. Gules, a chevron between ten cinquefoils, four and two, in chief; one, two and one in base, argent; name, *Berkley*.
18. Sable, two lion's paws issuing out of the dexter and sinister base points, erected chevronwise, argent, armed gules; name, *Frampton*.
19. Sable, a bend or, between six fountains proper; name, *Stourton*.
20. Argent, on a bend gules, *cotised* sable, three pair of wings conjoined and inverted of the first; name, *Wingfield*.
21. Sable, a bend flory counter-flory, argent; name, *Highlord*.
22. Sable, a bend and chief or; name, \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Argent, two bends raguled sable, the lower one rebated at the top; name, *Wagstaff*.
24. Sable, a bend of lozenges between two plain *cotises* argent; name, *Puckering*.
25. Argent, three bugle-horns in bend gules, garnished and stringed vert; name *Hunter*.
26. Vert, on a pale radiant or, a lion rampant sable; name, *O'Hara*.
27. Argent, on a pale, between two leopards' faces sable, three crescents or; name, \_\_\_\_\_.
28. Argent, a pale and chief sable; name, *Mendorf*.

29. Sable, a key erected in pale or, between two pallets erminois; name, *Knot*.
30. Argent, three pallets wavy gules; name, *Downes*.
31. Gules, three tilting-spears, erect in fess or, heads argent; name, *Amherst*.
32. Azure, three leopards' faces in pale or; name, *Snigg*.
33. Argent, on a pile engrailed azure, three crescents of the first; name, *Dallison*.
34. Sable, a pile argent, surmounted of a chevron gules; name, *Dyxton*.
35. Argent, three piles, one issuant out of the chief between two others reversed, and issuing from the base, sable; name, *Hulse*.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE B.

1. Sable, on a cross within a border, both engrailed or, five pellets; name, *Greville*.
2. Gules, a cross of lozenges between four roses argent; name, *Packer*.
3. Argent, a cross sable, edged with a tressure of half fleurs-de-lis, between four mullets pierced of the second (that is, of the second colour mentioned, which is sable); name *Atkins*.
4. Or, a cross vert, on a bend over all gules, three fleurs-de-lis of the first; name, *Beringer*.
5. Azure, five escallop shells in cross or; name, *Barker*.
6. Sable, a shin-bone in pale, surmounted of another in fess argent; name, *Baines*.
7. Ermine, on a cross quarter, pierced, argent, four mill-rinds sable; name, *Turnor*.
8. Party per fess, sable and argent, a pale, counter-changed; on each piece of the first a trefoil slipped of the second; name, *Simeon*.
9. Or, on a saltire raguled gules, five cross-crolets fitchy of the first; name, *Rich*.
10. Gules, a saltire between four crescents or; name, *Kinnard*.
11. Gyrony of four, argent and gules, a saltire between

## B

1 Grevile	2 Packer	3 Athins	4 Berenger	5 Barker
6 Baines	7 Turner	8 Simeon	9 Rich	10 Kinnard
11 Twisden	12 Prince	13 Hilborne	14 Newton	15 Porter
16 Drumond	17 Burnaby	18 Hildesley	19 Haydon	20 Morley
21 Arbutnot	22 Rawlyns	23 Chute	24 Stapleton	25 Paulet
26 Cwart	27 Rawline	28 Norton	29 Gwyn	30 Aldam
31 Hagg	32 Weele	33 Hawkeridge	34 Hawkeridge	35 Hawkeridge

N.Y.



- as many cross-crosettes, all counterchanged; name, *Twisden*.
12. Gules, a saltire, or, over all a cross engrailed ermine; name, *Prince*.
  13. Party per saltire, gules and or, in pale two garbs, and in fess as many roses, all counterchanged; name, *Hilborne*.
  14. Sable, two shin-bones, in saltire, the sinister surmounted of the dexter; name, *Newton*.
  15. Gules, five marlions' wings inverted in saltire argent; name, *Porter*.
  16. Or, three closets-wavy, gules; name, *Drummond*.
  17. Azure, two bars counter-imbattled ermine; name, *Burnaby*.
  18. Or, two bars-gemel sable, in chief, three pellets; name, *Hildesley*.
  19. Argent, three bars-gemel azure, on a chief gules, a barrulet indented or; name, *Haydon*.
  20. Sable, three leopards' faces jessant fleurs-de-lis or; name, *Morley*.
  21. Azure, a crescent between three mullets argent; name, *Arbuthnot*.

The following fourteen coats are collected to show how useful the points of the escutcheon are in blazon, which the learner will find very essential in his practice of this science.

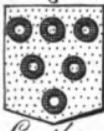
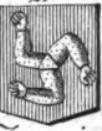
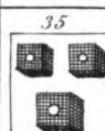
22. Sable, three swords barwise, in pale, their points towards the sinister part of the escutcheon argent, the hilts and pommels or; name, *Rawlyns*.
23. Gules, three swords, barwise, their points towards the dexter part of the shield, hilted or; name, *Chute*.
24. Gules, three swords, conjoined at the pommels in the centre, their points extended into the corners of the escutcheon argent; name, *Stapleton*.
25. Sable, three swords, their points meeting in base argent, hilted or; name, *Paulet* or *Powlet*.
26. Or, three swords, one in fess surmounted of the other two in saltire, points upwards between a dexter

- hand in chief, and a heart in base gules; name, *Ewart*.
27. Sable, three swords in pale, two with their points downward, and the middlemost upward; name, *Rawline*.
  28. Azure, three swords, one in pale, point upward, surmounted of the other two, placed in saltire, points downward, argent; name, *Norton*.
  29. Sable, a fess or, between two swords; that in chief point upwards, the other downwards, both in pale argent, hilted of the second; name, *Gwyn*.
  30. Azure, one ray of the sun issuing out of the dexter corner of the escutcheon, in bend proper; name, *Aldum*.
  31. Azure, a pile inverted in bend sinister, or; name, *Kagg*.
  32. Argent, a triple pile, flory on the tops, issuing out of the sinister base in bend, towards the dexter corner, sable; name, *Wroton*.
  33. Sable, a goshawk close, argent, perching upon a perch, fixed in base, jessed and belled or; name, *Weele*.
  34. Gules, a bend wavy argent, in the sinister chief point, a falcon standing on a perch or; name, *Hawkeridge*.
  35. Or, a dexter arm embowed, issued from the sinister fess-point out of a cloud proper, holding a cross-croslet fitchy, azure.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE C.

1. Gules, three lions' gambs erased argent; name, *Newdigate*.
2. Party per saltire, sable and ermine, a lion rampant or, armed and langued gules; name, *Grafton*.
3. Azure, the sun in his meridian, proper; name, *St. Clare*.
4. Argent, a lion rampant gules, debruised by a fess azure, between three estoiles issuing out of as many crescents of the second; name, *Dillon*, of Ireland.

## C

				
<i>Newdigate</i>	<i>Grafton</i>	<i>St. Clare</i>	<i>Dillon</i>	<i>Monox</i>
				
<i>Quarterly</i>	<i>Humphrey</i>	<i>Lowther</i>	<i>Brest</i>	<i>Tounson</i>
				
<i>Bourden</i>	<i>Cennino</i>	<i>Chapman</i>	<i>Shorter</i>	<i>Peacock</i>
				
<i>Cole</i>	<i>Washbourne</i>	<i>Shipstowe</i>	<i>Madden</i>	<i>Row-</i>
				
<i>Tremaine</i>	<i>Borough</i>	<i>Buocafuu</i>	<i>Villages</i>	<i>Gamin</i>
				
<i>Wells</i>	<i>Sault</i>	<i>Davy</i>	<i>Hoast</i>	<i>Bateman</i>
				
<i>Cookes</i>	<i>Douglas</i>	<i>Clarke</i>	<i>Stourgeon</i>	<i>Ambesace</i>



5. Argent, on a chevron sable, between three oak-leaves proper, as many besants, on a chief gules, a seamew between two anchors erected of the first; name, *Monox*.
6. Quarterly, first and fourth azure, a pale argent, second and third gules, a bend argent.
7. Sable, four pallets ermine; name, *Humphrey*.
8. Or, six annulets, three, two, and one, sable; name, *Lowther*.

*Note.*—When six things are borne, *three, two, and one*, it is unnecessary to mention their position.

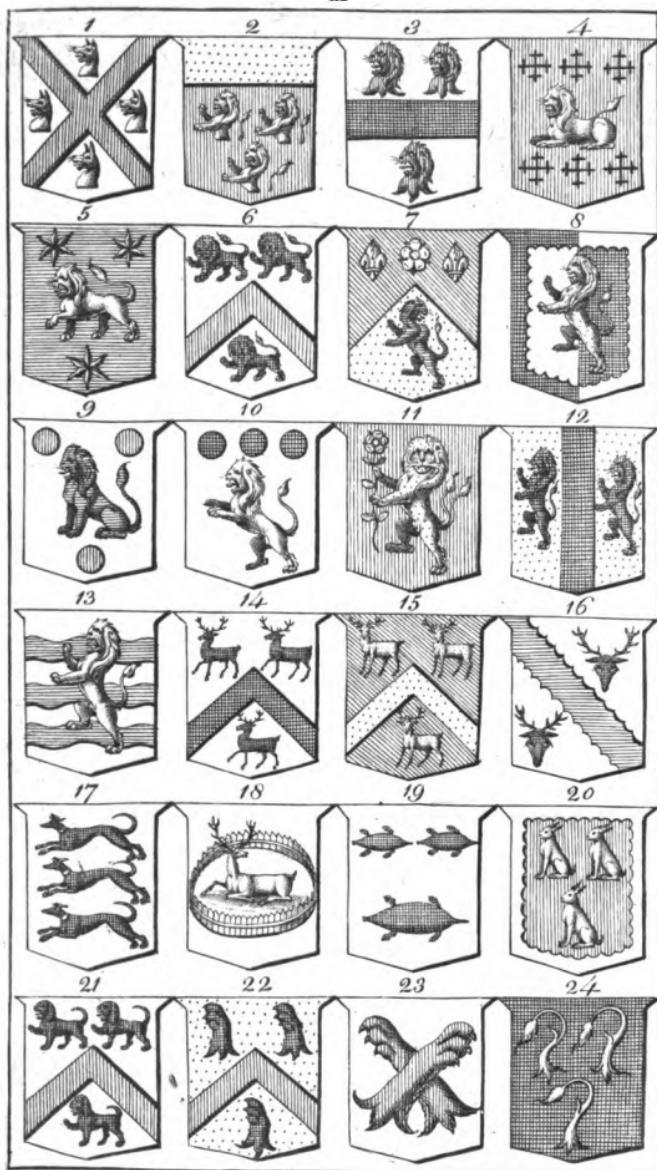
9. Gules, nine arrows or, each three, two saltirewise, and one in pale, banded together with a ribbon, feathered and headed argent; name, *Biest*.
10. Gules, five cross-croslets fitchy in saltire, between four escallop-shells in cross or: name, *Tonnson*.
11. Azure, three hautboys between as many cross-croslets or; name, *Bourden*.
12. Azure, a salamander or, in flames proper; name, *Cennino*.
13. Party per chevron, argent and gules, a crescent counterchanged; name, *Chapman*.
14. Party per saltire, or and sable, a border counterchanged; name, *Shorter*.
15. Quarterly or and azure, a cross of four lozenges between as many annulets counterchanged; name, *Peacock*.
16. Argent, a chevron gules, between three scorpions reversed sable; name, *Cole*.
17. Argent, on a fess, between six martlets gules, three cinquefoils of the field; name, *Washbourne*.
18. Sable, three scaling-ladders in bend argent; name, *Shipstowe*.
19. Sable, a falcon or, his wings expanded, trussing a mallard argent, on a chief of the latter, a cross botoné gules; name, *Madden*.
20. Argent, on a chevron azure, between three trefoils

slipped, party per pale gules and vert, as many besants; name, *Row*.

21. Gules, three dexter arms conjoined at the shoulders, and flexed in triangle, or, with the fists clenched towards the points of the shield proper; name, *Tremaine*.
22. Gules, the trunk of a tree eradicated (up by the roots) and couped in pale, sprouting out two branches argent; name, *Borough*.
23. Gules, a cherub, having three pair of wings, whereof the uppermost and lowermost are counterly crossed, and the middlemost displayed or; name, *Buocafoco*.
24. Argent, a man's heart gules, within two equilateral triangles interlaced; name, *Villages*.
25. Gules, three besants figured; name, *Gamin*.
26. Argent, a chevron voided, azure, between three flames of fire proper; name, *Wells*.
27. Sable, chevron rompu, enhanced between three mullets or; name, *Sault*.
28. Sable, a chevron engrailed, ermine, between three annulets argent; borne by the *Rev. Charles Dary*, of One-house, Suffolk.
29. Azure, a bull's head couped affronté, argent, winged and armed or; name, *Hoast*, of Holland.
30. Or, three stars issuing out of as many crescents gules; name, Bateman, *Visc. Bateman*.
31. Sable, a chevron or, between three attires of a stag fixed to the scalp, argent; name, *Cocks*, *Lord Somers*.
32. Argent, a man's heart gules, ensigned with an imperial crown or, on a chief azure, three mullets of the field; name, *Douglas*, of Scotland. The reason of this singular charge is, that one Douglas was sent on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, A.D. 1328, with the heart of *Robert Bruce*, King of Scotland, which, by order of that prince, was to be and is now buried there.
33. Argent, on a bend gules, between three pellets, as



## D



many swans proper, rewarded with a canton sinister azure, thereupon a demi-ram mounting argent, armed or, between two fleurs-de-lis of the last, over all a baton dexter-wise, as the second in the canton; this is the arms of *Sir John Clarke*. The canton was the arms of the *Duke of Longueville*, and was given as a reward to *Sir John Clarke*, for his taking in lawful war *Lewis de Orleans, Duke of Longueville and Marquis of Rotueline*, prisoner, at the battle of Bomy, near Terovane, August 16, *anno Hen. VIII. 5.*

34. Azure, three sturgeons naiant in pale argent, and debruised by a fret of eight pieces or; name, *Stourgeon*.
35. Or, three dice sable, each charged with an ace argent; name, *Ambesace*.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE D.

1. Argent, a saltire gules, between four wolves' heads couped proper; name, *Outlawe*.
2. Gules, three demi-lions rampant, a chief or; name, *Fisher*.
3. Argent, a fess sable, between three lions' heads erased gules, langued azure; name, *Farmer*.
4. Gules, a lion couchant between six cross-croslets, three in chief, and three in base barwise, argent; name, *Tynne*.
5. Azure, a lion passant, between three estoiles argent; name, *Burrard*.
6. Argent, a chevron gules, between three lions passant-gardant sable; name, *Cooke*.
7. Party per chevron, vert and or, in chief a rose or, between two fleurs-de-lis argent; in base a lion rampant-regardant, azure; name, *Gideon*.
8. Party per pale, argent and sable, a lion rampant or, within a border of the field, engrailed and counter-changed; name, *Champneys*.
9. Argent, a lion sejant azure, between three torteaux.

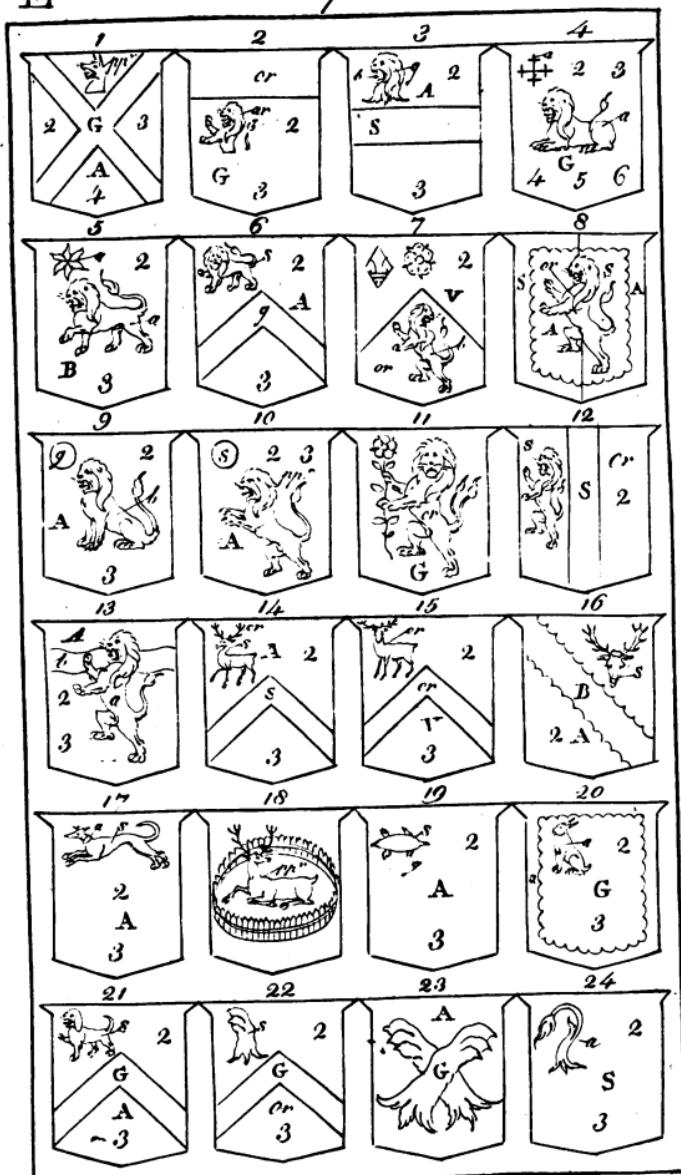
10. Argent, a lion saliant, in chief three pellets.
11. Gules, a lion rampant-gardant, double-quevée (or fourchée) or, holding in his paws a rose-branch proper; name, *Masters*.

The term *quevée* applies to the tail of a beast, and the term *fourchée* denotes its being forked, as the example.
12. Or, a pale between two lions rampant sable; name *Naylor*.
13. Argent, three bars wavy azure, over all a lion rampant of the first; name, *Bulbeck*.
14. Argent, a chevron between three bucks tripping sable, attired or; name, *Rogers*.
15. Vert, a chevron between three bucks standing at gaze or; name, *Robinson*.
16. Argent, a bend engrailed azure, between two bucks' heads cabosed sable; name, *Needham*.
17. Argent, three greyhounds current in pale sable, collared or; name *Moore*.
18. A hart cumbent upon a hill in a park paled, all proper; the arms of the town of Derby.
19. Argent, three moles sable, their snouts and feet gules; name, *Nangothan*.
20. Gules, three conies sejant within a bordure engrailed argent; name, *Conisbie*.
21. Argent, a chevron gules between three talbots passant sable; name, *Talbot*.
22. Or, a chevron gules between three lions' paws erased and erected sable; name, *Austen*, of Kent, baronet.
23. Argent, two lions' gambs erased in saltire, the dexter surmounted of the sinister, gules.
24. Sable, three lions' tails erect and erased argent; name, *Corke*.

The two plates E and G are introduced to show the student of heraldry the concise and easy method which is in practice among heralds, heraldic painters, and engravers, of tricking coats of arms.



E Sketch of Plate D



## HERALDIC ABBREVIATIONS,

Made use of in the heraldic sketches and blazons of plates E and G.

O	stands for	Or,
A		Argent,
G		Gules,
B		Blue,
V		Vert,
P		Purpure,
S		Sable,
Ppr		Proper,
Er		Ermine.

## ABBREVIATED BLAZON OF PLATE E.

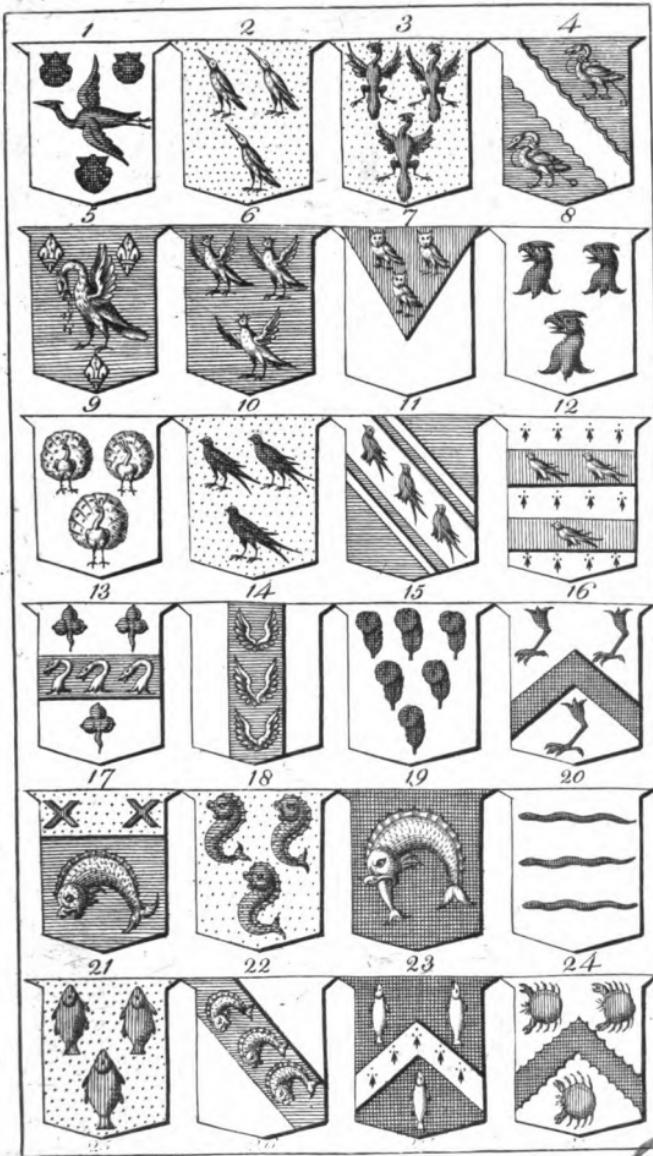
1. A, a saltire G, between four wolves' heads coupled Ppr.; name, *Outlawn*.
2. G, three demi-lions couped A, a chief O; name, *Fisher*.
3. A, on a fess S, between three lions' heads erased G, langued B; name, *Farmer*.
4. G, a lion couched between six cross-croslets, three in chief, and as many in base A; name, *Tynne*.
5. B, a lion passant, between three estoiles A; name, *Burrard*.
6. A chevron G, between three lions passant-gardant S; name, *Cooke*.
7. Party per chevron, V and O, in chief a rose O, between two fleurs-de-lis A, in base a lion rampant-regardant B; name, *Gideon*.
8. Party per pale, A and S, within a bordure of the same engrailed and counterchanged, a lion rampant O; name, *Champneys*.
9. A lion sejant B, between three torteaux.
10. A lion saliant Ppr. and in chief three pellets.
11. G, a lion rampant-gardant double quevée O, holding in his paws a rose-branch Ppr.; name, *Masters*.

12. O, a pale between two lions rampant S; name, *Naylor*.
13. A, three bars wavy B, over all a lion rampant of the first; name, *Bulbeck*.
14. A, chevron between three bucks tripping S, attired O; name, *Rogers*.
15. V, a chevron between three bucks standing at gaze O; name, *Robinson*.
16. A, a bend engrailed B, between two bucks' heads caboshed S; name, *Needham*.
17. A, three greyhounds current in pale S, collared of the first; name, *Moore*.
18. A hart cumbent upon a hill in a park paled, all Ppr.; the arms of the town of Derby.
19. A, three moles, S, their snouts and feet G; name, *Nangothan*.
20. G, three conies sejant, within a bordure engrailed A; name, *Conisbie*.
21. A, a chevron G, between three talbots passant S; name, *Talbot*.
22. O, a chevron G, between three lions' paws erased and erect S; name, *Austen*.
23. A, two lions' gambs erased in saltire, the dexter surmounted of the sinister G.
24. S, three lions' tails erect and erased A; name, *Corke*.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE F.

1. Argent, a heron volant, in fess azure, membered or, between three escallops, sable; name, *Herondon*.
2. Or, three kingfishers proper; name, *Fisher*.
3. Or, three eagles displayed gules; name, *Eglefelde*.
4. Azure, a bend engrailed between two cygnets royal argent, gorged with ducal crowns, strings reflexed over their backs, or; name, *Pitfield*.
5. Azure, a pelican with wings elevated and vulning her breast argent, between three fleurs-de-lis, or; name, *Kempton*.

F



UNIV.  
OF  
MICH.



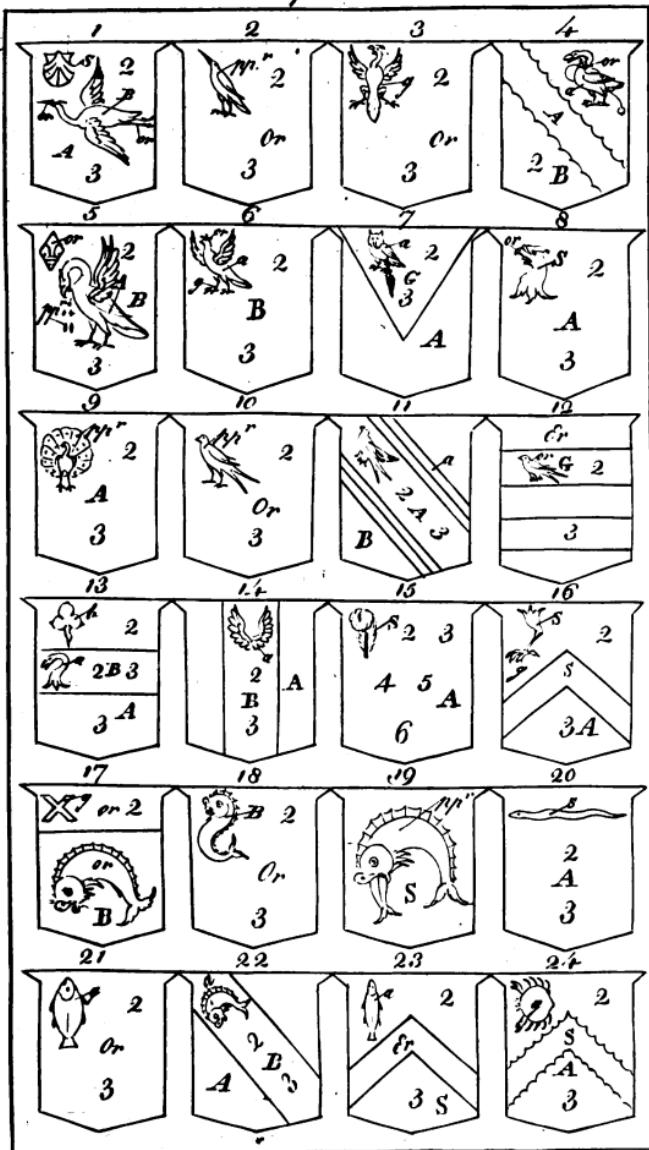
6. Azure, three doves rising argent, their wings gules, and crowned with ducal coronets or ; name, *Baylie*.
7. Argent, on a pile gules, three owls of the field ; name, *Cropley*.
8. Argent, three eagles' heads, or, erased sable ; name, *Yellen*.
9. Argent, three peacocks in their pride proper ; name, *Pawne*.
10. Or, three swallows close sable ; name, *Watton*.
11. Azure, on a bend cotised argent, three martlets gules ; name, *Edwards*.
12. Ermine, on two bars gules, three martlets or ; name, *Ward*.
13. Argent, on a fess between three trefoils azure, as many swans' heads erased of the first, beaked gules ; name, *Baker*.
14. Argent, on a pale azure, three pair of wings conjoined and elevated of the first ; name, *Potter*.
15. Argent, six ostrich-feathers, three, two, and one, sable ; name, *Jarvis*.
16. Argent, a chevron between three eagles' legs erased sable, their talons gules ; name, *Bray*.
17. Azure, a dolphin naiant embowed or, on a chief of the second, two saltires coupled gules ; name, *Frankland*.
18. Or, three dolphins hauriant embowed azure ; name, *Vandeput*.
19. Sable, a dolphin naiant, vorant a fish proper ; name, *James*.
20. Argent, three eels naiant in pale, sable ; name, *Ellis*.
21. Or, three chalbots hauriant gules ; name, *Chalbots*.
22. Argent, on a bend azure, three dolphins naiant of the first ; name, *Franklyn*.
23. Sable, a chevron ermine, between three salmons hauriant argent ; name, *Ord*.
24. Argent, a chevron engrailed sable, between three sea-crabs gules ; name, *Bridger*.

## ABBREVIATIONS OF PLATE C.

1. A, a heron volant, in fess B, membered O, between three escalops S ; name, *Herondon*.
2. O, three kingfishers Ppr. ; name, *Fisher*.
3. O, three eagles displayed G. ; name, *Eglefelde*.
4. B, a bend engrailed between two cygnets royal A, gorged with ducal crowns, strings reflexed over their backs O ; name, *Pifield*.
5. B, a pelican with wings elevated, and vulning her breast A, between three fleurs-de-lis O ; name, *Kempton*.
6. B, three doves rising A, their legs G, and crowned with ducal coronets O : name, *Baylie*.
7. A, on a pile G, three owls of the field ; name, *Cropley*.
8. A, three eagles' heads erased S, armed O ; name, *Yellen*.
9. A, three peacocks in their pride Ppr. ; name, *Pawne*.
10. O, three swallows close Ppr. ; name, *Watton*.
11. B, on a bend cotised A, three martlets G ; name, *Edwards*.
12. Er. on two bars G, three martlets, O ; name, *Ward*.
13. A, on a fess between three trefoils B, as many swans' necks erased of the first, beaked G ; name, *Baker*.
14. A, on a pale B, three pair of wings conjoined and elevated of the first ; name, *Potter*.
15. A, six ostrich-feathers S ; name, *Jarvis*.
16. A, a chevron between three eagles' legs erased *à la cuisse* (*cuisse signifies the thigh*) S, their talons G ; name, *Bray*.
17. B, a dolphin naiant embowed O, on a chief of the second two saltires G ; name, *Frankland*.
18. O, three dolphins hauriant B ; name, *Vandeput*.
19. S, a dolphin naiant, vorant a fish Ppr. ; name, *James*.
20. A, three eels naiant in pale S ; name, *Ellis*.
21. O, three chalbots hauriant G ; name, *Chalbots*.
22. A, on a bend B, three dolphins of the first ; name, *Franklyn*.
23. S, a chevron Er. between three salmons hauriant A ; name, *Ord*.

G

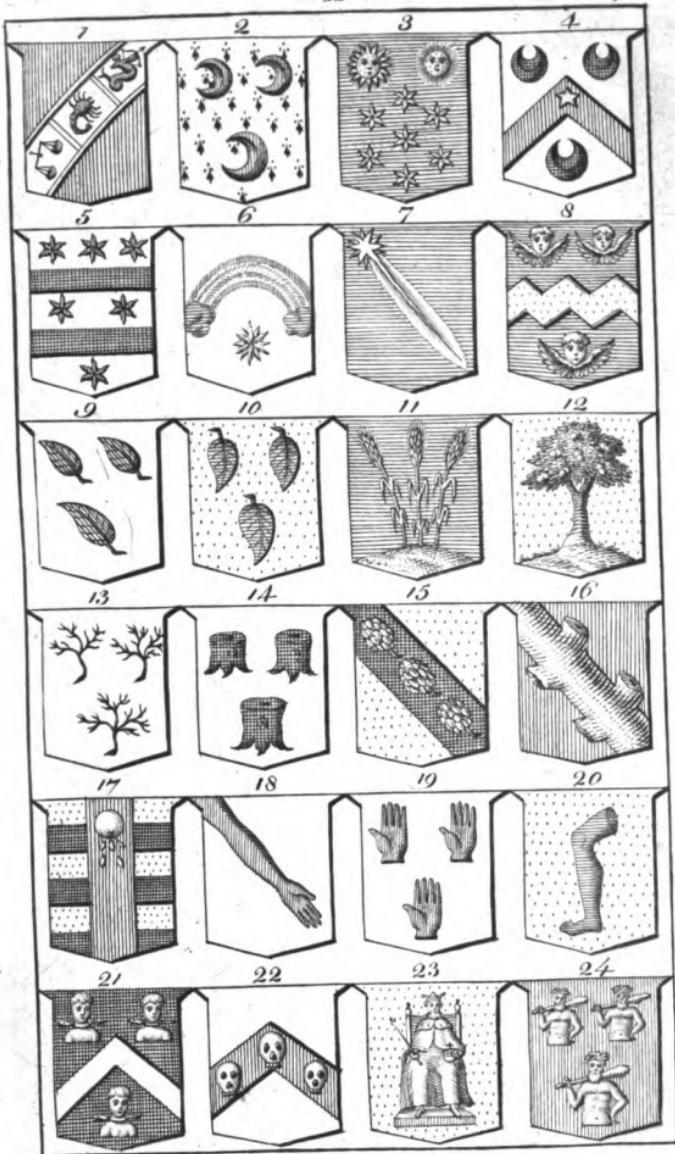
Sketch of Plate F







## H



24. A, a chevron engrailed S, between three sea-crabs G ; name, *Bridger*.

## BLAZONING OF PLATE H.

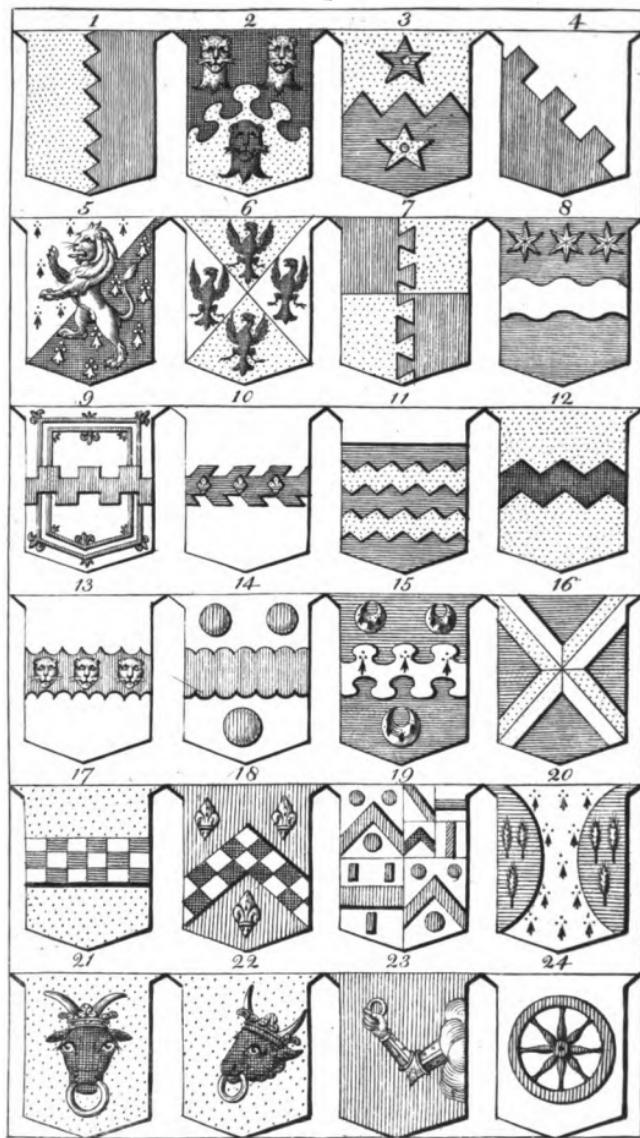
1. Gules, on a bend sinister argent, three of the celestial signs, viz. Sagittarius, Scorpio, and Libra, of the first.
2. Ermine, three increscents gules ; name, *Symmes*.
3. Azure, the sun, full moon, and seven stars or, the two first in chief, the last of orbicular form in base ; name, *Johannes de Fontibus*.
4. Argent, on a chevron gules, between three crescents sable, a mullet for difference or ; name, *Withers*.
5. Argent, two bars sable, between six estoiles, three, two, and one, gules ; name, *Pearse*.
6. Argent, issuant out of two petit clouds in fess azure, a rainbow in the nombril point, a star, proper.
7. Azure, a blazing star, or comet, streaming in bend proper ; name, *Cartwright*.
8. Azure, a fess dancetté or, between three cherubim's heads argent, crined of the second ; name, *Adye*.
9. Argent, three woodbine-leaves bend-wise proper, two and one ; name, *Theme*.
10. Or, three woodbine-leaves pendant azure ; name, *Gamboa*.
11. Azure, issuant out of a mount in base three wheat-stalks bladed and eared, all proper ; name, *Garzoni*.
12. Or, on a mount in base, an oak acorned proper ; name, *Wood*.
13. Argent, three starved branches slipped sable ; name, *Blackstock*.
14. Argent, three stocks or stumps of trees, couped and erased sable ; name, *Rewtowre*.
15. Or, on a bend sable, three clusters of grapes argent ; name, *Maroley*.
16. Gules, a bend of the limb of a tree, raguled and trunked argent ; name, *Penruddock*.
17. Barry of six pieces, or and sable, over all a pale gules, charged with a woman's breast distilling drops of milk proper ; name, *Dodge*.

18. Argent, an arm sinister, issuing out of the dexter point, and extended towards the sinister base, in form of a bend gules ; name, *Cornhill*.
19. Argent, three sinister hands couped at the wrist gules ; name, *Maynard*.
20. Or, a man's leg couped at the midst of the thigh azure ; name, *Haddon*.
21. Sable, a chevron between three children's heads couped at the shoulders argent, crined or, enwrapped about the necks with as many snakes proper ; name, *Vaughan*.
22. Argent, on a chevron gules, three men's skulls of the first ; name, *Bolter*.
23. Or, a king enthroned on his seat, royal azure, crowned, sceptred, and invested of the first ; the cape of his robe ermine. These are the arms of the city of Seville, in Spain.
24. Gules, three demi-savages, or wild men argent, holding clubs over their right shoulders or ; name, *Basil Wood*.

#### BLAZONING OF PLATE J.

1. Party per pale indented, or and gules ; name, *Birmingham*.
2. Party per chevron undy, sable and or, three panthers' heads erased counterchanged ; name, *Smith*.
3. Party per fess dancetté, or and azure, two mullets pierced counterchanged ; name, *Doubleday*.
4. Party per bend crenellé, argent and gules ; name, *Boyle*.
5. Party per bend sinister, ermine and ermines, a lion rampant or ; name, *Trevor*.
6. Party per saltire, argent and or, four eagles in cross sable ; name, *Barnsdale*.
7. Quarterly per pale, dove-tail, gules and or ; name, *Bromley*.
8. Azure, a fess wavy, argent, in chief three stars ; name, *Jenkinson*.
9. Argent, a double tressure-flory counter-flory, over all

J



UW



- a fess imbattled counter-imbattled gules ; name, *Miller*.
10. Argent, on a fess raguly azure, three fleurs-de-lis or ; name, *Atwood*.
  11. Azure, two bars indented or, a chief argent ; name, *Stoner*.
  12. Or, a fess dancetté sable ; name, *Vavasour*.
  13. Argent, on a fess engrailed gules, three leopards' faces or ; name, *Barbon*.
  14. Argent, a fess invecked, between three torteaux.
  15. Azure, a fess nebuly, between three crescents ermine ; name, *Weld*.
  16. Azure, a saltire quarterly quartered, or and argent, is the arms of the episcopal see of Bath and Wells.
  17. Or, a fess checky argent and azure ; name, *Stewart*.
  18. Gules, a chevron counter-compony argent and sable, between three fleurs-de-lis or ; name, *Shirley*.
  19. Quarterly, first and fourth argent, a chevron gules between three torteaux ; second quarterly ; first, argent, a bend gules ; second, argent, a fess azure ; third, argent, a chevron sable ; fourth, argent, a pale vert ; third, argent, a fess between three billets gules.
  20. Ermine, two flanches azure, each charged with three ears of wheat couped or ; name, *Greby*.
  21. Or, a buffalo's head caboshed sable, attired argent, through the nostrils an annulet of the last, ducally crowned gules, the attire passing through the crown ; is the arms of Mecklenburg.
  22. Or, a buffalo's head in profile sable, armed argent, ducally crowned gules ; is the arms of the barony of Rostock in Mecklenburg.
  23. Gules, an arm embowed, habited to the wrist in armour, issuing from clouds on the sinister side, and holding between the finger and thumb a gem-ring all proper, round the arm at the elbow a ribbon tied azure ; is the arms of the county of Schwerin in Germany.
  24. Argent, a wheel of eight spokes, gules ; is the arms of the Bishop of Osnaburgh.

### Marshalling.

MARSHALLING coats of arms is the art of disposing several, or more than one, of them in one escutcheon, and of distributing their parts and contingent ornaments in proper places. Coats of arms are thus marshalled on various accounts: viz. to show descent, marriage, alliance, adoption, or the gift of the sovereign.

Such coats as betoken marriage, represent either a match single or hereditary. By a single match is meant the conjoining of the coat-armours of a man and woman, descended of distinct families, in one escutcheon pale-wise; the man bears his coat on the dexter side of the escutcheon, and the sinister part for the woman. See the example, p. 13, n. 3.

Sometimes in blazon the man and woman are called *baron* and *femme*. There are three rules to be observed in impaling the arms of husband and wife: *First*, the husband's arms are always to be placed on the right side as *baron*, and the wife's on the left as *femme*. *Secondly*, that no husband can impale his wife's arms with his own on a surcoat of arms, ensign, or banner, but may use them impaled on domestic utensils. *Thirdly*, that no husband impaling his wife's arms with his own can surround the shield with the order of the Garter, or with any other order.

Where a match is hereditary, as when a man marries an heiress and has issue by her, it is in his choice whether he will still bear her coat impaled, or in an escutcheon of pretence upon his own; because he pretendeth (God giving life to such his issue) to bear the same coat of his wife to him and to his heirs.

Moreover the heir of these two inheritors shall bear the hereditary coats of his father and mother to himself and his heirs quarterly: the father's in the first and fourth, the mother's in the second and third

quarters, to show that the inheritance, as well of the possessions, as of the coat-armours, are invested in them and their posterity. See p. C, n. 6. If the wife be no heir, neither her husband nor child shall have further to do with her coat, than to set up the same in their house pale-wise, to show the father's match with such a family.

Concerning the bearing of several coat-armours pale-wise in one escutcheon (according to *Gerard Leigh*,) viz. the marshalling of divers femmes with one baron, he says, "If a man marry two wives, the first shall be placed on the sinister side of the chief part, and the second's coat on the base impaled with the husband." P. 13, n. 5.

Arms of a man and his three wives ; the first two tierced in chief with his own, and the third in base. P. 13, n. 6.

Arms of a man and his four wives ; the two first tierced in chief, and the third and fourth in base. P. 13, n. 7.

Arms of a man and his five wives ; his own in the middle, with his first three on the dexter side, and the fourth and fifth on the sinister. P. 13, n. 8.

Arms of a man and his six wives ; his own in the middle, with his first three on the dexter side, and the other three on the sinister. P. 13, n. 9.

Arms of a man and his seven wives ; his own in the middle, with his first four on the dexter side, and the other three on the sinister. P. 13, n. 10.

#### ARMS OF A WIDOW.

A widow is to impale the arms of her late husband on the dexter side of the paternal coat of her ancestor, upon a lozenge. P. 13, n. 11.

#### ARMS OF A MAIDEN, OR DOWAGER LADY OF QUALITY.

If a maiden, or dowager lady of quality, marry a commoner, or a nobleman inferior to her in rank, their

coats of arms must be set side by side in two separate escutcheons. As the lady still retains not only her title and rank, but even her maiden or widow appellation, she must continue her arms in a maiden or widow's escutcheon, which is a lozenge, placed on the sinister side of her husband's; the arms ornamented according to her title. See p. 18, n. 16.

#### ARMS OF A WIDOW AND HEIRESS.

The arms of a widow, being an heiress, are to be borne on an escutcheon of pretence, over those of her late husband, in a lozenge. P. 13, n. 12.

#### ARMS OF A WIFE AND TWO HUSBANDS.

Of a wife and her two husbands; the arms of the first husband in chief; the arms of the second husband in base, impaled on the dexter side of her own. See p. 13, n. 13.

#### ARMS OF A BACHELOR.

Whilst he remains such, he may quarter his paternal coat with other coats, if any right to him belongs; but may not impale it till he is married. P. 13, n. 1.

#### ARMS OF A MAID.

She is entitled to bear the coat of her ancestor in a lozenge. See p. 13, n. 2. If her father bore any difference in his coat, the same ought to be continued; for by that mark will be known what branch she descends from.

#### ARMS OF AN HEIRESS.

The arms of an heiress, when married, are not to be impaled with the arms of her husband, but are to be borne on an escutcheon of pretence, placed in the

centre of the shield, as p. 13, n. 4. It is termed an escutcheon of pretence on account of its showing his pretension to her estate; and if the husband has issue by her, the heir of those two inheritors shall bear the hereditary coats of arms of the father and mother quarterly. See example, p. C, n. 6; the first and fourth quarters containing the father's arms, and the second and third the mother's. Again, if he whose ancestor had married an heiress should choose to bear the crest of her family in preference to that of his own, he certainly may do it, as being the representative of the lady's family.

All co-heiresses convey also to their husbands a right of bearing their arms on an escutcheon of pretence, the same as an heiress.

If all the brothers die without issue, and leave sisters behind, as they are co-inheritors of the land and estate, so shall they be of the coat-armour also, without any distinction at all to either of them; because by them the name of the house cannot be preserved, being all reckoned but as one heir.

Nisbit says, anciently women of noble descent used to bear their fathers' arms on their habits in a lozenge shield, to show their descent; and to join them with those of their husbands, they bore them on their habits, such as *mantles* and *kirtles*. The practice is ancient; for in old illuminated books of heraldry and old paintings, great ladies are represented with arms on their *mantles* and *kirtles*. The ancient heralds tell us, when the arms are both on the *mantle* and *kirtle*, they are then those of their fathers; and when there are arms on the *mantle* different from those on the under habit, the *kirtle*, she is then a wife; those on the *mantle* belong to her husband, who is a cloak to shroud the wife from all violence, and the other on the *kirtle* belonged to her father, accompanied or accompagnee (an ancient term

for the English word between or betwixt), as the ordinaries when placed between small charges.

#### ARMS OF A BISHOP.

Such as have a function ecclesiastical, and are preferred to the honour of pastoral jurisdiction, are said to be knit in nuptial bands of love and care for the cathedral churches whereof they are superintendents ; therefore their paternal coat is marshalled on the left side of the escutcheon, giving the pre-eminence of the right side to the arms of their see ; as the example, p. 18, n. 13.

#### ARMS OF A KNIGHT OF THE GARTER, AND HIS LADY.

When married, the arms of his wife must be placed in a distinct shield, because his own is surrounded with the ensign of that order ; for though the husband may give his equal half of the escutcheon and hereditary honour, yet he cannot share his temporary order of knighthood with her, except she be sovereign of the order. P. 18, n. 14.

#### ARMS QUARTERLY,

Is when a shield is divided into many parts, then it shows the bearer's alliance to several families : and it is to be observed, that in all marshalled arms, quarterly with coats of alliance, the paternal coat is always placed in the first quarter ; as p. C, n. 6.

When a coat is borne with four or more quarterings, and any one or more of those quarterings are again divided into two or more coats, then such a quarter is termed a *grand quarter*, and is said to be quarterly, or counter-quartered. Plate J, n. 10.

The first that quartered arms in England was *King Edward III.*, who bore England and France

in right of his mother *Isabel*, daughter and heir of *Philip IV.* of France, and heir also to her three brothers, successively kings of France, which the same king afterwards changed to France and England upon his laying claim to the said kingdom ; and about the end of his reign his subjects began to imitate him, and quartered the arms of their maternal ancestors ; the first of whom is said to be Hastings Earl of Pembroke.

#### ARMS OF A BARONET.

The arms of Sir George Beaumont, of Stoughton, Leicestershire, baronet: azure, semée of fleurs-de-lis, a lion rampant or, in a canton argent, a sinister hand couped at the wrist and erect, gules.

The canton charged with the hand, is the arms of the province of Ulster in Ireland, and was given by King James the First as a badge or augmentation of honour to all baronets. It may be placed as in the example, p. 18, n. 15, or in an escutcheon, and is generally borne in the most convenient part of the shield, so as not to cover any principal charge.

#### ARMS OF A COMMONER AND LADY.

If a commoner marry a lady of quality, he is not to impale her arms with his own ; they are to be set aside of one another in separate shields, as the lady still retains her title and rank : therefore her arms are placed as the example, p. 18, n. 16.

#### MARSHALLING BORDERED COATS.

When a coat of arms, surrounded with a border, is marshalled pale-wise with another, then that part of the border which is next the coat impaled with it must be omitted. See p. 13, n. 14. But if a bordered coat be marshalled with other coats quarterly, then no part of the border must be omitted. See p. 13, n. 15.

## Exterior Ornaments.

THE exterior ornaments of the escutcheon are the helmet, mantling, wreath, crest, badge, motto, supporters, crown, or coronet.

### HELMETS.

The helmet being placed at the top of the escutcheon, claims our first attention. These pieces of armour for the head have varied in different ages and countries, both in form and the materials of which they were made, and they still differ according to the rank of the bearer. See Plate 10.

First, The full-faced helmet with six bars, all of gold, for the sovereign and princes of the blood.

Second, The full-faced helmet with five bars; the helmet steel, and the bars and breast part gold; for dukes and marquesses.

Third, A profile or side-faced helmet of steel; the bars, bailes, or grills, and ornaments gold; for earls, viscounts, and barons.

Fourth, A full-faced helmet of steel, with its beaver or vizor open; for baronets and knights, n. 3, p. 10.

Fifth, A profile or side-faced helmet of steel, with the vizor shut; for an esquire, n. 4.

*If two helmets are placed on one shield, they are usually set face to face, in imitation of the Germans, who sometimes place ten or more helmets on a shield, and in such case set the centre helmet affrontée, and those on each side looking towards that in the centre.*

### MANTLING.

The mantling was anciently fixed to the helmet, like that now worn round the caps of our heavy dragoons. When a commander came from the field of battle, his mantling used to hang behind him in a

loose and ragged manner; and the more hacked and cut it was, the more honourable it was accounted.

Mantlings are now used like cloaks to cover the whole achievement, instead of, as anciently, being coverings for the head, or ornaments flowing from the helmet.

According to the modernized mode of bearing mantles, those of the sovereigns are supposed to be of gold doubled with ermine; those of the peers, crimson velvet folded, and ermine inside; and those of knights and gentlemen, crimson velvet doubled with white satin.

Mr. Edmondson, in his Complete Body of Heraldry, says, in the year 1760 he proposed to several of the peers, to paint on their carriages their arms placed in mantles of crimson, with their edges thrown back so as to show their doublings and linings, which should be of ermine, and containing a number of rows of ermine spots, equal to those of the guards on their coronation robes, expressing their respective degrees: viz. a baron, *two rows*; a viscount, *two and a half*; an earl, *three*; a marquis, *three and a half*; a duke, *four*, &c.

" This proposal having met with general approbation was carried into execution, and had the desired effect of showing the distinction between the several degrees of our nobility; after which I formed mantles for the knights companions of the several orders, taken from the mantle and robes which they wear at their installations."

#### THE WREATH.

The wreath is placed over the helmet as a support for the crest. It is composed of two rolls of silk twisted together, and of the colours or metal of the arms. If one of the rolls be metal, the other must be of the principal colour of the arms; but when there is

no metal in the arms, then one of the rolls should be of the colour of the field, and the other part of the colour of the immediate charge.

In the time of Henry I., and long after, no man, who was under the degree of a knight, had his crest set on a wreath.

#### THE CREST.

The crest is the highest part of the ornaments of a coat of arms, and is placed on the wreath.\* Anciently crests were worn on the heads of commanders in the field, in order to distinguish them from their followers.

After the institution of the order of the Garter, and in imitation of King Edward the Third, who was the first king of England that bore a crest on his helmet, all knights companions of the order began to wear crests. This practice soon became more general, until at length they were assumed discretionally by all who considered themselves as legally entitled to bear arms.

#### BADGES.

Badges were anciently placed on banners, ensigns, caparisons, and the breasts or shoulders of private soldiers, servants, and attendants; and that without any wreath, or other thing, under them. They were much used from the reign of King Edward the First until that of Queen Elizabeth, when they grew into disuse.

General Leigh says, the badge was not placed on a

---

\* For a more complete explanation, and for the most extensive collection of family crests ever published, the reader is referred to *The Book of Family Crests and Mottos*, comprising nearly every family bearing, alphabetically arranged according to surnames, and properly blazoned; accompanied by upwards of four thousand engravings, &c. &c.: a new and enlarged edition of which has recently been published.

wreath in the time of Henry the Fifth ; and long after, that no man had his badge on a wreath under the degree of a knight.

The Earl of Delawarr bears the *crampette* and *impaled rose*; and the Lord Abergavenny bears the *portcullis* and *rose*, which were ancient badges, Plate 15, n. 31 to 35 ; and refer, for further particulars, to the article BADGES, in the DICTIONARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS.

#### MOTTO.

The motto, *mot*, *word*, *expression*, *saying*, or *epigraph*, added or appropriated to arms, not being hereditary, may be taken, changed, varied, or relinquished, when and as often as the bearer thinks fit ; and may, with impunity to the assumer, be the same as is used by other families.

#### SUPPORTERS.

Supporters are exterior ornaments, placed at the sides of the escutcheon to support it. Minstrier and others say, that supporters had their origin from tilts and tournaments, wherein the knights caused their shields to be carried by servants or pages, under the disguise of lions, bears, griffins, Moors, &c., who also held and guarded the escutcheons, which the knights were obliged to expose to public view some time before the lists were opened.

Supporters have formerly been taken from such animals or birds as are borne in the shields, and sometimes they have been chosen as bearing some allusion to the achievements of those whose arms they support.

It does not appear to have been customary with our ancestors to change or alter their family supporters ; neither is it a practice used in our days, except in

some singular instances, and then it has been done under the sanction of the royal sign-manual, &c.

The practice of the sovereigns of England granting supporters to the peers of each degree, seems to have commenced in the reign of King Henry the Eighth, as did that of granting the like ornaments to the arms of the knights of the Garter and of the Bath.

The royal supporters, since King James the First, have been a lion and unicorn. Edward III. first assumed, in the arms of England, the fleur-de-lis semée, and Henry IV. had them changed to three only.

Mr. Shaw, in his first vol. of "Staffordshire," says, the sovereigns of England from Edward III. to Queen Elizabeth bore their supporters as follows :—

Edward III.	A Lion and Eagle.
Richard II.	Not in the Book.
Henry IV.	White Antelope and White Swan.
Henry V.	Lion and Antelope.
Henry VI.	The same.
Edward IV.	Lion and Black Bull.
Edward V.	Yellow Lion and White Lion.
Richard III.	Yellow Lion and White Boar.
Henry VII.	Lion and Red Dragon.
Henry VIII.	Lion and Silver Greyhound.
Mary.	Lion and Greyhound.
Elizabeth.	The same.

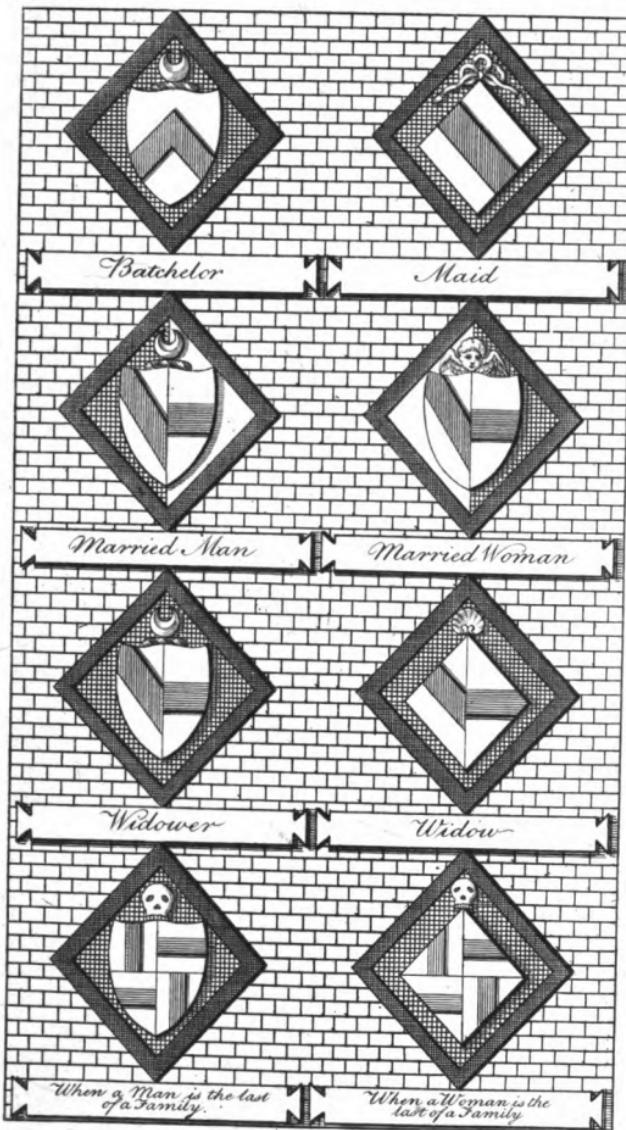
The Nova-Scotia baronets are, by their patents of creation, allowed to carry supporters, notwithstanding that privilege was not granted to the English baronets, at the time of the institution of their dignity. Some of the English baronets now bear supporters, but it is by virtue of a royal licence obtained for that special purpose.

The kings of arms in England are not authorised to grant supporters to any person under the degree of a knight of the Bath, unless they receive a royal warrant directed to them for that purpose : and yet Lyon



K

HATCHMENTS.



king of arms of Scotland may, by virtue of his office, grant supporters without such royal warrant, and has frequently put that power in practice.

The eldest sons of peers, above the degree of a baron, bear the fathers' arms and supporters with a label, and use the coronet belonging to their fathers' second title, if he has one ; but all younger sons bear their arms with proper differences, and use no coronet or supporters.

### Hatchments.

By the following rules may be known, upon sight of any hatchment, what the person was when living, whether a private gentleman, or a nobleman ; whether a married man, bachelor, or widower ; a married woman, maid, or widow, &c.

#### BACHELOR. PLATE K.

When a bachelor dies, his arms and crest are painted single or quartered, but never impaled ; the ground of the hatchment under the shield is all black.

#### MAIDEN. PLATE K.

When a maiden dies, her arms (but no crest) must be placed in a lozenge, and may be single or quartered, with the ground under the escutcheon all black, as the former.

#### MARRIED MAN. PLATE K.

When a married man dies, his arms are impaled with his wife's ; the ground of the hatchment under his side of the shield in black, the ground under his wife's side in white ; the black side signifies the husband to be dead, and the white side denotes the wife to be living.

## MARRIED WOMAN. PLATE K.

When a married woman dies, her arms are impaled with her husband's (but no crest) ; the ground of the hatchment under her side of the shield is black, that of her husband white ; which signifies the wife to be dead, and the husband living.

## WIDOWER. PLATE K.

When a widower dies, his arms are impaled with those of his deceased wife, with his crest ; the ground of the hatchment to be all black.

## WIDOW. PLATE K.

When a widow dies, her arms are impaled with her husband's in a lozenge (but no crest) ; the ground of the hatchment to be all black.

When a man is the last of a family, the death's head supplies the place of a crest, denoting that death has conquered all.

When a woman is the last of a family, her arms are placed in a lozenge, with a death's head on the top.

## OTHER DISTINCTIONS.

The peer is distinguished by his coronet and supporters.

The baronet by his peculiar badge.

The knight-companion by the motto of his order.

The bishop by the mitre.

**Heraldry,**  
**In Conjunction with Architecture.**

---

THE revival of the various styles of architecture which prevailed in Britain from the Norman Conquest to the reign of James the First, has rendered the study of the Heraldic ornaments which formed so prominent a feature in the ecclesiastical structures of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, an object of interest to all engaged in the erection or decoration of churches or other public buildings ; particularly as a taste prevails for that style of architecture where heraldic figures were most lavishly applied in external and internal decoration.

Those who assert that Heraldry as a science was little known previous to the Crusades, are in some degree borne out in their statements, by the total absence of heraldic ornament in the ecclesiastical and castellated structures erected during the eleventh and twelfth centuries, in the Anglo-Norman style of architecture.—That this omission was not caused by the inability of the sculptors of that period, is proved by the elaborate carvings exhibited in the semi-circular doorways and windows, the highly wrought and diversified piers, to which may be added the sculptured figures which may be seen at the present time at Iffley, Malmesbury, and many other places. Heraldic ornaments formed no part of the decoration of the buildings first erected in the Lancet or Early English style of architecture ; but at a later period, when this style of building became more extended, and the simple pointed or lancet-shaped windows were superseded by the introduction of windows divided by mullions, and other deviations from the original simplicity of this beautiful style of architecture, Heraldic ornaments were introduced. The large shields on the side walls of the nave of Westminster Abbey, erected during the reign

of Henry III., A.D. 1249, may be cited as one of the early introductions of Heraldry as an adjunct to architecture.

When the Early English style had become so altered by the introduction of exuberant ornament, and by large pointed arched windows divided by mullions, terminating in flowing tracery filling up the heading of the windows, by an almost infinite variety of graceful curves, the boldness and elegance of the embellishments introduced into the structures erected about the time of Edward III., A.D. 1327—1377, demanded a distinct title; and it is now designated the Decorated style of architecture.

In this splendid era of English architecture, Heraldry became a distinguished feature, particularly in its application to sepulchral monuments. One of the earliest and most beautiful altar tombs erected in the Decorated style is that of Queen Eleanor, the lamented consort of Edward the First, in St. Edward's Chapel, Westminster. Each side of the tomb is divided by small buttresses into six compartments,

having angular canopies ornamented with crockets and finials; each compartment contains a shield of arms, sculptured as suspended from an oak or vine branch; a representation of one compartment is given in the annexed engraving. The charges on the shields, which are repeated alternately, are those of England, three lions passant-gardant, Castile and Leon quarterly; first and fourth, a castle, and



second and third, a lion rampant. This was the paternal shield of arms of the deceased Queen, which she inherited from her father, Ferdinand the Third, who quartered the arms of two kingdoms, viz.,

Castile and Leon, in one shield. This is said to be the earliest instance of two coats of arms being borne quarterly ; and the example was followed by Edward the Third, when he quartered the arms of France with those of England—the third shield for Ponthieu, viz., three bendlets within a bordure. These Heraldic symbols sufficiently declare to posterity the title and connexions of the deceased Queen, and supply the place of a long pompous inscription.

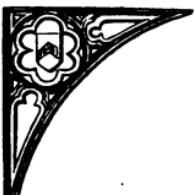
During the reign of Edward the Third, chivalry, and, consequently, Heraldry, became the ruling fashion of the time. Every person who could rank above a yeoman desired to obtain those heraldic honours which could alone be granted by the Earl Marshal and the King-at-Arms. Those who were allowed to bear coats of arms sought every opportunity of displaying them on their banners, habiliments, and the furniture of their apartments. The contributor to the foundation of a religious establishment was in some measure rewarded by having his arms emblazoned in a conspicuous part of the building ; and these assumed the appearance of architectural ornaments by filling up spaces between the arches, (as represented in the annexed engraving,) which would otherwise have presented too much of the plain surface of the wall. Shields of arms are thus disposed in the nave and transepts of York Minster. In some instances, Heraldic ornaments formed part of the decorations introduced in the capitals. The annexed cut is taken from a column in



Bloxham Church, Oxon. It is said to represent Saint George. The cross is emblazoned on his shield, and on the pennon attached to the lance. Spandrels of arches were frequently filled up with shields of arms.

The arms in the annexed cut form part of the pierced work that supports the transom beams in the Chapter-house of Exeter Cathedral.

The recumbent figures of knights upon altar-tombs were generally sculptured in complete armour, with their arms emblazoned on the shield.



In some instances, the arms are emblazoned in their proper tinctures and metals. The sculptured figure of Magnaville, Earl of Essex, in the Temple Church, is said to be the earliest instance of the arms being placed in the shield. The Earl died at the latter end of the twelfth century. The shield is diapered ; there are some indications of a fess dancette, over all an escarbuncle : see Tab. 7, No. 18. According to Granger, an escarbuncle was a buckle set with precious stones, by which the belt or sash was fastened. It was the cognizance of the Earls of Anjou. Not only did the shields and the charges upon them become architectural ornaments, but the badges and devices of the king and nobility were admitted in the decoration of corbels, cornices, and capitals.

The splendid windows of the Decorated style were filled with stained and painted glass, which admitted shields of arms to be emblazoned in their proper colours. Whole length and kneeling male and female figures are frequently seen in ancient windows. The figure of the knight is usually depicted with his arms emblazoned on his surcoat or tabard ; the dame or lady is frequently habited in garments bearing heraldic charges ; on the fore part of the close robe that covers her body was emblazoned her paternal arms, and the charges she was entitled to assume

in her own right. This dress was called the kirtle. The mantle worn over her shoulders was considered typical of honour and protection, and on this garment the arms of her husband were emblazoned.

We have now to glance at Heraldry as an adjunct to architecture, when the flowing tracery of the decorated style gave place to the latest style of English architecture, now called the Perpendicular. This transition took place about the end of the fourteenth century. Heraldry before this period was only admitted as a portion of the architectural ornament; but, from the exuberant display of symbolic figures, and the almost entire absence of other ornaments, it became an integral part of the architectural character; and it has always been a matter of surprise, when looking at the stately buildings erected under the auspices of the Tudors, that the architecture of this period did not obtain the title of the Heraldic style. England contains two buildings in the Perpendicular style, which for architectural splendour are unequalled in Europe, or perhaps in the world. One is King's College Chapel, at Cambridge; the other Henry the Seventh's Chapel, at Westminster. It is not our province to dilate upon the beauties of either of these splendid structures, farther than to notice the gorgeous display of Heraldry that pervades them.

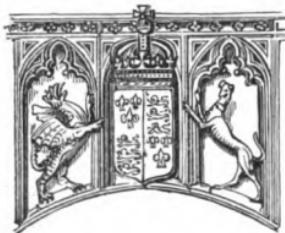
The west and south entrances of King's College Chapel are enriched with bold carvings of the badges of King Henry the Seventh, in whose reign they were erected; but, as the Royal badges will again come under notice, when describing the chapel at Westminster, we will at once enter King's College Chapel; and no person ever glanced his eye over the wonders around and above him, without being awestruck at the daring of the architect that could plan, and the builders that could erect such a structure. The whole of the lower part of the Chapel beneath the

windows is divided into panels, and every panel is filled with the arms of the king who erected the building. The annexed engraving is a representation of his arms and supporters : they fill three large compartments under each window. The immense pendants hanging from the gorgeous roof are ornamented with the rose, the royal badge of both the king and queen at this period.

The gateway of the tower of St. John's College has a noble display of Heraldry in the arms, supporters, badges, &c., of the noble foundress, Margaret, Countess of Richmond.

The Entrance Tower of Trinity College is decorated with the statue of Henry the Eighth. Beneath it are his arms beautifully carved with six additional shields belonging to different members of his family.

We have now to notice Henry the Seventh's Chapel at Westminster. Mr. Brayley, in his history of this splendid structure, observes, "there is no other edifice in the kingdom in which external ornaments have been spread over its surface with such exuberant luxuriance. It would seem, indeed, as though the architect had intended to give to stone the character of embroidery, and inclose its walls within meshes of lace-work : with the exception of the plinth, every part is covered by sculptural decorations ; the buttress towers are crested by ornamental domes, and enriched by niches and elegant tracery. The cross springers are crossed with airy forms, and the very cornices and parapets are charged even to profusion with armorial cognizances." If we were to notice the application of the arms, badges, animals, &c., which decorate the exterior of this building, it would occupy a much larger volume than the one that contains these brief



remarks. We must, therefore, proceed to the interior, and we are arrested on our very entrance to this gorgeous temple by the display of Heraldic devices on the brazen gates. The central gates are divided into sixty-eight perforated compartments of an oblong figure, each of which contains a badge of different members of the Houses of York and Lancaster. Among others is the well-known badge of Edward the Fourth, viz., the falcon with an open fetter-lock, the portcullis chained and crowned, three fleurs-de-lis, a root of daisies intersecting a coronet; the letters H.R. in a knot: but we dare not loiter at the entrance. On each side of the Chapel are the elegantly-carved stalls, now appropriated to the Knights of the Bath, each surmounted by a canopy of delicate tabernacle-work, no two being alike. The helmets, swords, and banners of the knights would add to the splendour of any other place, but here appear mean compared to the gorgeous architecture above and around them. The cornices are formed by demi-angels, supporting the royal badges. Dragons, greyhounds, and lions, supporting shields, intermixed with beautiful foliage, form the ornaments of the arches of the ceiling, filled up with fan-tracery, from which hang pendants, &c.

Following are representations of some of the royal badges found in this Chapel:—

1. The badge of York—the white rose crowned. In some instances, this rose is parted per pale argent and gules, showing the union of the houses of York and Lancaster;—the latter having adopted the red rose as its badge.





The fleur-de-lis crowned, the badge of France.



The portcullis crowned and chained, the ancient badge of the Beauforts ; used by Henry the Seventh, as a descendant from that family.



The letter H. R. in a knot is worked into the open work of the compartments of the centre gates of the Chapel, and also in the sculptured cornices. Knots were frequently used as badges to distinguish different families : see Pl. 15, No. 31 to 35.



The Broom-plant—  
planta-genista — was  
the badge of the Plantagenets, whence their  
name was derived. The  
annexed example is  
from the cornice in  
Westminster Hall.



King's College Chapel, and the Chapel at Westminster, were both completed in the reign of Henry the Eighth, and were the last efforts of English Pointed architecture. The Reformation put a stop to archi-

tectural splendour in the construction of buildings for divine worship, and Heraldry no longer held its place in connection with architecture. The discovery of the art of printing had enabled the publishers to produce translations of the classic authors. The architecture of Greece and Rome, in addition to their inherent beauty, had all the charms of novelty. English architecture was neglected, and the mansions of the nobility and gentry erected during the reign of Elizabeth, all show the hold that the classic orders had obtained at that time, though the builders were unacquainted with the means of applying them correctly. By the accidental mixture of the panelled work of the Tudors with the Greek columns and entablatures, producing that style of building called Elizabethan, Heraldry was partially admitted into the heterogeneous yet picturesque masses erected during the reign of the Virgin Queen, and her successor. Inigo Jones, and Sir Christopher Wren, by introducing the classic orders in their purity and beauty, put an end to the incongruities of the Elizabethan style ; and from this period to the latter end of the reign of George the Third, churches, palaces, and public buildings, that had any pretensions to architectural elegance, were all erected in the classic orders.

Architects of the present day prove, by many of their works, that they have caught the spirit of the ancient masters. Heraldry has again become an adjunct to architecture ; and the new and important National Public edifices erected on the site of the ancient palace of the British monarchs at Westminster, will not disgrace the glorious specimens of ancient art near which they are placed.

## A

## Dictionary of Technical Terms.

## ABA—AFF

**ABATEMENTS** are certain marks of disgrace added to arms, for some dishonourable action committed by the bearer; but as there is now not an instance of such dishonourable bearings, we shall not insert them; especially as a person not being obliged to make use of arms, it cannot be supposed that any one would voluntarily exhibit a mark of infamy to himself and family.

**ACCIDENTS OF ARMS.** A term which appears to have no meaning in blazonry, although frequently mentioned by authors, who suppose it to signify no more than the strictures and marks of differences.

**ACCOSED** signifies side by side, as Guillim blazons the arms of Harman; viz. Azure, a chevron, between six rams, *accoset*, counter-tripping, two, two and two. See T. 9, n. 10.

**ACCRUED**, full-grown; used of trees.

**ACHIEVEMENT**, (French *achèvement*, the performance of an action, *achever*, to perform) the escutcheon containing the ensigns armorial granted to any man for the performance of great actions. This word is corrupted to HATCHMENT.

**ACORNED.** This term is for an oak-tree, or branch, with acorns on it.

**ADDITIONS.** See AUGMENTATIONS.

**ADDORSED, ADOSSE, or ADOSSED**, signifies turned back to back. T. 9, n. 7. *Two lions rampant addorsed.*

**ADUMBRATION** is the shadow only of any bearing, outlined and painted of a colour darker than the field.

**AFFRONTÉ**, front-faced, full-faced; as, a *savage's head affronté*. P. 13, n. 24. This term is also occasionally

used in the same sense as *gardant*; as, a *lion sejant affronté*.

**AISLÉ**, winged, or having wings.

**A LA CUISSÉ** (French) at the thigh: erased or couped *à la cuisse*.

**ALANT**, a mastiff-dog with short ears. It was one of the supporters to the arms of *Lord Dacre*.

**ALLERION** is an eagle without beak or feet. T. 8, n. 6.

**ALTERNATE, ALTERNATELY**, by turns, one after another, applying to the positions of quarterings, &c., that succeed one another by turns.

**AMBULANT**, walking; the same as *passant*.

**AMETHYST**, the name of a precious stone of a violet colour, formerly used in blazoning the arms of peers instead of purpure.

**AMPHISIEN COCKATRICE**. See **BASILISK**.

**ANCHOR** is the emblem of Hope, and taken for such in a spiritual as well as a temporal sense; hope being, as it were, the anchor which holds us firm to our faith in all adversities. When used as a bearing, it is drawn without a cable, unless it be mentioned in the blazonry. P. 12, n. 10. *Gules, an anchor in bend argent, the timber thereof or.*

**ANCHORED, OR ANCRED**, a cross so termed; as the four extremities of it resemble the fluke of an anchor. P. 4, n. 33.

**ANGLES**, two angles interlaced saltierwise; at each end an annulet. P. 13, n. 3. *Three pairs* of these are borne by the name of *Wastley*.

**ANIMÉ**. See **INCENSED**.

**ANNODATED**, another term for *nowed*; bent in the form of the letter S. The serpents round the caduceus of Mercury may be said to be annodated.

**ANNULET**, a ring. Leigh supposes annulets to be rings of mail, which was an armour of defence long before the harness of steel was invented. When Julius Cæsar landed in this island iron rings were used instead of money. The Romans by the ring represented liberty and

nobility, and by its circular form signified Strength and Eternity. T. 7, n. 5.

**ANSHENT**, or **ANCIENT**, a small flag or streamer, set up on the stern of a ship, or on a tent. The guidon used at funerals was also called an *anshent*.

**ANTÉ**, or **ENTÉ**, ingrafted, or pieces let one into another, like dove-tail. See Plate J, n. 7.

**ANTELOPE** is an animal of the deer kind ; his horns are almost straight, tapering gradually from his head up ; a long and slender neck, feet, legs, and body, like a deer. The eyes are the standard of perfection in the East : to say of a fine woman, that "she has the eyes of an antelope," is the highest compliment that can be paid her. T. 7, n. 21, and n. 22, is termed an heraldic antelope.

**ANVIL**, the iron block used by smiths, is represented in Heraldry as P. 20, n. 6. *Party per chevron, argent and sable, three anvils counterchanged*; name, *Smith*, of Abingdon, Berks.

**APAUMÉE** is the hand open, with the full palm appearing, the thumb and fingers at full length. See P. 7, n. 32 and 33.

**ARCHDUKE'S CROWN** is closed at the top by a scarlet cap, encompassed with a circle of gold, adorned with eight strawberry-leaves, and closed by two circlets of gold set with pearls, meeting in a globe crossed, like the emperor's. P. 8, n. 16.

**ARCH**, as in architecture, is borne in Heraldry either double or single, and should be drawn on, or supported by pillars ; see P. 18, n. 3.

**ARCHED**, bowed or bent in the form of an arch.

**ARGENT** is the French word for silver, and in Heraldry is white. Silver was formerly used, but from its soon turning black, white was substituted. T. 2. Argent, in heraldry, signifies Purity and Innocence. *Argent, a chevron or, between three squirrels sejant, gules*—ancient arms. *Azure, two bars engrailed or, charged with three boars' heads, two and one, erect, couped close, sable*—

modern arms; name, *Twemlow*, of Hatherton, Cheshire P. 16, n. 7.

**ARMED** signifies the horns, hoofs, beak, or talons, of any beast or bird of prey (being their weapons), which, when borne of a different tincture from that of their bodies, are described as being *armed* so and so.

**ARMING BUCKLE**, a buckle in the shape of a lozenge. See P. 17, n. 9.

**ARMORY**, one branch of the science of heraldry, consisting in the knowledge of coat-armours, as to their blazons and various intendments; also a place in which armour is kept.

**ARMS** are hereditary marks of honour and descent, composed of certain tinctures and figures, either assumed, or else granted by authority, to distinguish persons, families, and communities.

**ARM.** This part of the human body is frequently and variously borne, both as a charge and for crest; as, an *arm erect, couped at the elbow*. P. 13, n. 17.

*Arm in armour, embowed proper, couped at the shoulder, grasping an arrow.* P. 13, n. 22. *Three dexter arms conjoined at the shoulders, and flexed in triangle, with the fists clenched.* P. 13, n. 2. *Two arms in armour, embowed, supporting a pheon.* P. 13, n. 23.

'**ARRACHÉ**, the French term for **ERASED**.

**ARRONDIE** signifies round or circular. See P. 6, n. 31.

**ARROWS** are frequently used in heraldry, and are usually borne barbed and flighted, i. e. feathered. See one, P. 1, n. 8. In English heraldry (it is exactly the reverse in French) the arrow is always represented with its barb or point downwards, unless otherwise expressed. Arrows, when in bundles or parcels, are usually termed *sheaves*, and are understood, unless a greater number be mentioned, to consist of three only, one in pale (upright), and two others in saltier (crossing it), bound together, or banded. It is not uncommon, however, to have five or seven in a sheaf; but the number, if more than three, must be specified.

**ASCENDANT**, rising, or issuing upward ; sometimes applied to smoke, flame, rays, or beams.

**ASPERSED**, by some authors used instead of *strewed* or *powdered*.

**Ass** (the) is frequently used in heraldry, as an emblem of patience. P. 11, n. 7. *Argent, a fess between three asses passant, sable*; name, *Askewe*.

**Assis** signifies sitting, or *sejant* : the example is a lion assis affronté, or *sejant gardant*. P. 14, n. 6.

**ASTEROIDS**, stars resembling planets : see *ESTOILES*.

**ASSURGENT**, rising out of the sea.

**ASTROLABE**, an instrument for taking the altitude of the sun or stars at sea.

**ASSYRIAN GOAT**. See *INDIAN GOAT*.

**AT BAY**. A stag *at bay*, is used to express the position of a stag when standing on the defensive, with his head downwards, to meet the onset of dogs and huntsmen.

**ATHELSTAN'S CROSS**. *Party per saltire, gules and azure, on a besant, a cross botoné or.* This was the banner of Athelstan, who expelled the Danes, subdued the Scots, and reduced this country to one monarchy. P. 16, n. 14.

**ATTIRED**, a term used when speaking of the horns of a stag, buck, goat, or ram, &c. When of different tinctures from their bodies, it must be mentioned.

**ATTIRES**, a term for the horns of a stag or buck : see the attires of a stag affixed to the scalp. P. 14, n. 33.

**AVELLANE**, a cross, so called because the quarters of it resemble a filbert-nut. T. 6, n. 7.

**AUGMENTATIONS** signify particular marks of honour, granted by the sovereign for some heroic or meritorious act. They are usually borne either on an escutcheon, or a canton, as the baronets of England. See P. 18, n. 15. When augmentations are borne on a chief, fess, canton, or quarter, the paternal coat keeps its natural place, and is blazoned first. See the arms of *Manners*. Plate A, n. 3.

**AURÉ**, dropped with gold ; the same as *Guttée d'or*.

**AYLETS**, or sea-swallows, represented sable, beaked and legged, gules ; some term them Cornish choughs.

AZURE is the colour blue, and in engraving this colour is expressed by horizontal lines from the dexter to the sinister side of the shield. See T. 2, and P. 16, n. 17.

BADGER. The address and courage with which this animal defends itself against beasts of prey, have caused it to be used in heraldry. It is otherwise called a *brock*, and is borne as crest by several families, as a play upon their name; as Broke, bt., Brook, Brooks, Brokelsby, Badger, &c. See P. 20, n. 13.

BADGES. See page 69. Also P. 15, n. 31 to 35.

King Henry II. appears to have first used a badge in this country. He adopted a *carbuncle*, the cognisance of the House of Anjou, he being the son of the Empress Maud, daughter of Henry I., and of Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou. His other cognisance was a *gennet passant between two sprigs of broom*. Edward III. adopted the *stump of a tree*, to signify that his issue should be flourishing; and his son Edward, the Black Prince, had the *sun rising out of clouds*, in addition to the three ostrich feathers and coronet; which latter badge has ever since been continued to the Princes of Wales. The badge of Richard II. was a *white hart, lodged, with a crown round his neck, and chained, or*; he bore also, *the sun in his splendour*. Henry IV. bore, on a sable ground, *three ostrich feathers, erm.*; also a *fox's tail dependant, ppr.* He also bore the *red rose*, which he inherited from his grandfather, Henry, first Duke of Lancaster. In his single combat with Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, he exhibited the *swan and antelope*, while the Duke had *mulberry-leaves* for his badge, in allusion to his name of Mowbray. The badges of Henry V. were a *burning torch*, and a *fleur-de-lis crowned*. Henry VI. chose a *panther, semée of roundles*, and also two *ostrich-feathers* in saltier. Edward IV. took the *white rose*, to which, after the battle of Mortymer's Cross, where he thought he saw three suns conjoined, he added *golden rays*. Another badge of this monarch was a *falcon in a fetterlock*. Richard III. used the *white rose in the sun*, in imitation of his brother,

and a *white boar*. Henry VII. adopted the portcullis of the House of Lancaster, and a rose, per pale white and red: afterwards, he placed the white rose within the red one. Henry VIII. continued this badge; but with him the party-coloured rose was frequently rayonnée and crowned. Queen Elizabeth took a *phoenix in flames*, with the motto *Semper eadem*. Her other badge was a *falcon* or, crowned or, holding a sceptre of the second, and standing on the stumps of a tree, between two growing branches of *white and red roses*; which badge had been given to her mother Anne Boleyn, by Henry VIII.

Among the most celebrated of the badges borne by nobles, was *the bear and ragged staff* (which still exists as a sign in London) of the great Earl of Warwick. The *white hart* of Richard II., and the *silver swan* of the House of Lancaster, are also still frequently met with as signs to inns, though their origin is seldom thought of. Few of the ancient cognisances are now generally remembered, except the roses of York and Lancaster, and the feathers borne by the Prince of Wales; which latter have, without interruption, continued from the time of their first assumption to be a favourite ornament of royalty.

*The Badge of England* (proper) is a rose, white and red, ensigned with the royal crown. The initials V. R., ensigned with a crown, as used on military accoutrements, may also be deemed a national badge.

*The Badge of Scotland* is a thistle, ensigned with the royal crown.

*The Badges of Ireland* are,—1. A harp, or, stringed or, ensigned with the royal crown:—2. The trefoil, or shamrock, similarly ensigned.

All of these may be said to be the badges of the *United Kingdom*, and are now represented as P. 9, n. 1, conjointly.

*The Badge of Wales* is a dragon passant, wings elevated, gu., on a mount vert. It was first adopted by King Henry VII.

*The Badge of Ulster* (which is the distinguishing mark

borne in the paternal coat of English baronets, commonly called “the bloody hand” in the arms of baronets,) is on a shield, or canton, or, a sinister hand erect and apaumée, gu.

*The Badge of Nova-Scotia* is, or, a saltier az., thereon an escutcheon of the arms of Scotland, ensigned with an imperial crown, and encircled with the motto, *Fax mentis honestæ gloria.*

BAG OF MADDER. This is a charge in the dyers' arms.  
P. 3, n. 1.

BAILLONNÉ. A term used to express a lion rampant, holding a staff in his mouth. P. 15, n. 15.

BALISTA. An engine used by the ancient Greeks and Romans for throwing stones at the time of a siege. It is otherwise called a swepe, and is represented as engraved.  
P. 2, n. 17.

BALL TASSELLED, P. 20, n. 12. *Argent, a chevron, between three balls sable, tasselled or; name, Ball, of Devonshire.*

BALL, fired proper. See FIRE-BALL.

BANDÉ, a French term for *bend*, implying the *bend dexter*.

BANDED: when anything is tied round with a band of a different tincture from the charge, as a garb, wheat-sheaf, or sheaf of arrows, it is said to be *banded*; for example, *A garb azure, banded or.*

BANDEROLE, a streamer, or small flag, affixed by lines or strings, immediately under the crook on the top of the staff of a crosier, and folding over the staff.

BANNER, a square flag, standard, or ensign, carried at the end of a lance.

BANNER, *disveloped*. This term is used for an ensign, or colours, in the army, being open and flying; as P. 5 n. 1.

BAR is less than the fess, and is a diminution, containing a fifth part of the field, and is borne in several parts of the field; whereas the fess is confined to the centre.  
T. 4, n. 14.

**BARBED.** The green leaves or petals which appear on the outside of a full-blown rose are in heraldry called barbs, and are thus blazoned: a rose, gu., *barbed* and seeded ppr.

**BARBED ARROW**, an arrow whose head is pointed and jagged.

**BARBED AND CRESTED**; a term occasionally used for the comb and gills of a cock, if of a different tincture from the body; but the usual term is *combed and wattled*.

**BARBED**, or **BARBÉE**, a cross so termed, as its extremities are like the barbed irons used for striking fish. P. 6, n. 14.

**BAR-GEMEL**, from the Latin *gemelli*, twins, signifies a double bar, or two bars placed near and parallel to each other. T. 7, n. 16.

**BARON** and **FEMME** is used in blazoning the arms of a man and his wife marshalled together side by side. *Baron* expresses the husband's side of the shield, which is the dexter; *femme*, the sinister. See P. 13, n. 3.

**BARON'S CORONET.** See CROWNS and CORONETS, Plate 9.

**BARNACLE**, a large water-fowl resembling a goose; and by the Scots called a *Cleg Goose*. P. 5, n. 11. The barnacle hath a flat broad bill, with a hooked point; the fore-part of the head is white, with a bead of black between the eyes; the neck and fore-part of the breast are black, the belly is white and brown, the thighs blackish, the back black and brown, the tail black: the wings black, brown, and ash colour. *Argent, a fess, between three barnacles, sable*; name, *Bernack*, of Leicestershire.

**BARNACLES**, an instrument which farriers fix to the upper lip of a horse, to keep the animal quiet while they bleed, or perform any other operation. P. 2, n. 35. *Argent, three barnacles, gules*; name, *Barnack*, of Leicestershire.

**BARRULET** is a diminutive, and the fourth of the bar, or twentieth part of the field. T. 4, n. 16.

**BAR-PULY.** See **BARRY**.

**BARRY** is a field divided by horizontal lines into four,

six, or more equal parts counterchanged, and is termed Barry of six, eight, ten, or twelve; it being necessary to specify the number. T. 5, n. 19. *Barry of six, or, and azure; name, Constable.*

BARRY-BENDY is a field equally divided into four, six, or more equal parts by lines, from the dexter chief to the sinister base, and from side to side interchangeably varying the tinctures. P. 3, n. 20.

BARRY-BENDY SINISTER, by some authors termed *Barry indented*. See P. 3, n. 19.

BARRY-INDENTED, or *barry of six, argent, and sable indented one in the other*; name, *Gise*. P. 3, n. 19.

BARRY-PILY of eight pieces gules, and or; name, *Holland*. T. 5, n. 20.

BASE is the bottom or lower part of the shield, marked with the letters G, H, I. See T. 1.

IN BASE is the position of anything placed in the lower part of the shield. See P. B, n. 33.

BASILISK, an imaginary animal, represented like the fictitious heraldic cockatrice, and with the head of a dragon at the end of its tail. It is called the *Amphisien Cockatrice*, from having two heads. P. 5, n. 13.

BASKET. See WINNOWING BASKET.

BASNET, a name anciently used for a helmet; *argent, a chevron, gules, between three helmets proper*; name, *Basnet*.

BAT. See RERE MOUSE.

BATON. See BATTON.

BATTERING-RAM; an ancient engine made of large pieces of timber, fastened together with iron hoops, and strengthened at one end with an iron head, shaped and horned like that of a ram, from whence it took its name. It was hung up by two chains, and swung forwards and backwards, by numbers of men, to beat down the walls of a besieged town or city. The battering-ram is said to have been invented by Epeus, at the taking of Troy. P. 18, n. 7. *Argent, three battering-rams, barwise proper, headed azure, armed and garnished or; name, Bertie.*

BATTLE-AXE was a weapon anciently used in war, having an axe on the one side, whence it takes the name, and a point on the other; as also a point at the end, so that they could thrust or cleave; of great service then, when swords would not do execution upon armour; whereas these, with their weight and a strong arm, broke through all. P. 12, n. 21. *Argent three battle-axes sable;* name, *Gyves* or *Hall*. *Hanway* says, the battle-axe is one of the most ancient weapons among the Orientals, but it had been for some years neglected. In Persia, Nadir Shah restored the use of it in a more particular manner; it was his favourite weapon; insomuch that before he assumed the diadem, he was generally styled AXE-KHAN.

BATTLED ARRONDIE signifies the battlement of a town, &c., to be circular on the top.

BATTLED-EMBATTLED is one battlement upon another, and is a line of partition. P. 7, n. 28.

BATTON, BASTON, or BATON, signifying a staff or truncheon, is generally used as a rebatement on coats of arms to denote illegitimacy. T. 4, n. 12. It is also, however, frequently adopted as a crest, without any reference to illegitimacy; as, *an arm embowed, holding a baton*, and many others.

BEACON. In ancient times, upon the invasion of an enemy, beacons were set on high hills, with an iron pot on the top, wherein was pitch, hemp, &c., which, when set on fire, alarmed the country, and called the people together. In the eleventh year of the reign of Edward III., every county in England had one. P. 2, n. 16.

Prior to King Edward, the fire-beacons were made of large stacks of wood. *Sable, three beacons fired or, flames proper;* name, *Dauntre*.

BEAKED. A term for the bills of birds, which, when borne of a different tincture from their bodies, are said to be *beaked* of this or that colour.

BEAR, the well-known beast of prey so called, is common in coats armorial and crests. P. 14, n. 9. *Or, a bear passant, sable;* name, *Fitzourse*.

**BEARING** signifies any single charge of a coat of arms ; but if used in the plural, the word is understood to describe the whole coat armorial. See **CHARGES**.

**BEAVER**, or **VISOR**, is that part of the helmet which defends the sight, and opens in the front of the helmet.

**BEAVER**, an amphibious animal, noted for its extraordinary industry and sagacity, is naturally very frequently met with in heraldry. *Argent, a beaver erected sable, devouring a fish proper, armed gules*; this coat is in a window of New-inn Hall, London. P. 11, n. 9.

**BEE-HIVE** and **BEES**. Bees are most wonderful and profitable insects ; they have two properties of the best kind of subjects ; they keep close to their king ; and are very industrious for their livelihood, expelling all idle drones. In heraldry they are much used, to represent industry. *Argent, a bee-hive beset with bees, diversely volant, sable*; name, *Rooe*. P. 11, n. 21.

**BELFRY**, that part of the steeple or tower of a church in which the bells are hung, is occasionally met with as a bearing.

**BELLED**, having bells affixed to some part. See the example. *A hawk rising jessed and belled*. T. 9, n. 20.

**BELLOWS**. This useful utensil, when borne in heraldry, is drawn erect, as represented P. 20, n. 9.

**BELLS**. Used as the proclaimers of joyful solemnity, and designed for the service of God, by calling the people to it, are in heraldy termed **CHURCH-BELLS**, to distinguish them from those which are tied to the legs of hawks or falcons. See P. 17, n. 23.

**BEND**, one of the honourable ordinaries, is formed by two diagonal lines drawn from the dexter chief to the sinister base, and contains the third part, if charged ; and uncharged, the fifth of the field ; it is supposed to represent a shoulder-belt, or a scarf. T. 4, n. 5.

**BEND SINISTER** is the same ordinary, but drawn from the sinister chief to the dexter base, or from *left to right*. T. 4, n. 10.

PARTY PER BEND SINISTER, argent and gules. P. 16, n. 1.

IN BEND is when things borne in arms are placed diagonally, from the dexter chief to the sinister base. See T. 10, n. 18, and P. A. n. 25.

BENDS ENHANCED. See ENHANCED.

PER BEND is when the field, or charge, is equally divided by a line drawn diagonally from the dexter chief to the sinister base ; *party per bend, or and vert* ; name, *Hawley*. T. 3, n. 2.

BENDLET, is one of the first of the diminutives of the bend, and is in size half the breadth of a bend. T. 4, n. 6.

BENDY is when a field, or charge, is divided bendwise into four, six, eight, ten, or more equal parts diagonally. *Bendy of six, argent and azure* ; name *John de St. Philibert*. T. 5, n. 18, a border bendy, P. 13, n. 15.

BEZANTS, or BEZANTS, are roundlets of gold without any impression, so called from the ancient gold coin of Byzantium, now Constantinople (the value of one being 37*l.* sterling, according to Kent in his abridgment of Guillim), and supposed to have been introduced in arms by those who were in the holy war. T. 8, n. 9.

Similar figures, when party-coloured, or the colour is not known, are called under the general term of *roundles*.

BEZANTY CROSS, a cross composed of bezants. P. 4, n. 18. *Bezanty*, or *bezantée*, is also a term when the field of the escutcheon, or any particular charge, is indiscriminately strewed with bezants, their number or position not being specified.

BICAPITATED, having two heads.

BICORPORATED, having two bodies.

BILLETS are oblong squares, by some taken for bricks, but generally supposed to be letters made up in that form. T. 8, n. 4.

BILLETY signifies a field (*charge or supporters*) strewed with billets when they exceed ten, otherwise their number and position must be expressed.

**BIPARTED**, so cut off as to form an indent showing two projections : differing from *erased*, which signifies torn off, and shows three jagged pieces.

**BIRD-BOLT**, a small arrow with three heads, as the example, P. 2, n. 27 ; but sometimes represented with a single blunt head, and occasionally with two heads. Being thus variously represented, the number of heads should always be specified : see example of one with a blunt head, P. 2, n. 26. *Gules three bird-bolts argent* ; name *Bottlesham*. This arrow or bolt was anciently discharged from a cross-bow.

**BLADED**. This term is for the stalk or blade of any kind of grain or corn, represented in arms, *borne* of a different colour from the ear, or fruit.

**BLAZON**. A term derived from the German word *Blasen*, which signifies the blowing of a horn ; it was introduced in heraldry from an ancient custom of the heralds. It was the practice when knights attended jousts or tournaments, to blow a horn, announcing their arrival. This was answered by the heralds, who then described aloud, and recorded the arms borne by each knight. Hence originated the word **BLAZON**, or **BLAZONRY**, which signifies the describing in proper terms all that belongs to coats of arms. See **RULES, &c.**, P. 35.

**BLUE-BOTTLE** is a flower of the cyanus. P. 5, n. 20. *Argent, a chevron, gules between three blue-bottles or, slipped vert* ; name, *Cherley*.

**BOAR**. This animal, when used in heraldry, is always understood to be the wild boar, and is represented as P. 14, n. 20. *Argent, a boar passant, gules, armed or* ; name, *Trewarthen*.

**BOLT-IN-TUN** is a bird-bolt in pale piercing through a tun, as P. 1, n. 22.

**BOLTING**, or **BOLTANT**, a term occasionally used to describe the position of hares or rabbits in *springing forward* when first disturbed from their burrows.

**BONNET**, a cap of velvet worn within a coronet.

**BORDER**, or **BORDURE**. Borders were anciently used for

distinguishing one part of a family from the other, descended of one family and from the same parents. When used as a distinction of houses, the border must be continued all round the extremities of the field, and should always contain the fifth part thereof. T. 5, n. 9.

But, if a coat be impaled with another, either on the dexter or sinister side, and hath a border, the border must finish at the impaled line, and not be continued round the coat. See an example, P. 13, n. 14; also P. 16, n. 5.

In Blazon, *borders* always give place to the chief, the quarter, and the canton: as, for example, *argent, a border ingrailed gules, a chief azure*: and, therefore, the chief is placed over the border, as the quarter and canton likewise are. In coats charged with a chief, quarter, or canton, the border goes round the field until it touches them, and there finishes; but with respect to all other ordinaries, it passes over them.

	PLATE.	No.
Border Enaluron . . . .	3	9
Border Enurney . . . .	3	10
Border Quarterly . . . .	3	11
Border Verdoy . . . .	3	12
Border Entoyre . . . .	3	13
Border Diapered . . . .	3	14
Border Bendy . . . .	3	15

Boss of a bit, as borne in the arms of the lorimers' or bit-makers' company. P. 1, n. 23.

BOTEROLL, according to the French heralds, is a tag of a broadsword scabbard, and is esteemed an honourable bearing. See P. 1, n. 24.

The crampette, which is the badge of the Right Hon. Earl *Delawarr*, is supposed by Edmondson to be meant for the same ornament of the scabbard. See the two examples, P. 1, n. 20, and n. 24.

BOTONNY, or BOTONÉ, a Cross. This term is given because its extremities resemble the trefoil. T. 6, n. 8.

BOTTOM. See P. 5, n. 19. *Argent three bottoms, in fess gules, the thread or*; name, *Hoby*, of Badland.

BOURCHIER KNOT is a knot of silk tied as the example,

P. 15, n. 32. This knot was a cognisance of Archbishop Bourchier, and a representation of it is still preserved in several of the apartments of Knole House, in Kent, which was formerly the property and residence of the archbishop.

BOWEN'S KNOT. See P. 3, n. 7. *Gules, a chevron, between three such knots, argent; name, Bowen.*

Bows. See P. 15, n. 29. *Ermine three bows bent in pale gules; name, Bowes.* Herodotus says, the Scythians were the inventors of bows and arrows.

BRASSES are sepulchral engravings on large or small brass plates let into slabs in the pavement of ancient churches, portraying the effigies of illustrious persons; the greater part of the figures as large as life. The various colours for the dresses, armours, and coats of arms, in many instances, were laid on in enamel; the attitudes are well drawn; and the lines of the dresses are made out with a precision which is truly surprising. We refer for proof to the abbey church of St. Alban's, and St. Margaret's church, King's Lynn.

BRACED, *fretted* or *interlaced*, signifies figures of the same sort interlacing one another, as the example. *Azure, three chevronels interlaced in base, and a chief or; name, Fitz-Hugh.* P. 7, n. 30.

BRANCHES, slips and sprigs of shrubs, &c., frequently occur in coat armour. The *slip* should consist of three leaves; the *sprig*, of five; and the *branch*, if fructed, of four—or if unfructed, of nine leaves.

BRASSARTS, armour for the elbow.

BRASSETS, pieces of armour for the arms.

BREASTPLATE. See CUIRASS.

BRETÉSSÉ is embattled on both sides equal to each other. See an example, P. 13, n. 6.

BRIDGES, as borne in arms, are of various forms, depending chiefly on the number of arches, which should be particularly specified, as in the following example:—*Or, on a bridge of three arches in fess gules, masoned sable, the stream transfluent proper, a fane argent; name, Trow-*

*bridge*, of Trowbridge. This seems to have been given to the bearer as an allusion to his name, *quasi Through-bridge*, with respect to the current of the stream passing through the arches. P. 16, n. 22.

**BRIGANDINE** or **BRIGANTINE**. See **HABERGEON**.

**BRISÉ**. See **ROMPU**.

**BRISTLED**, the term used in blazonry to express the hair on the neck, and back of a boar.

**BROAD ARROW**, differs from the pheon, by having the inside of its barbs plain, as P. 5, n. 21.

**BROAD AXE**, as borne in arms, is represented P. 15, n. 12. *Gules three broad-axes, argent, a demi fleur-de-lis, joined to each handle within-side, or, between as many mullets pierced of the last; name, Tregold.*

**BROCHES** are instruments used by embroiderers, and are borne in the arms of the embroiderers' company. P. 1, n. 5.

**BROGUE**, a kind of shoe, borne as depicted P. 2, n. 9. *Gules, a chevron between three brogues or; name, Arthure.*

**BRONCHANT**. See **OVER-ALL**.

**BRUNSWICK**, **CROWN OF**. P. 8, n. 19.

**BRUSKE**. See **TENNE**.

**BUCKETS** are used in heraldry of various forms, but most frequently as P. 1, n. 7. *Sable, a chevron between three well-buckets, argent; name, Sutton.* They are sometimes borne with feet, as the example, *Argent, a well-bucket sable, bailed and hoops or; name, Pemberton*, P. 4, n. 30.

**BUCKLER**, or **SHIELD**.

**BUCKLES**, anciently worn by persons of repute and honour, attached to their military belts, and girdles, is a bearing both ancient and honourable, and is a token of service. See P. 17, n. 9. The shape of buckles, as borne in a coat, must be described, whether *oval*, *round*, *square*, or *lozengey*, as they are various.

Menestrier says, buckles, clasps, and rings, represent power and authority in bearers, as also an acknowledgment of dependence on a sovereign; and Nisbet says,

such things were of old ordinary gifts of superiors, as badges of fidelity and firmness. Buckles were added as a sign of power and authority to the borders of the Stewarts, earls of Darnley and Lennox, on account of these earls being viceroys of Naples and Calabria.

**BUFFALO**, a wild bull. P. 19, n. 14.

**BUGLE-HORN**, or **HUNTING HORN**, is a frequent bearing in heraldry. When the *mouth* and *strings* of this instrument are of different tinctures from the horn, then in blazon they must be named ; and when it is adorned with rings, then it is termed *garnished*. P. 12, n. 23. The bugle-horn was a common decoration to the dress of our ancestors, and used by them for a variety of purposes ; as in hunting, in battle, &c., giving notice in an unfrequented place that a stranger was nigh, or that a post was approaching.

**BULL** (the) is common in coat armour. *Ermine, a bull passant gules*; name, *Berville*. The Egyptians consecrated the bull as the symbol of fecundity ; the Greeks also painted the horn of the bull, filled with ears of corn and fruits, to express this emblem ; and the poets sang the cornucopia in their verses.

**BULL'S HEAD**, cabossed. P. 14, n. 27.

**BUR**, was a broad ring of iron, behind the hand, on the spears anciently used at tiltings.

**BURGONET**, a steel cap, formerly worn by foot soldiers in battle. P. 5, n. 3.

**BURLING-IRON**, an instrument used by weavers, and borne in the arms of the weavers' company of Exeter. P. 5, n. 5.

**BUST**, affronté, signifies the head, neck, and part of the shoulders, and the full face. See P. 13, n. 24 ; also a *bust, in profile*, P. 13, n. 25.

**BUSTARD**, a kind of wild turkey, rarely met with in England, and in heraldry depicted as P. 19, n. 13.

**CABOSHED**, or **CABOSED** (Spanish), is when the head of a beast is cut close off behind the ears, and full-faced, having no neck left to it. T. 9, n. 18.

CADENCY, distinction of houses.

CALTRAP. See GALTRAP.

CALVARY, a CROSS, represents the cross on which our Saviour suffered on Mount Calvary, and is always set upon three steps, termed grieces. According to Morgan, the three steps signify the three qualities whereby we mount up to Christ, *Faith, Hope, and Charity*. See P. 4, n. 19. *Gules, a cross on three grieces, or;* name, *Jones*, of Denbighshire.

CAMEL, the well-known animal so called, a wonderful creature for enduring hunger and thirst, and carrying great burdens through the deserts of Arabia, &c., has, very naturally, been adopted as an honourable bearing. *Azure, a camel argent;* name, *Camel*. P. 14, n. 23.

CAMELEON, resembles the common lizard. He can walk swiftly, and climb and fasten on the smallest branches of a tree, or hang upon them by the tail ; he neither lives on the air, nor rays of the sun, as the ancients supposed ; his food consists of real insects, which he catches by the help of a tongue about three or four inches long, which he shoots out of a kind of scabbard or case, without ever missing his aim.

CAMELOPARDALIS, CAMELOPARD, or GIRAFFE, is an inhabitant of Africa ; its height sixteen feet from the hoof to the extremity of its horns ; the colour is of grayish white ground, and large spots of dark brown, almost black. They feed upon the leaves of trees, and mostly on those of the mimosa. See P. 5, n. 2.

CANDLESTICK. This example is blazoned in the arms of the founders' company. *A taper candlestick.* See P. 6, n. 10.

CANNETS, a term for ducks, when they are represented without beak or feet. See T. 8, n. 5. *Argent, a chevron gules, between three cannets sable;* name, *Dubuisson*.

CANTON, so called, because it occupies but a corner of the field, is either dexter or sinister, and is the third of the chief. T. 4, n. 24. *Argent, a canton sable;* name, *Sutton*.

**CANTONNED**, signifies a cross between four figures.

**CAP OR BONNET**. See P. 4, n. 11. *Argent, three such caps sable, banded or; name, Capper, of Chester.*

**CAP OF MAINTENANCE** is made of crimson velvet lined and turned up with ermine, worn by nobility: such a cap was sent by Pope Julius the Second, with a sword, to King Henry the Eighth; and Pope Leo the Tenth gave him the title *Defender of the Faith*, for his writing a book against Martin Luther. P. 9, n. 13.

**CAPARISONED**, the term used to describe a war-horse completely furnished for the field.

**CARBUNCLE**. See ESCARBUNCLE.

**CARDINAL'S HAT**. Pope Innocent IV. ordained, that Cardinals should wear red hats, whereby he would signify that those that entered into that order ought to expose themselves, even to the shedding of their blood and hazard of their lives, in defence of ecclesiastical liberty. *Argent, a cardinal's hat, with strings pendent and plaited in true-love-knots, the ends meeting in base, gules; these are the arms of Slavonia.* P. 12, n. 11.

**CASQUE**. See HELMET.

**CASTLE** is the emblem of grandeur and magnificence, sanctuary and safety. Castles have been granted for arms to such as have reduced them by force, or been the first that mounted their walls, either at a breach, or by escalade. *Or, a castle triple-towered gules, the port displayed of the first, leaved argent.* P. 16, n. 19.

Whatever tincture the castle is of, if the cement of the building is of another colour from the stones, then the building, being argent, is said to be *masoned* of such a colour, as sable, &c. When the windows and ports of castles are of a different tincture from the field and building, the windows and ports are supposed to be shut, and must be so expressed in the blazon; if the windows and ports are of the tincture of the field, so that the field is seen through them, then they are supposed to be open; if the port is in form of a portcullis, it is to be named

in the blazon.—*Note.* The difference between a tower and a castle is this : the tower stands without walls to its sides, but a castle extends from side to side, as the example. See a tower, P. 16, n. 20, which points the difference.

CAT. This domestic animal is used as a crest and supporter, but rarely, if ever, as a bearing in arms.

CAT-A-MOUNTAIN, a wild cat ; in heraldry it is taken for the symbol of liberty, vigilance, and courage. P. 11, n. 16. These cats being always painted *gardant*, the word *gardant* need not be used in the blazon.

CATERFOIL. See QUATREFOIL.

CATHERINE-WHEEL, so called from St. Catherine the Virgin, (who suffered martyrdom in Alexandria under the Emperor Maximinus), who had her limbs broken in pieces by its iron teeth. T. 7, n. 17. *Azure, a Catherine-wheel argent* ; name, *Wegirton*.

CENTAUR. See SAGITTARIUS.

CERCLEÉ, or RECERCLEÉ, (a Cross,) signifies one circling, or curling at the ends, like a ram's horn. P. 4, n. 4.

CHAINS are borne frequently and in various forms, especially as appendant to dogs and other animals. They are often, too, borne independent of any other charge : see, for instance, a *circle of chains*, P. 20, n. 22. Chains signify servitude and captivity, and sometimes temperance and chastity, which bridle unruly passions.

CHAIN-SHOT. Some have taken this to be the head of a club called holy-water sprinkler, others to be balls of wildfire, generally supposed to be chain-shot, which is two bullets with a chain between them ; their use is, at sea, to shoot down yards, masts, or rigging of snips. *Azure, three chain-shots or* ; this coat was borne by the *Earl of Cumberland*, next to his paternal coat. P. 18, n. 8.

CHAMBER-PIECE, a term for a short piece of ordnance, without a carriage. P. 1, n. 6.

CHAPEAU. See CAP OF MAINTENANCE.

CHAPERON, or CHAPERONE, (French,) a hood, and by metonymy applied to the little shields containing armorial

bearings, placed on the heads of horses drawing hearses at pompous funerals.

**CHAPLET**, a garland, or head-band of leaves and flowers. T. 5, n. 8. A chaplet of roses, in heraldry, is always composed of four roses only, all the other parts being leaves. *Argent, three chaplets, vert; name, Richardson, of Shropshire.*

**CHAPLETS, or GARLANDS**, were of great use among the Greeks in the affairs of love; when a man untied his garland, it was a declaration of his having been subdued by that passion; and when a woman composed a garland, it was a tacit confession of the same thing.

**CHAPOURNET**, a corruption of the French word, *chaperonet*, which signifies a little hood.

**CHARGES** are all manner of figures or bearings whatsoever, borne in the field of a coat of arms, which are by custom become peculiarly proper to the science.

**CHARGED**. Any ordinary or figure, bearing any other device upon it, is said to be charged therewith; *azure, a saltire argent, charged with another gules.* P. 18, n. 4.

**CHARLEMAGNE'S CROWN**. This crown, which is divided into eight parts, is made of gold, weighing fourteen pounds, and is still preserved at Nuremberg. P. 8. n. 5. The fore part of the crown is decorated with twelve jewels, all unpolished. On the second quarter, on the right hand, is our Saviour sitting between two cherubs, with each four wings, whereof two are upward, and two downward; and under, this motto, *Per me Reges regnant*. The third part on the same side has only gems and pearls. On the fourth part is King Hezekiah sitting, holding his head with his right hand; and by his side Isaiah the prophet, with a scroll, whereon is this motto, *Ecce adjiciam super dies tuos 15 annos*: also over the heads of these figures, *Isaias Propheta, Ezechias Rex*. The fifth part, which is behind, contains jewels semée. The sixth part has the effigy of a king crowned, and a scroll in his hand, with these words, *Honor Regis judicium diligū*: and over his head, *Rex David*. The seventh part

is only of gems ; but the eighth has a king sitting, with his crown upon his head, and on a scroll which he holds in both hands is this motto, *Time Dominum, & Regem amato* : as likewise over his head, *Rex Solomon*.

On the top of this crown is a cross, the fore part of which contains seventeen jewels, and in the top of the cross are these words, *IHS Nazarenus Rex Iudeorum* ; as also in the arch or semicircle, these, *CHVONRADUS, DEI GRATIA ROMANORUM IMPERATOR AUG.*, which shows that the semicircle was added after Charlemagne's time, by the Emperor Conrad.

CHECKY, or CHEQUÉ, is a term used when the field, or any charge, is composed of small squares of different tinctures alternately, as T. 5, n. 22.

CHERUB'S HEAD is a child's head between two wings displayed. See P. 19, n. 2.

CHERUBIM had the face of a man, the wings of an eagle, the back and mane of a lion, and the feet of a calf.—*Spencer*. The prophet Ezekiel says, the Cherubim had four forms, a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle. See P. 22, n. 12.

CHESS-ROOK, a figure used in the game of chess. T. 7, n. 9, *ermine, three chess-rooks, gules* ; name, *Smert*. See another shape, P. 19, n. 3.

CHEVALIER, or horseman armed at all points ; now out of use, and only to be seen in coat-armour, old pictures, and prints.

CHEVAL-TRAP. See GAL-TRAP.

CHEVRON is an ordinary representing the two rafters of a house, joined together in chief, and, descending in the form of a pair of compasses to the extremities of the shield, contains the fifth of the field. *Gules, a chevron argent* ; name, *Fulford*. T. 4, n. 17. Also P. 16, n. 7 ; name, *Twemlow*.

PER CHEVRON is when the field or charge is divided by such a line as helps to make the chevron, *party per chevron, argent and vert*, T. 3, n. 4.

CHEVRONEL is a diminutive of, and in size half, the

chevron. T. 4, n. 18. When there are more than one chevron on a coat, and placed at equal distances from each other, they should be called chevronels: but if they are placed in *pairs*, they are called *couple-closes*. *Ermine, two chevronels azure*; name, *Bagot*.

CHEVRONNY is the parting of a shield into several equal partitions chevronwise. See P. 18, n. 10.

CHEVRONS BRACED. See BRACED.

CHEVRONS COUCHED signifies lying sidewise. P. 3, n. 16.

CHEVRONS CONTREPOINT signifies standing one upon the head of another. P. 3, n. 17.

CHIEF is an ordinary formed by a horizontal line, and occupies the upper part of the shield, containing in depth the third of the field: it is so termed because it hath place in the chief or principal part of the shield. T. 4, n. 1.

IN CHIEF is a thing born in the chief part or top of the escutcheon. See P. A, n. 2, *viz. argent, a fess, in chief three lozenges sable*; name, *Ashton*.

CHIMÆRA, a fabulous monster, feigned to have the head of a lion breathing flames, the body of a goat, and the tail of a dragon; because the mountain Chimæra, in Lycia, had a volcano on its top, and nourished lions; the middle part afforded pasture for goats, and the bottom was infested with serpents. P. 22, n. 9.

CHIMERRICAL. A term applied to such figures as have no other existence but in the imagination. See P. 13, n. 20, T. 7, n. 22, n. 23, n. 24.

CHURCH-BELLS. See BELLS.

CIMIER, the French word for crest.

CINQUEFOIL. The Five-leaved Grass, so called, which is a common bearing, usually drawn or engraved with the leaves issuing from a kind of ball as a centre point. T. 6, n. 24. *Or, a cinquefoil sable*; name, *Braiford, of Derby*.

CIRCLE of CHAINS, P. 20, n. 22.

— of Gold, P. 3, n. 9.

CIRCULAR WREATH. See P. 3, n. 6.

CIVIC CROWN was a garland composed of oak-leaves and

acorns, and given by the Romans as a reward to any soldier that saved the life of a Roman citizen in an engagement. This was reckoned more honourable than any other crown, though composed of better materials. Plutarch says the reason why the branches of the oak should be made choice of before all others is, that the oaken wreath being sacred to Jupiter, the great guardian of the city, they might think it the most proper ornament for him who preserved a citizen. The most remarkable person upon record for obtaining these rewards, was one C. Siccius (or Sicinius) Dentatus: who had received in the time of his military service eight crowns of gold; fourteen *civic crowns*, three *mural*, eighty-three golden *torques* or collars, sixty golden *armillæ* or bracelets, eighteen *hastæ puræ*, or fine spears of wood, and seventy-five *phalerae*, or suits of rich trappings for a horse.

**CLAM**, a Scotch term for an escalop or cockle-shell.

**CLARION, or CLARICORD.** See REST.

**CLECHÉ, or CLECHÉE**, a French term, applied to any ordinary which is so completely perforated, that its edges only are visible.

**CLECHÉE**, a Cross, (voided and pometté,) is one which spreads from the centre towards the extremities, then ends in an angle in the middle of the extremity, by lines drawn from the two points that make the breadth till they join. P. 6, n. 17.

**CLEG GOOSE.** See BARNACLE.

**CLINCHED** signifies the hand to be shut, as P. 13, n. 17.

**CLOCKS**, when used in arms, are drawn as table-clocks. In that in the arms of the Clockmakers' Company, the feet are four lions couchant, and it is ensigned with a regal crown.

**CLOSE**, when the wings of a bird are down, and close to the body. T. 9, n. 19. The term is used for horse barnacles when they are not extended: also to denote a helmet with the visor down, as P. 10, n. 4.

**CLOSE-GIRT**, is said of figures habited, whose clothes are tied about the middle.

**CLOSET** is a diminutive of the bar, being the same figure to one half of its breadth. T. 4, n. 15.

**CLOSING TONGS**, a tool used by the founders, and made part of their crest. P. 1, n. 9.

LOUDS frequently occur in arms, with devices issuing therefrom, and surrounding charges.

**CLYMANT**, a term sometimes used to describe a goat when reared on its hind legs: see **SALIENT**.

**CO-AMBULANT**, passant or walking together.

**COBWEB** and **SPIDER**, a cobweb, in the centre a spider. P. 16, n. 10. This is the arms of *Cobster*.

**COCK** is a bird of noble courage; he is always prepared for battle, having his comb for a helmet, his beak for a cutlass to wound his enemy, and is a complete warrior armed cap-a-pe; he hath his legs armed with spurs, giving example to the valiant soldier to resist danger by fight, and not by flight. The domestic cock differs very widely from the wild descendants of its primitive stock, which are said to inhabit the forests of India, and most of the islands of the Indian seas. In heraldry, the cock is always understood to be the dunghill cock, unless otherwise expressed, and is represented as P. 14, n. 14. *Azure, three cocks, argent, armed, crested, and jelloped, proper;* name, *Cokaine*.

**COOCKATRICE**, an imaginary monster, which in his wings and legs partakes of the fowl, and in his tail of the snake. T. 7, n. 23. *Sable, a cockatrice or, combed gules;* name, *Bothe*.

**COCKATRICE DISPLAYED**, P. 3, n. 26. *Sable, a cockatrice displayed argent, crested, membered, and jelloped, gules;* name, *Buggine*.

**COCKE**, a term used by Leigh for a chess-rook.

**COGNIZANCE**. This term is frequently used to signify the crest; but Porney says, crests were only worn by heroes of great valour, and such as had superior military command, in order that they might be the better distinguished in an engagement, and thereby rally their men, if dispersed; whereas *Cognizances* were badges which

subordinate officers, and even soldiers, bore on their shields for distinction-sake, not being entitled to a crest; see BADGES.

**COLLARED** signifies any animal having a collar about his neck.

COLOURS, and metals, when engraved, are known by dots and lines; as **OR**, the metal gold, is known in engraving by small dots or points; **ARGENT**, a metal which is white, and signifies silver, is always left plain; **GULES**, is expressed by lines perpendicular from top to bottom; **AZURE**, by horizontal lines from side to side; **SABLE**, by horizontal and perpendicular lines crossing each other; **VERT**, by hatched lines from right to left diagonally; **PURPURE**, by hatched lines from the sinister chief to the dexter base, diagonally. The metals or and argent are allowed precedence to colours. T. 2.

Colours, especially when compounded, (viz. *gules* with *or* signifies desire to conquer, with *argent* revenge, with *vert* courage in youth, &c.,) were formerly intended to signify certain virtues in the bearer.

COLOURS'	NAMES.	STONES.	PLANETS.	VIRTUES.
Yellow,	Or,	Topaz,	Sol,	Constancy.
White,	Argent,	Pearl,	Luna,	Innocence.
Red,	Gules,	Ruby,	Mars,	Magnanimity.
Blue,	Azure,	Sapphire,	Jupiter.	Loyalty.
Green,	Vert,	Emerald,	Venus,	Love loyal.
Purple,	Purpure,	Amethyst.	Mercury,	Temperance.
Black,	Sable,	Diamond,	Saturn,	Prudence.
Orange,	Tenne,	Hyacinth,	Dr. Head,	
Murrey,	Sanguine	Sardonyx,	Dr <sup>a</sup> . Tail,	

Some authors say, Gentlemen, Esquires, Knights, and Baronets' arms are blazoned by *metals* and *colours*; Barons, Viscounts, Earls, Marquises, and Dukes, by *precious stones*; Sovereign Princes, Kings, and Emperors, by *planets*.

These distinctions, however, are nowhere used but in England, being justly held in ridicule in all other countries, as a fantastic humour of our nation.

**COLUMBINE.** This flower is borne in the arms of the company of Cooks. P. 5, n. 4. *Argent, a chevron sable, between three columbines proper; name, Hall, of Coventry.*

**COMBATANT**, that is to say, fighting, face to face. T. 9, n. 5. *Or, lions rampant combatant, gules, languid and armed azure; name, Wycombe.*

**COMET**, or **BLAZING STAR**, in heraldry, is *a star of six points, with a tail streaming from it, in bend*, as the example, P. H. n. 7; according to Guillim, is not of an orbicular shape, as other celestial bodies are, but rather dilates in the centre like a hairy bush, and grows thence taperwise, in the manner of a fox's tail. Comets were supposed to prognosticate events to come. They appear to be borne in coat-armour, of which the aforesaid author gives us an instance; thus, *Azure, a comet, streaming in bend, or; name, Cartwright.*

**COMPARTMENTS.** See **PARTITIONS**.

**COMPLEMENT.** A term used to signify the moon at her full; the technical mode of blazonry being, "the moon in her complement."

**COMPONY**, **COUNTER COMPONY**, is when a border, pale, bend, or other ordinary, is made up of two rows of squares, consisting of metals and colours. See T. 5, n. 14.

**CONEY**, a rabbit.

**CONFRONTÉ**, facing or fronting one another; a term used by the French heralds as synonymous with *combatant*.

**CONGER-EEL'S HEAD**, couped, borne on a pale; name, *Gascoigne*. P. 6, n. 15.

**CONJOINED**, or **CONJUNCT**, signifies charges in arms when joined together; viz. *gules, two lions rampant, conjoined under one head, gardant, argent; name, Kellum.* See P. 15, n. 22. *Seven maces conjunct, three, three and one.* P. 2, n. 32.

**CONJOINED IN LURE** is two wings joined together, with their tips downwards; as the example, T. 10, n. 2.

CONTOURNÉ, a French term applied to animals turned to the sinister side of the shield. P. 15, n. 23.

CONTRE signifies counter or opposite.

CONTREPOINT is when two chevrons meet in the fess points, the one rising from the base, the other inverted, falling from the chief, so that they are counter or opposite to one another. See P. 3, n. 17.

CONTRETREVIS, an ancient term for party per fess.

COORLETT. See CUIRASS.

COOTE, a small water-fowl, of the duck tribe, with a sharp-pointed beak, and its plumage all black, except at the top of the head. See P. 11, n. 17.

COPPER. An instrument used by gold and silver wire-drawers to wind wire upon, and borne by them as part of their armorial ensign. P. 1, n. 2.

COPPER CAKE. See P. 4, n. 6. *Ermine, three copper cakes gules, and on a chief gules, a chamber proper; name, Chambers, of London, Esq.*

CORBIE, a heraldic term for a raven.

CORDED, signifies wound about with cords, as the example, P. 6, n. 6.

CORMORANT. A sharp-billed bird, in other respects much resembling a goose. See P. 19, n. 16.

CORNET, a musical instrument. P. 7, n. 23.

CORNISH CHOUGH is a fine blue or purple black bird, with red beak and legs, and is a noble bearing of antiquity, being accounted the king of crows. It frequents some places in Cornwall and North Wales, inhabiting there the cliffs and ruinous castles along the shore. P. 14, n. 17.

CORNUCOPIA, or Horn of Plenty, filled with fruits, corn, &c., an emblem generally placed in the hands of the figures of Plenty and Liberality.

CORONET, (Ital. *coronetta*, the diminutive of *corona*, a crown,) when not otherwise described, is always understood to be a ducal one. For the coronets worn by the several degrees of nobility in England, &c., see CROWNS and CORONETS; and for Coronets mural, naval, &c., see MURAL, NAVAL, &c.

**COST**, or **COTICE**, is one of the diminutives of the bend, seldom borne but in couples with a bend between them. T. 4, n. 8.

**COTICED**, or **COTISED**, anything that is accosted, sided, or accompanied by another. See Plate A, n. 20. *Argent, on a bend gules, coticed sable, three pair of wings conjoined of the first; name, Wingfield.*

**COTICE**. A term used by the French when an escutcheon is divided bendwise into many equal parts. See **BENDY**.

**COTTON-HANK**, P. 18, n. 6. *Azure, a chevron between three cotton hanks, argent; name, Cotton.*

**COUNTERCHANGED** is an intermixture of several metals and colours one against another. See an example, Plate C, n. 15. *Quarterly or and azure, a cross of four lozenges between as many annulets, counterchanged; name, Peacock.* Likewise see the examples in P. 3, n. 19, 20, and 22.

**COUNTER-COMPONÉ**, composed of small squares, but never above two rows. T. 5, n. 14.

**COUNTER-EMBOWED**, a dexter arm, couped at the shoulder, *counter-embowed*. P. 13, n. 19.

**COUNTER-IMBATTLED**. See the example, P. 13, n. 5. *Azure, a fess counter-imbattled, argent; name, Garnas, of Sussex.*

**COUNTER-PASSANT** is when two beasts are passing the contrary way to each other. T. 9, n. 8. *Sable, two lions counter-passant argent, collared gules; name, Glegg.*

**COUNTER-POTENT**. See **POTENT**.

**COUNTER-PURFLEW**. See **PURFLEW**.

**COUNTER-SALIENT**. See **SALIENT**.

**COUNTER-TRIPPING**. See **TRIPPING**.

**COUNTER-VAIR**, or and *azure*: this fur differs from vair, by having its cups or bells of the same tinctures, placed base against base, and point against point, ranged with their heads and points one upon the other, as *or* upon *or*. T. 2, n. 5.

**COUCHANT** signifies a beast lying down, but with his head lifted up, which distinguishes the beast so lying from dormant. T. 8, n. 20.

**COUPED** is when the head or any other limb of an animal, or any charge in an escutcheon that is borne, is cut evenly off. See the examples. T. 8, n. 16. P. 4, n. 14. Plate H, n. 14, n. 19.

 When *boars, bears, wolves, whales, and otters' heads*, are couped close to the head, as example P. 3, n. 2, it is termed *couped close*, to distinguish it from a boar's head couped, as P. 3, n. 3, and P. 16, n. 17.

**COUPED**, or **HUMETTE**, A Cross, signifies one so cut, or shortened, that the extremities reach not the outlines of the escutcheon. P. 4, n. 14.

**Couple-Close**, so termed from its enclosing by couples the chevron, of which it is a diminutive, being its fourth part. T. 4, n. 19. Couple-closes are always borne by pairs, one on each side of a chevron. See plate A, n. 16. *Sable, a chevron between two couple-closes, accompanied with three cinquefoils or; name, Renton.*

**COURANT**, the heraldic term for running. T. 9, n. 16.

**COWARD**, or **COWED**, is when a lion or other animal has its tail hanging down between its legs. P. 15, n. 13.

**CRAB**; the well known shell-fish so called, is occasionally borne in arms. *Argent, a chevron, between three sea-crabs gules; name, Bridger.*

**CRAMPS**, or **CRAMPOONS**, are pieces of iron, hooped at each end, and used in buildings to fasten two stones together. P. 1, n. 16.

**CRAMPET**, or **CRAMPETTE**, is the chape at the bottom of the scabbard of a broad-sword, and by the French termed Botterolle. *Argent, three botterolles gules*, are the arms of the duchy of *Angria*. P. 1, n. 20.

**CRAMPONNE**, A Cross, so termed because it has at each end a cramp, or square piece, coming from it. P. 4, n. 5.

**CRENELLÉ**. See **IMBATTLED**.

**CRESCENT**, or a half-moon, with its horns turned towards the chief of the shield; by this position it differs from the *in*crecent and *de*crecent. See T. 7, n. 6. *Azure, a crescent argent; name, Lucy.* Crescent, the prevailing badge among the followers of Mahomet, as crosses among

the Christians, were assumed in armories as general emblems of victory over the Saracens.

**CRESCENTED**, A CROSS, that is, having a crescent at each end. P. 4, n. 35.

**CREST** is a figure placed upon a wreath, coronet, or cap of maintenance, above the helmet or shield.\* No women, except sovereign princesses, attach to their arms the helmet, mantlings, wreath, crest, or motto. See P. 17, n. 5.

**CRESTED** is when the cock, or other bird, has its comb of a different tincture from its body; it is then termed crested of such a tincture, naming it.

**CRINED** (Lat. *crinis*, the hair) is a term used in blazonry when speaking of the hair of a man or woman, or the mane of a horse, which, when it differs in tincture from the rest of the charge, is said to be *crined* of such a metal or colour.

**CRONEL**, the iron head of a tilting spear. P. 2, n. 19. *Sable, a chevron, ermine, between three cronels of a tilt-spear, argent; name, Wiseman.*

**CROSIER.** This staff (according to Polydore Virgil) was given to bishops to chastise the vices of the people. It is called *Baculis Pastoralis*, as given to them in respect of their pastoral charge and superintendence over their flock, as well for feeding them with wholesome doctrine, as for defending them from the incursions of the wolf; wherein they imitate the good and watchful shepherd, to whose crook this crosier bears a resemblance. P. 12, n. 8.

**CROSS**, one of the honourable ordinaries, formed by the meeting of two perpendicular with two horizontal lines, near the fess-point, where they make four right angles; the lines are not drawn throughout, but discontinued the breadth of the ordinary, which takes up only the fifth part of the field, when not charged, but if charged, the third. T. 4, n. 20. The first use we find made of crosses, as a heraldic bearing, was in the expeditions to the wars in the Holy Land, in the year 1096. There were at that

\* See note to p. 64.

time great numbers who took crosses, which they received from the hands of the bishops and priests, and which, being made of cloth or taffeta, were sewed on their garments ; so by varying the form of the cross, each leader was known.

CROSS-BOW. This instrument, military, (according to Polydore,) was invented by the Cretans, who out of it used to shoot stones and darts. *Ermine, a cross-bow bent in pale gules; name, Arblaster.* P. 12, n. 1. The bow is an instrument to shoot arrows from ; they are of two sorts, the long-bow and cross-bow ; the first discharges an arrow by the force of him who draws the bow ; while the latter owes its extension to the power of a small lever, which is let off by means of a trigger. See P. 12, n. 1.

= CROSS CROSLET, that is, crossed at each end. T. 6, n. 10.

PER Cross. This term signifies the field to be divided into four equal parts, and to consist of metals and colours, or furs and colours, without any charge occupying the quarters ; but if the quarters be charged, then it is blazoned quarterly. *Party per cross, gules and argent : name, Cock.* T. 3, n. 5.

CROSS OF JERUSALEM. See JERUSALEM CROSS.

CROSSWISE, or, *in cross*, is when any charges are placed in form of a cross, five being the common number. See P. 4, n. 17 and 18.

#### CROWNS AND CORONETS OF ENGLAND.

The ROYAL CROWN of GREAT BRITAIN is a circle of gold, enriched with pearls and stones, and heightened up with four crosses pattée, and four fleur-de-lis alternately ; from these rise four arch-diadems, adorned with pearls, which close under a mound, ensigned by a cross pattée. Edward the Fourth was the first sovereign of England that, in his seal, or on his coin, was crowned with an arch-diadem. The crown used at the last coronation was beautified and improved agreeably to the taste of the age. P. 9, n. 1 ; and see *ante*, p. 69.

The PRINCE OF WALES's CORONET is a circle of gold, set round with crosses pattée, and fleurs-de-lis, but has only one arch, decorated with pearls, surmounted by a mound and cross, and bordered with ermine. P. 9, n. 2. Three ostrich-feathers, argent, quilled or, enfiled with a prince's coronet of the last, with an escrol, azure, thereon the words *Ich dien*, I serve, P. 5, n. 24, is the badge or cognisance of every Prince of Wales, and was assumed by Edward the Black Prince, after the battle of Cressy, A.D. 1346, where having, with his own hand, killed John, king of Bohemia, who served the king of France in his wars, and was his stipendiary, he took from his head such a plume and motto, and put it on his own, to perpetuate the victory.

YOUNGER SONS, or BROTHERS of the BLOOD ROYAL. This coronet has a circle of gold, bordered with ermine, heightened up with four fleurs-de-lis, crosses pattée and strawberry-leaves alternately. P. 9, n. 3.

NEPHEWS of the BLOOD ROYAL differ from the younger sons or brothers, by having strawberry-leaves on the rim, as theirs have fleurs-de-lis. P. 9, n. 3.

PRINCESS ROYAL. Coronets of the Princesses of Great Britain are a circle of gold, bordered with ermine, and heightened up with crosses pattée, fleurs-de-lis, and strawberry-leaves alternately. P. 9, n. 5.

DUKE'S CORONET is a circle of gold, with eight strawberry or parsley-leaves, of equal height, above the rim. P. 9, n. 6.

MARQUIS'S CORONET is a circle of gold, set round with four strawberry-leaves, and as many pearls, on pyramidal points of equal height, alternately. P. 9, n. 7.

EARL'S CORONET is a circle of gold, heightened up with eight pyramidal points or spikes; on the tops of which are as many pearls, which are placed alternately below on the rim, with as many strawberry-leaves. P. 9, n. 8.

VISCOUNT'S CORONET is a circle of gold, having sixteen pearls on the rim. Coronets were first assigned

to viscounts in the reign of King James the First.  
P. 9, n. 9.

BARON'S CORONET, on a gold circle, six pearls, p. 9,  
n. 10. Coronets were assigned to barons by King Charles  
the Second, after his restoration.

The pearls on the English coronets are commonly called  
pearls, but they are always made of silver.

Originally the barons wore scarlet caps turned up  
with white : they afterwards wore caps of crimson turned  
up with ermine, and on the top a tassel of gold. This  
they used till the reign of Charles II., as before men-  
tioned.

In 1665, Charles the Second granted his royal warrants  
to the officers of arms in Scotland and Ireland, for the  
peers of each of those kingdoms to wear the same fashioned  
coronets as those of England, according to their several  
degrees.

The mitres of archbishops and bishops are distin-  
guished by a plain fillet of gold. See P. 9, n. 12. Ex-  
cepting that of the Palatinate Bishop of Durham, which  
has it issuing out of a ducal coronet.

#### CROWNS FOREIGN, &c. PLATE 8.

1 Celestial,	11 Russia,	20 Doge of Venice,
2 Eastern,	12 Prussia,	21 Vallery,
3 Imperial,	13 Poland,	22 Naval,
4 Pope,	14 Persian,	23 Mural,
5 Charlemagne,	15 Electoral,	24 Civic,
6 Grand Seignor,	16 Archduke,	25 Triumphal,
7 France,	17 Duke of Tuscany,	26 Obsidional,
8 Spain,	18 Dauphin,	27 Chaplet,
9 Portugal,	19 Brunswick,	28 Wreath.
10 Denmark,		

#### CROWNS FOREIGN, &c. PLATE 19.

1 Bohemia,	9 Waldeck,	17 Guastalla,
2 Sardinia,	10 Mecklenburg,	18 Baden,
3 Sicily,	11 Genoa,	19 Modena,
4 Holland,	12 Lorraine,	20 Holstein,
5 Orange,	13 Guelderland,	21 Hungary,
6 Hanover,	14 Mentz,	22 Sweden,
7 Palatine,	15 Catalonia,	23 Mantua,
8 Cologne,	16 Parma,	24 Valence.

These crowns are copied from the seals of the different countries.

**CROWNS**, Vallery, Mural, &c. See those terms.

**CRUSULY** is the field, or charge, strewed over with crosses.

**CRWTH**, an ancient term for a violin.

**CRY OF WAR**. Any word or sentence used as a general cry throughout an army upon its approach to battle.

**CUBIT ARM** is the hand and arm couped at the elbow. See P. 13, n. 17.

**CUIRASS**, or breast-plate of armour. See P. 17, n. 1. *Polyænus* says, Alexander, considering that the body being encircled with armour, might be a temptation to the soldiers to turn their backs upon their enemies, therefore commanded them to lay aside their back-pieces, and arm themselves with breast-plates only.

**CUISSES** are those parts of armour which cover the thighs and knees, and by former heralds were called Culliers.

**CULLVERS**, or Culliers. See CUISSES.

**CUMBENT**. See Lodged.

**CURRIERS' SHAVE**. A tool used by curriers to thin leather; it is borne in the arms and crest of the Curriers' Company. P. 5, n. 18.

**CUSHIONS**; distinctive characteristics of Eastern manners and luxury; of such account as to have place in Mahomet's paradise. They appear to be borne in heraldry as trophies selected from the spoils of the infidels. This bearing is looked upon as a mark of authority, and is borne by many ancient families. P. 17, n. 15. *Gules, three cushions ermine, buttoned and tasselled or*; name, *Redman*.

**CUTTING-IRON**. A tool used by the patten-makers, and borne by them in their armorial ensign. P. 2, n. 30.

**CUTTLE-FISH**, or Ink-fish. P. 19, n. 22.

**CYGNET**, a young swan.

**CYGNET ROYAL**. This term is given to swans when they are collared about the neck with an open crown, and

a chain affixed thereto. See P. 14, n. 15. The most proper blazon is, *a swan argent, ducally gorged and chained or*. When the head of a swan is a charge, it is blazoned, *a swan's neck* (not head) *erased or couped*: but this is not the custom in regard to any other species of bird.

**CYGNUS, or Swan.**

**DACRE'S KNOT and BADGE.** See P. 15, n. 35.

**DANCETTÉ** is a larger sort of indenting (being wider and deeper than that called indented), whose points never exceed three in number. T. 3. *Note.* See the difference in Plate J, n. 12. *Or, a fess dancetté sable*, n. 11, is *azure, two bars indented or, a chief argent*.

**DANISH AXE.** See P. 15, n. 11.

**DANISH HATCHET.** See P. 22, n. 6.

**DARNEL**, a term for a cockle.

**DAUPHIN'S CROWN** is a circle of gold, set round with eight fleurs-de-lis, closed at the top with four dolphins, whose tails conjoin under a fleur-de-lis. P. 8, n. 18.

**DEBRUISED**, is when a bend or other ordinary is placed over any animal, whereby it is debarred of its natural freedom. See P. 15, n. 17.

**DECOLLATED**, having the head cut off.

**DECRESCENT** shows the state of the moon when she declines from her full to her last quarter, and differs from the crescent by having the horns towards the left side of the shield. T. 7, n. 8. *Azure, a decrescent proper; name, De la Luna.*

**DEFAMED** signifies a creature to have lost its tail, as if it were disgraced and made infamous by the loss thereof. P. 15, n. 14.

**DEGRADED.** A cross is said to be *degraded* when it has steps at each end. P. 4, n. 3. *Argent, a cross degraded sable; name, Wyntworth.*

**DEMI** signifies the half of a thing, as a demi-lion. See T. 8, n. 18. *Or, a demi-lion rampant gules; name, Mallory.*

**DEMI-VOL** is one wing. T. 9, n. 23.

**DEMI-FLEUR-DE-LIS.** T. 10, n. 8. *A demi-fleur-de-lis gules* is the crest of *Stodlyr*. See another, P. 7, n. 24.

**DEMI-ROSE.** See P. 15, n. 29. *Or, on a fess vert, between three battle-axes gules, a fleur-de-lis or, enclosed by two demi-roses argent; name, Jenynges.*

**DENMARK, CROWN of,** P. 8, n. 10.

**DETIMENT,** a term for the moon when eclipsed.

**DEVOURING.** See VORANT.

**DEXTER** signifies the right-hand side of the escutcheon; the supporter, and everything placed on the right hand, is termed the dexter; it is also the male side in an impaled coat of arms.

**DEXTER HAND,** the right hand. P. 7, n. 32. *Azure, a dexter hand couped, argent; name, Brome.*

**DEXTER BASE** is the right side of the base, represented by the letter G. See T. 1.

**DEXTER CHIEF** is the angle on the right-hand side of the chief, represented by the letter A. See T. 1.

**DEXTER WING.** The right wing.

**DIAMOND** is a precious stone, which in heraldry signifies the colour sable, or black. This stone was the third in the second row of Aaron's breast-plate.

**DIAPERED** is dividing the field in panes like fret-work, and filling the same with a variety of figures. P. 3, n. 14. This seems more the fancy of the painter than a paternal bearing.

**DIFFAMÉ.** See DEFAMED.

**DIFFERNCE** is certain figures added to coats of arms, to distinguish one branch of a family from another, and how distant younger branches are from the elder. See DISTINCTION OF HOUSES.

**DIMINUTIVES.** The pale's diminutives are the PALLET and ENDORSE; the bend has the GARTER, COST, and RIBBON; the bar has the CLOSET, BARRULET, and BAR-GEMEL; the chevron has the CHEVRONEL and COUPLE-CLOSE; the bend sinister has the SCARPE and BATON; the bordure has the ORLE and TREASURE; the quarter has the CANTON; the flanch has the FLASQUE and VOIDER. See each in its respective place.

**DISMEMBERED** signifies a cross, or other thing, cut in

pieces, and set up at a small distance, but keeping the form of the figure. See P. 4, n. 9. See a lion dismembered, P. 7, n. 14. *Or, a lion rampant, gules, dismembered, within a double tressure, flory, counterflory, of the second; name, Maitland.*

**DISPLAYED**, for the wings of a bird when they are expanded, as in the example, *an eagle displayed.* T. 9, n. 21.

**DISTILLATORY**, double-armed with two worms and bolt-receivers on fire, being part of the arms of the Distillers' Company. P. 5, n. 14.

**DISTINCTIONS OF HOUSES.** These differences serve to inform us from what line the bearer of each is descended; these distinctions began about the time of Richard the Second (according to Camden, Clarendon). P. 10.

Nisbet says, "in the tenth and eleventh centuries armorial bearings were single and plain, consisting of few figures; for the distinctions used as marks of cadency were rare, and the practice of composing and marshalling them, either with some of the charges, or with the exterior ornaments of other families, was not then in use."

#### FIRST HOUSE.

Fig. 1, is the label for the first son.

Fig. 2, the crescent for the second son.

Fig. 3, the mullet for the third son.

Fig. 4, the martlet for the fourth son.

Fig. 5, the annulet for the fifth son.

Fig. 6, the fleur-de-lis for the sixth son.

Fig. 7, a rose for the seventh son.

Fig. 8, a cross moline for the eighth son.

Fig. 9, a double quatrefoil for the ninth son.

*By these distinctions every brother or house ought to observe his or its due difference.*

#### SECOND HOUSE.

Fig. 1, *the crescent with the label on it* for the first son of the second son.

*Fig. 2, the crescent on the crescent* for the second son of the second son of the first house, and so on. See P 10. *Note.* The label is borne by the eldest son whilst his father lives, to signify that he is but the third person, his father being one, his mother another, and himself being the third. *Crescent*, the second son, to show that he should increase the family by estate or reputation. *Mullet*, or spur-rowel, the third son, to show that he should follow chivalry. *Martlet*, the fourth son, because, expecting no patrimony, he should become a soldier, and defend castles, which were the only old fortifications; in which castles martlets used to make their nests. *Annulet*, the fifth son, to remind him to achieve great actions; the badge whereof was, in old times, *jus aureorum annulorum*. *Fleur-de-lis*, sixth son, to remind him of his country and prince. *Rose*, seventh son, to remind him to endeavour to flourish like that excellent flower. *Moline*, eighth son, to remember to grieve when he can fasten, seeing he has nothing else to which he may trust. *Double Quatrefoil*, ninth son, to express that he is removed from his eldest brother, and the succession, by eight degrees.

 The distinctions made use of for differencing the several princes and princesses of the blood-royal of England are generally labels, variously charged.

DISVELOPED signifies displayed; as colours flying, or spread out, are in heraldry often said to be disveloped. See P. 5, n. 1. Wyrley, noted in the life and death of the Capitaine de Bur, says, "With threatening ax in hand I was at hand; and my *disveloped* penon me before."

DOGE OF VENICE, CROWN OF, P. 8, n. 20.

Dogs, of various kinds, are common in heraldry. See TALBOT, ALANT, &c. *Or, a fess dancetté between three talbots passant, sable*; name, Carrack.

DOLPHIN is reckoned the king of fishes, and is used in several coats of arms. The ancients invariably represent the dolphin with its back greatly incurvated. In their leaps out of the water they assume this form, but their natural shape is straight, the back being but slightly

incurvated. P. 17, n. 2. The example in blazon is termed *a dolphin naissant embowed*; but when a dolphin appears in a coat straight, it is then termed *a dolphin extended naissant*; when it is placed perpendicular, with its body in the form of a letter S, it is called *springing and haurient*; but it is most usually blazoned *a dolphin haurient torqued*. *Azure, a dolphin haurient embowed, argent*; name, *Fitz-James*.

**DORMANT** signifies sleeping, with the head resting on the fore-paws. T. 8, n. 19. *Or, three lions dormant in pale, sable*; name, *Lloyd*.

**DOSSER.** See *WATER-BOUGET*.

**DOUBLE DANCETTÉ**, a bend; according to Leigh, the bend double dancetté is a mark of bastardy. See P. 1, n. 13. Carter has this example, viz., *azure, a bend double dancetté, argent*; name, *Lorks*; but makes no mention of the mark of bastardy.

**DOUBLE-HEADED, A LION.** This instance is from Leigh, who says the bearer did homage to two princes (who both bore a lion rampant), for certain lands, by bearing a lion rampant with two heads, signifying the two princes he homaged. P. 15, n. 19. *Or, a lion, double-headed, azure*; name, *Sir John Mason*.

**DOUBLE-TAILED**, a lion rampant, double-tailed. P. 15, n. 18. *Or, a lion, double-tailed or queued, azure*; name, *Wandesford*.

**DOUBLE-FITCHY, A CROSS**, each extremity having two points. P. 6, n. 7.

**DOUBLE-PARTED, A CROSS.** P. 4, n. 16. *Azure, a cross double-parted, argent*; name, *Doubler*, of Cheshire.

**DOUBLE-PLUME**, of ostrich-feathers, is generally composed of five at bottom, and four at top. P. 15, n. 9.

**DOUBLE ROSE.** See P. 6, n. 21.

**DOUBLE TRESSURE**, two tressures, one within the other. See Plate J. n. 9.

**DOUBLE QUATREFOIL.** The double quatrefoil is used as a distinction for the ninth brother. P. 10, n. 9.

**DOUBLINGS** are the linings of robes or mantles of state, or the mantlings in achievements.

DOVE DISPLAYED in the glory of the sun. P. 16, n. 12. This bearing is a part of the arms of the Stationers' Company.

DOVR-TAIL, one of the partition lines, wherein two different tinctures are set within one another, in form of doves' tails or wedges. T. 3.

DRAGON, an imaginary monster, used in heraldry, both in coats, crests and supporters. T. 8, n. 1. *Gules, three dragons passant, in pale ermine; name, Blossun.*

DRAGON'S HEAD, in heraldry, is the colour tenne, or orange colour.

DRAGON'S TAIL, in heraldry, is the term for sanguine or murrey, the colour of cold blood.

DRAWING-IRON, an instrument used by wire-drawers, and part of their armorial ensign. See P. 6, n. 25.

DUCAL CORONET. See CROWNS and CORONETS of England.

DUCIPER, a term for a cap of maintenance.

DUN-FLY. See GAD-FLY.

EAGLE. The eagle is accounted the king of birds, and signifies magnanimity and fortitude of mind. From his rising higher in the air than any of the winged race, he was termed by the ancients the celestial bird, and regarded as the messenger of Jupiter. The eagle was the tutelary bird and ensign of the Romans. *Azure, an eagle displayed, argent, armed gules; name, Cotton.*

SPREAD EAGLE signifies an eagle with two heads, as the example; but it is more heraldic to say, *an eagle with two heads, displayed.* P. 14, n. 31. According to Porney, the reason why the emperor of Germany bears an eagle with two necks is this: on the union of the kingdom of Romania, now a province of Turkey in Europe, its arms, which were *an eagle displayed sable*, being the same as those of the emperor, were united into one body, leaving it two necks, as they are now.

EAGLET: when there are more than one eagle in a coat without some ordinary between them, then in blazon they are termed eaglets, or young eagles.

EARL'S CORONET. See CROWNS and CORONETS of England.

EASTERN CROWN, so termed from its being like that formerly worn by the Jewish kings; it was made of gold, with rays about it, as the example. P. 8, n. 2.

ECLIPSED, the term used when the sun or moon is either partially or wholly obscured, the face and rays being sable.

EEL-SPEAR, an instrument used by fishermen for taking of eels. P. 17, n. 21. *Sable, a chevron between three eel-spears, argent; name, Stratele.*

EGUISÉE, a CROSS, is that which has the two angles at the ends cut off so as to terminate in points. P. 6, n. 3.

EIGHTFOIL, or double quatrefoil, is eight-leaved grass. Sylvanus Morgan gives this as a difference of the ninth branch of a family. See P. 10, n. 9.

ELECTORAL CROWN is a scarlet cap, faced with ermine, diademed with half a circle of gold, set with pearls, supporting a globe, with a cross of gold on the top. P. 8, n. 15.

ELEPHANT was, amongst the Persians, Egyptians, and Indians, the emblem of fidelity, justice, and piety; and amongst the modern Arabs, Siamese, and Sumatrans, the emblem of magnanimity, memory, and providence. In many of the Eastern countries, the white elephants are regarded as the living *manes* of the Indian emperors. Each of these animals has a palace, a number of domestics, golden vessels filled with the choicest food, magnificent garments, and they are absolved from all labour and servitude. The emperor is the only personage before whom they bow the knee, and their salute is returned by the monarch. *Bingley's Anim. Biog.* P. 14, n. 11. *Gules, an elephant passant argent, armed or; name, Elphinstone.*

ELEVATED, as wings elevated, signifies the points of them turned upwards. See T. 10, n. 1.

**EMBATTLED.** See **IMBATTLED**.

**EMBOWED**, a term for anything bent or crooked like a bow, as the dolphin. T. 10, n. 6. A sinister arm couped at the shoulder, *embowed*. See P. 13, n. 18.

**EMBRUED**, signifies a weapon, &c., that is bloody, viz., a *spear-head, embrued gules*.

**EMERALD**, a stone : it signifies in heraldry the colour vert or green. This stone was the first of the second row of Aaron's breast-plate. According to the poets, the emerald was the symbol of love and generation.

**EMEW** of the heralds, is the bird called by the naturalists *cassowary*.

**ENALURON**, for a border charged with birds. The blazon would be more plain, and better understood, by naming the number; thus, *on a border azure, eight martlets or*. P. 2, n. 9.

**ENDORSE** is the fourth of the pale, seldom borne but when a pale is between two of them. T. 4, n. 4.

**ENDORSED**, two things placed back to back; as two lions, or two keys, *endorsed*.

**ENFILED**: when the head of a man, or beast, or any other charge, is placed on the blade of a sword, the sword is said to be *enfiled* with a head, &c.

**ENGRAILED**, a line of partition, by which ordinaries are diversified, composed of semicircles, the teeth or points of which enter the field. T. 3. Also a bordure. See T. 5, n. 10.

**ENGROSSING-BLOCK**, a tool made use of by the wire-drawers. P. 1, n. 14.

**ENHANCED**, is when an ordinary is placed above its usual situation, which chiefly happens to the bend and its diminutives, viz., *argent, three bendlets enhanced, gules*; name, *Byron*. P. 7, n. 29.

**ENGOULÉE**, A Cross, a term for crosses, saltires, &c. with their extremities enter the mouths of lions, leopards, &c. P. 6, n. 23.

**EMMANCHÉ**. See **MANCHÉ**.

**ENSIGNED**, signifies borne on or over, by way of orna-

ment ; as in the example, *a man's heart gules, ensigned with a crown or.* See Plate C, n. 2.

**ENTÉ** signifies grafted or ingrafted. This term is used in the fourth grand quarter of his late Majesty's arms, viz. *Brunswick and Lunenburgh impaled with Saxony, ente en-pointe*, that is, grafted in point.

**ENTOYER**, for a bordure charged with dead or artificial things, to the number of eight. P. 3, n. 13. The most approved method is to say, *argent, a border sable, charged with eight plates*, mentioning their number.

**ENTRAILED**, a CROSS. P. 7, n. 20. Lee says, the colour need not be named, for it is always sable. *Or, on a chevron, sable, a fleur-de-lis accompanied by two stags' heads caboshed, between three crosses, entrailed, of the second; name, Carver.* See P. 7, n. 20.

**ENURNEY**, for a bordure charged with beasts. P. 3, n. 10. The same may be observed here as before to the term entoyer, viz., that the more intelligible blazon is, *argent, a border gules, charged with eight lions passant, of the first.*

**ENVELOPED**. See ENWRAPPED.

**ENWRAPPED**, viz., a child's head couped below the shoulders, *enwrapped about the neck with a snake* : some say enveloped. Plate H, n. 21.

**EPAULIER**, a shoulder-plate of armour.

**ERADICATED**, a term for a tree or plant torn up by the root. See C, n. 22.

**ERASED** is when the head or limb of any creature is violently torn from the body, so that it appears jagged. T. 8, n. 17. *Argent, a lion's head erased, gules; name, Govis.*

**Note.** When boars', bears', wolves', whales', and otters' heads are erased close to the head, as the example, P. 3, n. 4, it is termed *erased close*, to distinguish it from a head erased, as the boar's head, P. 3, n. 5.

**ERECT** signifies anything upright or perpendicularly elevated, as T. 10, n. 1.

**ERMINE** is black spots on a white field. T. 2, n. 1.

Sir G. Mackenzie says, "The first user of this furr in arms was Brutus, the son of Silvius, who, having by accident killed his father, left that unhappy ground, and travelling in Bretaigne in France, fell asleep, and when he awoke, he found this little beast upon his shield, and from that time wore a shield ermine."

**ERMINE**, a Cross, or four ermine-spots in cross. T. 6, n. 13.

**ERMINES** is white spots on a black field. T. 2.

**ERMINITES** is the field white, and the spots black, with one red hair on each side.

**ERMINOIS** is the field gold, and the spots black. T. 2, n. 3.

The French say, *d'or semé d'hermines de sable*.

**ESCALLOP-SHELL** was the pilgrims' ensign in their expeditions and pilgrimages to holy places; they were worn on their hoods and hats, and were of such a distinguishing character that Pope Alexander the Fourth, by a bull, forbade the use of them but to pilgrims who were truly noble. They are still of frequent use in armory, and are said to be an appropriate bearing for such as have made long voyages, or had considerable naval command, and gained great victories. P. 12, n. 2. *Sable, an esclop-shell argent; name Travers.*

**ESCARBUNCLE**, a precious stone, resembling a burning coal in its lustre and colour; it was the third of the first row of precious stones in Aaron's breastplate, whereon the name of *Levi* was engraved, to show that divine knowledge should shine in the priests of the Lord, to illuminate the church. It is an ancient, but a vulgar error, to say an escarbuncle gives light in the dark. *The ancient heralds drew it as in the plate, to express those rays which issue from the centre, which is the stone.* T. 7, n. 18.

**ESCROL.** See **SCROLL**.

**ESCUOTHEON** (the) represents the original shield, buckler, or target, used in war, on which, under every variety of shape, arms were formerly, and still are blazoned,

When shields ceased to be employed, their form was still retained as the field on which coat-armour is depicted; but that form has varied considerably among different nations, at different periods, and even at the same time. Some ancient shields were shaped almost like a horse-shoe, while others were triangular, somewhat rounded at the bottom; which kind the inhabitants of Mesopotamia are said to have used, in imitation of the Trojans, from whom they derived it. Sometimes the shield was heptagonal, or seven-sided; and the first of this shape is said to have been used by the celebrated Marc Antony. The oldest heraldic escutcheons are termed Norman, on account of the shape generally used by that people. They resemble a Gothic arch reversed; the form of which became broader in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and has remained so to this day, when it is again the favourite shape. The escutcheons of knights-bannerets were square, like a banner; and those of Italians, especially of ecclesiastics, were generally oval. The escutcheons of maids, widows, and such as are born ladies, and are married to private gentlemen, are always in the form of a lozenge or diamond; which is supposed to refer to the spindle, as emblematic of virginity. Sir George Mackenzie states, in proof of the antiquity of this practice, that Muriel, countess of Strathern, carried her arms in a lozenge in the year 1524.

**ESCUTCHEON OF PRETENCE** is that escutcheon in which a man bears the coat of arms of his wife, being an heiress; it is placed in the centre of the man's coat, and thereby showeth his pretensions to her lands, by his marriage, accrued to him and the heirs of his body. See P. 13, n. 4.

**ESCUTCHEON, POINTS OF THE**, see ante, p. 14, and Table 1.

**ESPRIT, ST., CROSS OF.** This cross is worn by the knights of that order in France. P. 4, n. 22.

**ESTOILE**, or star, differs from the mullet by having six waved points; for those of the mullet consist of five plain points. T. 7, n. 2. Guillim says, if the number of points be more than six, the number must be expressed.

**EXPANDED, or EXPANSED.** See DISPLAYED.

EYED is a term used in speaking of the spots resembling eyes in the peacock's tail.

EYES are borne in armory, and are emblems of vigilance and vivacity : *barry nebûlé of six pieces, azure and argent, on a chief of the second, three eyes gules*; name, *De la Hay*, of Ireland.

FACÉ, a term used for FESS.

FALCHION, a kind of broad-sword. P. 5, n. 10. See another, P. 20, n. 17, termed an ancient falchion.

FALCON, in heraldry, is usually represented with bells tied on his legs; when decorated with hood, bells, virols, (or rings,) and leashes, then in blazon he is said to be *hooded, belled, jessed, and leashed*, and the colours thereof must be named. Hawking, or falconry, though now disused, was one of the principal sports of our ancestors, A person of rank seldom went out without his hawk on his hand, which, in old paintings, is a criterion of nobility. T. 9, n. 20. *Sable, a falcon with wings expanded or*; name, *Peché*, of Sussex.

FAN. See WINNOWING BASKET.

FANG-TOOTH. See P. 22, n. 5. *Azure, three fang-teeth in fess or*; name, *Bathor*.

FER DE FOURCHETTE, a CROSS; so termed, from its having at each end a forked iron, like that formerly used by soldiers to rest their muskets on. P. 6, n. 18.

FER DE MOLINE. See MILL-BIND.

FERMAILE, or FERMEAUX, signifies a buckle.

FESS POINT is the centre of the escutcheon. See T. 1, letter E.

FESS, one of the honourable ordinaries, and contains a third of the field; some authors say, it was a belt of honour, given as a reward by kings, &c., for services in the army. T. 4, n. 13.

FESS BRETESED, has the same indents as *counter-embattled*; but the example has both sides equal to each other. P. 13, n. 6. *Or, a fess bretessed gules*; name, *Crebott*, of Sussex.

FER FESS is when the field or charge is equally divided

by a horizontal line. *Party per fess, or and azure*; name, *Zusto*, of Venice. T. 3, n. 3.

**PER FESS** and **PAL**E, signifies the field to be divided into three parts by the fess line, and the pale line, from the fess point to the middle base point. P. 3, n. 30.

. **FESSE TARGET**, an ancient term for an escutcheon of pretence.

**FESSELY**, an ancient term for *party per fess*.

**FESSWAYS**, or **FESSWISE**, implies any charge placed or borne in fess, that is, in a horizontal line across the field, or if a crest, on the wreath.

**FETLOCK**, a horse fetlock. P. 5, n. 15.

**FETTERED**. See **SPANCELLRD**.

**FIELD** is the surface of the escutcheon or shield, which contains the charge or charges, and must be the first thing mentioned in blazoning.

**FIGURED**, a term sometimes used in blazoning those bearings which are depicted with a human face, as Plate C, n. 25.

**FILE**. See **LABEL**.

**FILLET** is an ordinary, which, according to Guillim, contains the fourth part of a chief.

**FIMBRIATED**, A Cross, having a narrow bordure or hem, of another tincture. See P. 6, n. 2.

**FIRE**, in heraldry, is said to be typical of those who, being ambitious of honour, perform brave actions, with an ardent courage, in the service of their prince and country. *Argent, a chevron voided, azure, between three flames of fire proper*; name, *Wells*. Plate C, n. 26.

**FIRE-BALL**, grenade or bomb, inflamed proper. P. 12, n. 14.

**FIRE-BEACON**, a machine formerly used to give notice of the approach of an enemy, and to alarm the country. This is by some ancient heralds termed a rack-pole beacon. See P. 12, n. 4. P. 2, n. 16.

There is another figure also termed by some ancient writers a fire-beacon; but Edmondson thinks it (see the example, P. 3, n. 8,) should be blazoned, a *fire-chest*:

such chests made of iron, and filled with fire, anciently used to warm the inside of large halls.

**FIRE-BRAND**, viz. a fire-brand inflamed proper. P. 7, n. 27.—Fire-brands in armory are generally represented *raguly*.

**FIRE-BUCKET**, P. 20, n. 20. *Argent, three fire-buckets sable; name, Taine.*

**FIRME**, a term for a cross pattée throughout. See P. 16, n. 9.

**FISH-HOOK**, P. 20, n. 15. *Sable, a chevron, between three fish-hooks argent; name, Medville.*

**FISH-WHEEL**, P. 15, n. 30. *Or, between a chevron, three fish-wheels sable; name, Foleborne.*

**FITCHY**, **FITCHÉ**, or **FITCHED**, a term used for crosses, when the lower branch ends in a sharp point, (French *fichée*, fixed); supposed to have been first so sharpened to enable the primitive Christians to fix the cross in the ground for devotion; viz., *a cross-crosslet fitchy*, as T. 6, n. 11.

**FITCHY (DOUBLE)**, is a cross, each extremity of which has two points. P. 6, n. 7.

**FLANCHES**. The flanch is composed of an arched line, drawn from the upper angle of the escutcheon to the base point of one side, and so on to the other, the arches almost meeting in the middle of the field. Flanches are never borne single, but in couples, and always in the flanks of the shields. T. 5, n. 2. *Ermine, a star of eight rays or, between two flanches sable; name, Sir John Hotart, of Norfolk.*

**FLANK** is that part of an escutcheon which is between the chief and the base.

**FLASQUES** are like the flanch, but smaller, and not so circular. P. 7, n. 6. Gibbon affirms that the flasque and the flanch are one and the same.

**FLAX-BREAKER**. See **HEMP BREAK**.

**FLEAM**, an instrument used by farriers in bleeding horses: some ancient heralds represent them as P. 1, n. 16.

Others term them crampoons, or cramps of iron, for fixing blocks of stone together.

**FLEAM**, an ancient lancet, formerly borne in the arms of the Company of Barber-Surgeons. P. 19, n. 7.

**FLEECE**, the woolly skin of a sheep suspended from the middle, by a ring in a collar or band. See **GOLDEN FLEECE**.

**FLESH-POT**, a three-legged iron pot. See P. 12, n. 15.  
*Argent, three flesh-pots gules, with two handles; name, Mounbowchier.*

**FLEXED**, or **FLECTED**, signifies bowed or bent, as the example, Plate C, n. 21, viz : *three dexter arms conjoined at the shoulders, and flexed in triangle or, with the fists clenched proper; name, Tremaine.*

**FLEUR-DE-LIS** : by some this emblem is supposed to represent the lily, or flower of the iris or flag ; but it has only three leaves, by which it certainly differs from the lily of the garden, that having always five : others suppose it to be the top of a sceptre ; some the head of the French battle-axe ; others, the iron of a javelin used by the ancient French. Dr. Orwade says, many deceased antiquaries, as well as some of the present day, have thought, and do think, that it was originally meant to represent the flower from which it derives its name. P. 12, n. 19. *Azure, a fleur-de-lis argent; name, Digby.*

**FLEURY**, a Cross. This cross is differenced from the cross-flory, by its having a line between the ends of the cross and the flowers, which that has not. P. 4, n. 32.

**FLOAT**, an instrument used by the bowyers, and borne as part of their armorial ensign. P. 1, n. 10.

**FLOOK**, an Irish term for a large *flounder*.

**FLORY** signifies flowered with the French lily.

**FLORY**, a Cross, is one the extremities of which end in fleurs-de-lis : it differs from the patonce, by having the flowers at the ends circumflex and turning down. T. 6, n. 3. *Azure, a cross-flory argent; name, Florence.*

**FLOTANT**, to express anything flying in the air, as a banner-floatant.

**FLYING FISH.** This fish, if we except its head and flat back, has, in the form of its body, a great resemblance to the herring. The scales are large and silvery; the pectoral fins are very long; and the dorsal fin is small, and placed near the tail, which is forked. P. 19, n. 8.

**FORCENÉ** signifies a horse rearing or standing on his hinder legs. P. 11, n. 4.

**FORMÉE.** See **PATTÉE**.

**FOREIGN CROWNS.** See **CROWNS, FOREIGN**.

**FOUNTAIN:** we find fountains borne by *Stourton* of Stourton, being *a bend between six fountains*, in signification of six springs, whereof the river Stoure, in Wiltshire, hath its beginning, and passeth along to Stourton, the head of that barony. The fountain in ancient heraldry was always drawn as a roundle, barry wavy of six, argent and azure.

**FOURCHÉE,** A CROSS, signifies forked at the ends, or divided. P. 6, n. 8. *Per pale, or and vert, a cross fourchée gules;* name, *Sir John Hingham*.

Fox, an animal proverbial for its cunning, may, it is said, properly represent those who have done signal service to their prince and country, upon embassies, &c., where there is more use for wit and dexterity than for strength or valour. P. 11, n. 15.

**FRACTED**, broken asunder; as, a globe fractured.

**FRAISIER**, in French, signifies a strawberry-plant. This word is used by the heralds of Scotland in blazoning the coat of *Fraser*, in allusion to the family name. It is by other heralds termed a *cinque-foil*.

**FRENCH-CROWN** is a circle, decorated with stones, and heightened up with eight arched diadems, arising from as many fleurs-de-lis, that conjoin at the top under a fleur-de-lis, all of gold. P. 8, n. 7.

**FRET**, a figure resembling two sticks lying saltirewise, and interlaced within a mascle, by some termed Harrington's Knot, others the Herald's True Lover's Knot, T. 5, n. 6. *Sable, a fret or;* name, *Maltravers*.

**FRETTED**, a Cross, fretted and pointed in form of five mascles. P. 4, n. 13.

**FRETTED IN TRIANGLE**. See P. 14, n. 28. *Azure, three trout, fretted in triangle, heads or, tails argent; name, Troutbeck.*

**FRETTY**. The ancients used a movable fortress built of wood, and of such a height, that its turrets overlooked the battlements of the city; they were covered with raw hides, to prevent their being burnt, and had also a network of ropes which hung before them, in order to deaden the violence of the stones that were thrown against them by the besieged: this net-work seems to be what fretty was originally taken from. See the example, T. 5, n. 24.

**FRUCTED**, a term given in blazon to all trees bearing fruit.

**FURCHY, or FOURCHÉE**, signifies forked.

**FURNISHED**, a term applied to a horse when bridled, saddled, and completely caparisoned.

**FURS** are used as the artificial trimming or furring of robes and garments of the nobility, and likewise as an ornament in coat-armour. Mackenzie says shields were covered with skins, which coverings gave occasion to furs or skins sewed together, being borne on the shield and charges: see further of Furs, *ante* p. 16.

**FUSIL**, derived from the French word *fusée*, a spindle; it is longer and more acute than the lozenge. T. 6, n. 18. *Ermine, three fusils in fesse sable; name, Pigot.*

**FUSIL**, or a spindle of yarn. P. 2, n. 14.

**FUSILLY** is when the field or charge is filled with fusils. P. 3, n. 28. *Fusilly argent and gules* is the arms of *Gemaldi de Monaco*, in Genoa.

**GADS** are plates of steel, and borne as a part of the arms of the Ironmongers' Company. P. 1, n. 11.

**GAD-BEE, or GAD-FLY**; this fly is by some called the *dun-fly*, by others the *horse-fly*, and is that which in summer so much torments cattle. *Sable, three gad-bees volant, argent; name, Burning-hill.* P. 11, n. 23.

GALLEY. See LYMPHAD.

GAL-TRAPS, or CALTRAPS, by some supposed to be a corruption of *cheval-trap*, and by others thought to have been named *gal* or *gall-traps*, from their application to the purpose of galling horses, are implements used in war, to prevent or retard the advance of cavalry. They are made of iron, with four points, so formed that, whichever way they are placed, one point will always be erect. These implements being strewed on the ground over which the enemy's cavalry has to pass, have been found effectually to retard, if not prevent, any pursuit of a retreating army. They are frequently met with in the armorial ensigns of cavalry officers, as in those of Farrington, bart., whose ancestor was general of artillery. T. 7, n. 3. *Argent, three gal-traps, sable; name, Trapps.*

GAMB, so termed when the whole fore-leg of a lion, or other beast, is borne in arms. See Plate C, n. 1. If it is couped or erased near the middle joint, then it is called a paw. See Plate D, n. 22.

GARB, a sheaf of wheat or any other grain: if the blazon is "a garb" only, wheat is always understood; in other cases the kind of grain must be expressed, as "a garb of oats," &c. T. 7, n. 14.

GARDANT, signifies full-faced, looking right forward. T. 9, n. 1.

GARDE-VISURE, is a French term for the front part of the helmet, which is the safeguard and defence of the face and eyes.

GARLAND, a wreath of leaves or flowers.

GARNISHED signifies ornamented, and is a term applied to ornaments set on any charge whatsoever.

GARTER, the half of a bendlet. T. 4, n. 7.

GAUNTLET, an iron glove that covered the hand of a cavalier, when armed *cap-a-pe*: gauntlets were introduced about the thirteenth century: the *casque* and these were always borne in ancient processions; *gauntlets* were frequently thrown like the glove by way of challenge.

P. 2, n. 21, and P. 22, n. 24. In blazon, the word *dexter* or *sinister* must be expressed, as the charge may happen to be.

AT GAZE, when a beast of chase, as the hart, is depicted as affrontée, or full-faced. T. 9, n. 13.

GED, a Scotch term for the fish called a pike. *Azure, three geds hauriant, argent*; name, *Ged*.

GEMELLS, and GEMEWS. See BAR-GEMELS.

GEM-RING, a ring set with a gem or precious stone.

GENET, a small animal of the fox species, but not bigger than a weasel, occasionally met with in heraldry.

GENOVILIER, a piece of armour that covers the knees.

GERATTIE, an ancient term for powderings.

GILLY-FLOWER, properly July flower, is a species of aromatic carnation. P. 1, n. 12. *Argent, three gilly-flowers, slipped proper*; name, *Jorney*.

GIMBAL-RINGS. P. 20, n. 8. *Argent, on a bend cable, three triple gimbal-rings or*; name, *Hawberke*, of Leicestershire. Sylvanus Morgan says, it would be more heraldic to say, *three annulets interlaced in triangle*.

GIMMAL, or GEMMOW RING, is a ring of double hoops made to play into each other, and so to join two hands, and thus serves for a wedding-ring, which pairs the parties. The name is derived from *Gemellus*, Latin; *Jumeau*, French.

GIRAFFE. See CAMELOPARDALIS.

GIRON. See GYRON.

GLAIVE, or GLEAVE. See JAVELIN.

GLAZIERS' NIPPERS, or grater, a tool used by glaziers, and part of the arms of the Glaziers' Company. P. 19, n. 4.

GLIDING; this term is used for serpents, snakes, or adders, when moving forward fesswise.

GOBONY, or GOBONATED, is the same as *compony*, except that it is always of one row of squares and no more. T. 5, n. 13.

GOLDEN-FLEECE is the skin of a sheep, with its head and feet, hung up by its middle at a ring in a collar, as the example, P. 11, n. 8; it is worn by the knights of tha

order in Spain, instituted by Philip, Duke of Burgundy, in memory of Gideon's fleece.

GOLPS are roundles of the purple tincture. T. 8, n. 15.

GONFANNON, the banner, standard, or ensign of the Roman Catholic Church, anciently always carried in the Popes' armies. The gonfannon is borne as an armorial figure, or common charge, by families abroad, on account of some of the family having been gonfannoniers, i. e. standard-bearers to the church, as the *Counts of Auvergne*, in France. *Or, a gonfannon gules, fringed vert.* P. 2, n. 28.

GORGE, a term in Leigh for a water-bouget.

GORGED, a term used to describe a lion or other animal having a crown by way of collar to its neck.

GORGET, a piece of armour worn round the neck, the origin of that which officers now wear when on duty.

GRADIENT, a term applied to a tortoise walking.

GRAIN-TREE. P. 19, n. 20. Three sprigs of this tree is the crest of the Dyers' Company.

GRAND SEIGNIOR'S CROWN is a turban, enriched with pearls and diamonds. P. 8, n. 6.

GRAPPLING-IRON. P. 15, n. 28. *Azure, a chevron or, between three grappling-irons of three flukes, double-ringed at the top; name, Stewins.*

GRASSHOPPER. Amongst the Athenians grasshoppers were so much esteemed, that they wore gold ones in their hair, to denote their national antiquity, or that, like the Cicadæ, they were the first-born of the earth. Among the Egyptians, the hieroglyphic of music. P. 12, n. 5.

GRAY, a term for a badger. See BADGER.

GREAVE, that part of armour that covers the leg from the knee to the foot.

GREY-HOUND. See P. 22, n. 20.

GRICES, young wild boars; sometimes boars are blazoned *Grices*, in allusion to the bearer's name, *Grice*.

GRIDIRON. P. 7, n. 19. *Argent, a chevron between three gridirons, sable; names, Laurence and Scott.*

GRIECEs signifies steps, viz.; a cross on three grieceS.  
See P. 4, n. 19.

GRIFFIN, an imaginary animal, never to be found but in painting; feigned by the ancients to have the wings of an eagle, and the head and paws of a lion, and devised to express strength and swiftness united. This imaginary animal was consecrated to the sun; and ancient painters represented the chariot of the sun as drawn by griffins. As a charge, it is common on ancient arms. Gwillim blazons it *rampant*, alleging that any fierce animal may be so blazoned as well as the lion; but *segreant* is the term generally used instead of rampant. P. 7, n. 13. *Argent, a griffin segreant azure, beaked or; name, Culcheth.*

GRIGGIN, male: this chimerical creature is half an eagle and half a lion, having large ears, but no wings, and rays of gold issuing from various parts of its body. P. 7, n. 2.

GRINGOLLÉE, A Cross, a term for crosses, saltiers, &c., whose extremities end with the heads of serpents. P. 6, n. 12.

GRITTIE, a term for a shield composed equally of metal and colour.

GUIDON, a semicircular banner, used at the funeral of a field-officer, on which are painted the crest and motto of the deceased, with ornamental insignia, &c. The same name is also given to a small banner, with the arms of Ulster painted thereon, used only at the funeral of a baronet. It is also the title of the ensign or flag of a troop of horse-guards.

GULES signifies the colour red, and in engraving is represented by perpendicular lines. T. 2. Ghul, in the Persian language, signifies a rose, or rose-colour.

GUN-STONE, an ancient term for a pellet.

GURGES, or a whirlpool. This is the arms of the family named *Gorges*. See P. 5, n. 6. The whirlpool is always borne proper, therefore there is no occasion for naming the field, because the whole is *azure* and *argent*, and takes up

all the field, representing the rapid motion of the water turning round.

GUTTY, or guttée, from the Latin *gutta*, a drop, is said of a field, or bearing, filled with drops. T. 8, n. 8. When these figures are black, they signify drops of pitch, which in blazon are termed *gutty de poix*; so when blue, *gutty de larmes*, denoting drops of tears; when white, *gutty d'eau*, signifying drops of water; when yellow, *gutty d'or*, denoting drops of liquid gold; when green, *gutty de vert*, as signifying drops of olive oil; and when red, *gutty de sang*, as representing drops of blood: their form or shape is the same, only the colours change their names. The French use none of these variations, but say *gutté* of such a colour.

GUZES are roundles of the sanguine murrey or blood-colour.

GYRON signifies a gore in a robe, gown, or coat of armour, used by the ancients. T. 5, n. 1. Porney says, this term is the French for *bosom*, and these figures are called *gyrons*, because they meet in the centre or bosom of the shield. Menestrier gives examples of gyrons in the arms of *Giron* in Spain, of which family are descended the *Dukes of Ossone*, who carry three *gyrons* in their arms, which, he says, represent three triangular pieces of stuff, or gussets, of the coat-armour of Alphonsus the Sixth, King of Spain, who, fighting in battle against the Moors, had his horse killed, and, being in danger was rescued, and remounted, by *Don Roderico de Cisneres*, who cut off three triangular pieces, or gussets, of the king's coat-armour, which he kept as a testimony, to show the king afterwards that he was the man who saved him: for which the king advanced him to honour, graced his armorial bearing with three gyrons, P. 6, n. 1; and adorned it with a horse for a crest, to perpetuate to posterity the relief he gave the king. *Note.* When there is only one gyron in a coat, you may blazon thus, *argent, a gyron sable*, without mentioning the point from whence it issues, the dexter chief point being the usual fixed place.

But if it stand in any other part of the shield, it must then be expressed.

**GYRONNY** is where a field is divided into six, eight, ten, or twelve triangular parts, of two different tinctures, and the points all uniting in the centre of the field ; gyrons signify unity, because they are never borne single. T. 5, n. 23. *Gyronny of eight, argent and sable ; name, Mawgyron.*

**HABECK**, an instrument used by the clothiers in dressing cloth, two of them differing from each other in form, as P. 5, n. 9. That on the dexter is copied from the tool, which is invariably made in that form ; the other, on the sinister, shows the form in which it is painted in the arms of the Clothiers' Company.

**HABERGEON**, a short coat of mail, consisting of a jacket without sleeves. P. 1, n. 17.

**HAIE.** See **WEARE**.

**HALF-BELT.** P. 1, n. 3. *Gules, two half-belts and buckles, argent ; name, Pelham.*

**HALF-SPEAR**, a term for a spear with a short handle. P. 1, n. 18.

**HALF-SPADE.** *Azure, three half-spades or, the sides of the spade to the sinister.* P. 5, n. 16 ; name, *Davenport*.

**HAND DEXTER**, the right hand. P. 7, n. 32.

**HAND SINISTER**, the left hand. P. 7, n. 33. *Argent, three sinister hands, couped at the wrist gules ; name, Maynard.*

**HARP**, the well-known musical instrument, the tones of which are produced from strings struck with the fingers. It appears to have been used from the earliest antiquity among the Hebrews, Greeks, and Romans, though differing considerably in shape and in the number of its strings. The harp was the favourite musical instrument of the Britons and other Northern nations in the middle ages ; and the high estimation in which it was held by the Welch and Irish is proverbial. It is naturally, therefore, very frequently met with as an armorial bearing, and is usually represented as P. 12, n. 17. The arms of the

kingdom of Ireland are, *azure, a harp or, stringed argent*, now introduced into the royal achievement of Great Britain and Ireland.

HARPOON, an instrument used for spearing whales. P. 5, n. 7.

HARPY, a poetical monster, feigned to have the face and breast of a virgin, and body and legs like a vulture. T. 8, n. 2. *Azure, a harpy with her wings disclosed, her hair flotant or, armed of the same.* This coat stands in Huntingdon church.

HARRINGTON KNOT, a badge of the family of Harrington. See P. 15, n. 33.

HARROWS are instruments used in husbandry. *Ermine, three triangular harrows, conjoined in the nombril point, gules, with a wreath argent and of the second, toothed or;* name, *Harrow.* P. 18, n. 11.

HART, a stag; properly one in its sixth year.

HARVEST-FLY. *Sable, a harvest-fly in pale, volant, argent;* name, *Bolowre.* P. 11, n. 22.

HAT-BAND. P. 20, n. 21. *Gules, a chevron between three hat-bands argent;* name, *Maynes.*

HATCHMENT is the coat of arms of a person dead, usually placed on the front of a house. See HATCHMENTS, Plate K.

HAUBERK, a twisted coat of mail; some fine specimens of which may be seen in the Tower of London.

HAURIANT, a term applied to fishes when represented palewise or erect, as if they were refreshing themselves by sucking in the air. T. 10, n. 4.

HAWK, a bird of prey, and for its size a very bold and courageous bird, much used in heraldry. T. 9, n. 20. The hawk was an Egyptian emblem of the sun and of light, on account of its rapid flight, and his soaring into the highest regions of the air, where light abounds.

HAWK'S BELL, is of great antiquity, having been worn by the high-priests of the Hebrews, on the skirts of their upper garments in divine worship. P. 14, n. 35. *Or,*

*on a fess azure, three hawks' bells of the first; name, Planke.*

HAWK'S LURE. See LURE.

HAY-FORK. P. 17, n. 8. *Argent, a hay-fork between three mullets, sable,* is the arms of *Conyngham.*

HEAD IN PROFILE; the head and side face couped at the neck. See P. 13, n. 21.

HEARTS, in heraldry, were given to denote the valour or sincerity of the bearer, when arms were the reward of virtue. *Gules, a chevron argent, between three hearts or;* name, *Frebody.* The heart is blazoned a *human heart*, and sometimes *a body heart.* The ancients used to hang the figure of a heart, with a chain from the neck, upon the breast, to signify sincerity. See P. 22, n. 21.

HEATH COCK. P. 19, n. 18.

HEDGE-HOG. *Azure, three hedgehogs, or;* names, *Abrahall* and *Herries.* P. 11, n. 6.

HELMETS. The helmet is armour for the head, which the ancients used to ornament according to the degree of nobility, with buckles, studs, and circles of gold, and decorated with jewels: and our manner of bearing crests thereon is from the ancient fancy of the Greeks and Romans, who used to adorn them with some kind of monstrous device, as the head, mouth, or paw of a lion, to make them appear more terrible. P. 10.

The first is the helmet of a king, prince, or duke, and is full forward, open-faced, and garde-visure.

The second is the helmet of a marquis, earl, viscount, and baron, which is in profile, open-faced, and garde-visure.

The third helmet, standing directly forward, with the beaver open, and without guards, for a knight or baronet.

The fourth is a helmet sidewise, with the beaver close, which is for all esquires and gentlemen. Note, The helmets were copied from originals in the Tower.

If two helmets are to be placed on the top of a shield, for the crests to be thereon, they must be placed facing

one another, as if two persons were looking at each other; but if three helmets are to be placed as before-mentioned, the middlemost must stand directly forward, and the other two on the side facing towards it, like two persons looking upon the third.

HERCE. See HARROW.

HIACINTH. See HYACINTH.

HIEROGLYPHICS. Sir Isaac Newton speaking of the time of Cambyses, says, in those days the writing of the Thebans and *Æthiopians* was in hieroglyphics; and this way of writing seems to have spread into Lower Egypt, before the days of Moses; for thence came the worship of their gods in the various shapes of birds, beasts, and fishes, forbidden in the second commandment. Now this emblematical way of writing gave occasion to the Thebans and *Æthiopians*, who, in the days of Samuel, David, Solomon, and Rehoboam, conquered Egypt and the nations round about, and erected a great empire, to represent and signify their conquering kings and princes, not by writing down their names, but by making various hieroglyphical figures; as by painting Ammon with rams' horns, to signify a king who conquered Libya, a country abounding with sheep; his father Amasis with a scythe, to signify that king who conquered the lower Egypt, a country abounding with corn; his son Osiris, by an ox, because he taught the conquered nations to plough with oxen; Bacchus with bulls' horns for the same reason: and with grapes, because he taught the nations to plant vines; and upon a tiger, because he subdued India; Orus, the son of Osiris, with a harp, to signify the prince who was eminently skilled on that instrument; Jupiter upon an eagle, to signify the sublimity of his dominion, and with a thunderbolt, to represent him a warrior; Venus in a chariot drawn by doves, to represent her amorous and lustful; Neptune with a trident, to signify the commander of a fleet composed of three squadrons; *Ægæon*, a giant with fifty heads and one hundred hands, to signify

Neptune with his men in a ship of fifty oars ; Thoth with a dog's head, and wings at his cap and feet, and a caduceus writhed about with two serpents, to signify a man of craft, and an ambassador who reconciled two contending nations ; Pan with a pipe and the legs of a goat, to signify a man delighted with piping and dancing ; Hercules with pillars and a club, because Sesostris set up pillars in all his conquests, and fought against the Libyans with clubs. Now from this hieroglyphical way of writing, it came to pass, that upon the division of Egypt into nomes by Sesostris, the great men of the kingdom, to whom the nomes were dedicated, were represented in their sepulchres or temples of the nomes by various hieroglyphics ; as by *an ox, a cat, a dove, a cebus, a goat, a lion, a scarabæus, an ichneumon, a crocodile, a hippopotamus, an oxyrinchus, an ibis, a crow, a hawk, a leek* ; and were worshipped by the nomes in the shapes of these creatures.

**HEMP-BREAK**, an instrument to make hemp soft and fit for use. P. 2, n. 10. *Argent, three hemp-breaks sable* ; name, *Hampsone* or *Hamston*, alderman of London.

**HILTED**, a term for the handle of a sword.

**HOLY LAMB**. See **LAMB**.

**HONOUR-POINT** is that point next above the centre of the shield, and is expressed by the letter D, Table 1.

**HORSE** is a favourite beast among all nations, as being more useful to man than any other of the creation, either in peace or war, for service or pleasure ; it is naturally courageous, docile, fleet, and very beautiful ; and hence is frequently met with as a charge in heraldry, in which science it seems generally to have been adopted as the emblem of war. P. 14, n. 8. *Sable, a horse argent, bridled gules* ; name, *Trott*.

**HORSE-SHOE**. This is the arms of Okeham, a town in Rutlandshire. In this town is an ancient custom, if any nobleman enters the lordship, as an homage he is to forfeit one of his horse's shoes, unless he redeem it with money. See P. 22, n. 17.

**HUMETTY**, or **HUMETTÉE**, signifies an ordinary which

is cut off, and nowhere reaches to the edges of the shield. See P. 4, n. 14.

HUNTING-HORN, See BUGLE-HORN.

HURTS are roundles of the azure-colour. T. 8, n. 12.

HYACINTH is a precious stone of a yellowish-red hue, and in heraldry is used to express the colour tenne.

HYDRA, a fabulous creature, supposed to be a dragon with seven heads, as P. 1, n. 21. This is the crest of Barret.

IBEX is an imaginary beast, in some respects like the heraldic antelope, but with this difference, that it hath two straight horns projecting from the forehead, serrated, or edged like a saw. P. 15, n. 4.

ICICLES are in shape the same as gutty. Various are the opinions concerning this bearing; some term them clubs, others guttées reversed, and others icicles. See P. 7, n. 15.

IMBATTLED, or Crenellé, a term for the battlements of towers, churches, and houses, and is one of the lines of partition, T. 3. See an example, P. 13, n. 4, *a fess gules imbattled*.

IMBOWED. See EMBOWED.

IMBRUED signifies anything to be bloody, as spears' heads, when spotted with blood, as the example. *Sable, a chevron between three spear-heads argent, their points imbrued proper;* name, Jefferies, of Brecknockshire. P. 7, n. 35.

To IMPALE is to conjoin two coats of arms palewise: women impale their arms with those of their husbands. See P. 13, n. 3.

IMPERIAL CROWN is a circle of gold, adorned with precious stones and pearls, heightened with fleurs-de-lis, bordered and seeded with pearls, raised in the form of a cap, voided at the top like a crescent; from the middle of the cap rises an arched fillet, enriched with pearls, and surmounted of a mound, whereon is a cross of pearls. P. 8, n. 3.

**IMPERIALLY CROWNED**, when any charge in arms, crest, or supporters, is crowned with a regal crown.

**INCENSED**, a term for panthers, when represented with fire *issuing* from their mouths and ears. See P. 14, n. 7.

**INCREMENT.** See **INCRESCENT**.

**INCRESCENT** shows the state of the moon, from her entrance into her first quarter, by having her horns towards the right side of the shield ; it signifies the rising of families, and even of states. T. 7, n. 7. *Ermine, three crescents, gules* ; name, *Symmes*, of Daventry, in the county of Northampton.

**INDENTED**, one of the lines of partition, in shape the same as *dancetté*, but its teeth smaller, and the number not limited. T. 3, and *a border indented*. See T. 5, n. 11.

**INDIAN GOAT**, or Assyrian goat, resembles the English goat, except that its horns are more bent, and the ears like those of a talbot. P. 2, n. 2. These beasts are the supporters of the arms of Viscount *Southwell*.

**INDORSED**. This term is for wings when placed back to back, as the example. See P. 7, n. 16, viz., *two wings indorSED*. T. 9, n. 24.

**INESCUTCHEON**, a small escutcheon, borne within the shield, and usually placed in the fess-point. T. 5, n. 7. *Ermine, an inescutcheon azure* ; name, *Rokeley*.

**INFAMED.** See **DEFAMED**.

**INFULA.** See **POPE'S CROWN**.

**INGRAILED.** See **ENGRAILED**.

**INK-FISH.** See **CUTTLE-FISH**.

**INK MOLINE**, or *Ink de Moline*. See **Millrine**.

**IN PRIDE.** See **PEACOCK**.

**INTER**, the Latin for *between*.

**INTERLACED** ; when chevronels, annulets, rings, keys, crescents, &c., are linked together, they are termed interlaced, viz., *three chevronels, interlaced in base*. P. 7, n. 30. *A cross of four bastoons interlaced*. P. 4, n. 15.

**INVECKED**, one of the lines of partition, the same form as *engrailed*, but the points of it turning inward to the

charge. T. 3. See the difference in Plate J, n. 14. *Argent, a fess invecked, gules, between three torteaux.* In the same place, n. 13, is *argent on a fess engrailed, gules, three leopards' faces, or.*

**INVERTED.** Inverted denotes anything that is turned the wrong way; particularly wings are said to be *inverted* when the points of them are down. T. 10, n. 2.

**IRON RING,** a tool used by the wire-drawers, and borne as a part of their armorial ensign. P. 2, n. 15.

**ISSUANT, or ISSUING,** signifies the charge to be coming out of the bottom of the chief, as the example. *Azure, on a chief or, a demi-lion issuing gules;* name, *Markham.* T. 10, n. 9.

**JAMES, ST., CROSS OR,** so termed because worn by the knights of that order in Spain. P. 4, n. 23.

**JAVELIN,** or short spear, with a barbed point. P. 2, n. 25.

**JELLOP, JELLOPED,** terms occasionally used in blazonry to describe the comb of a cock, cockatrice, &c., when borne of a tincture different from that of the head.

**JERSEY COMB,** used by the wool-combers. P. 20, n. 2. *Sable, three Jersey-combs or, teeth argent;* name, *Bromley.*

**JERUSALEM, CROSS OR,** so termed from Godfrey of *Bouillon's* bearing *argent, a cross-crosslet cantoned with four crosses, or,* in allusion to the five wounds of Christ. P. 16, n. 13.

**JESSANT** signifies a lion or any beast rising or issuing from the middle of a fess, as P. 7, n. 26. The common method of heraldic writers is *a lion jessant of a fess.* But Edmondson is clearly of opinion that it should be blazoned *a demi-lion jessant of a fess,* as never more than half the lion appears.

This term is also used to express shooting forth, as vegetables spring or shoot out, and occasionally to signify throwing out, as *fleurs-de-lis* out of a leopard's face; for instance, *sable, three leopards' faces jessant fleurs-de-lis or;* for *Morley of Sussex.* Plate B, n. 20. Edmondson

says, an erroneous practice has long been established among heralds, when showing the leopard's face *jessant de lis*, of always turning the head bottom upwards ; whereas the contrary position should be constantly observed, unless otherwise directed by the words of the blazon, viz., a leopard's face reversed, *jessant de lis*.

JESSED is a term used in blazoning a hawk or falcon, whose *jesses*, or straps of leather that tie the bells on the legs, are of a different tincture from the body.

JESSES, leather thongs, to tie the bells on the legs of the hawk and falcon. They are sometimes represented flotant, with rings at the end, as the example, P. 6, n. 13. A hawk's leg erased at the thigh, *jessed and belled*.

JEW'S HARP. P. 20, n. 11, as borne in the arms of Scopham.

JOINANT. See CONJOINED.

JOWLLOPPED describes the gills of a cock, when of a different tincture from his head ; same as JELLOPED.

ST. JULIAN, CROSS OF, by some called a saltire crossed at its extremities ; by others a cross transposed. P. 6, n. 24. *Argent, a Julian cross sable*, for Julian, of Lincolnshire.

JUPITER, one of the planets ; in heraldry it signifies the colour azure, and in engraving is expressed by horizontal lines.

KAARL CAT, a country word for a male cat.

KEYS INDORSED. P. 13, n. 16. Example, *two keys indorSED, the bows interlaced sable* ; name, *Masquenay, or Mackenay*.

KING-FISHER, a bird somewhat larger than the swallow ; its shape is clumsy ; the legs are very small, and the bill disproportionately long and broad ; the upper chap is black, and the lower yellow : the top of the head and the coverts of the wings are of a deep blackish green, spotted with bright blue ; the back and tail are of the most resplendent azure ; the belly is orange-coloured, and a broad mark of the same colour extends from the bill

beyond the eyes, near which there is a large white spot; the tail is of a rich deep blue, and the feet are of a reddish yellow. Plate F, n. 2, or *three kingfishers proper*; name, *Fisher*.

KNOTS. See P. 6, n. 11. P. 15, n. 31, 32, 33, 34, 35. P. 3, n. 7.

LABEL is used to difference the arms of the eldest son from the youngest; by some supposed to be ribbons anciently worn by young men about the neck of their helmets, to distinguish them from their fathers. T. 5, n. 3. See P. 10, n. 1, in the distinction of houses.

LABELS are also ribbons that hang down from a mitre or coronet.

LACY'S KNOT. See P. 6, n. 11.

LAMB, or Holy-Lamb, passant, with a staff, cross and banner, is a typical figure of our Saviour, who is understood to be that Lamb mentioned in the Apocalypse of St. John. P. 14, n. 25.

LAMBEAUX, A CROSS, is a cross-pattée at the top, and issuing out at the foot into three labels. P. 4, n: 21. *Gules, a cross lambeaux argent*; this is a German coat; name, *Rudetzker*.

LAMBREQUIN is a mantle or hood, intervening between the helmet and crest, and always represented flotant; also a name formerly given to the points of a label.

LAMP. P. 17, n. 12. *Gules a chevron, between three lamps argent, with fire proper*; name Farmer.

LANCE, or tilting-spear, *argent on a quarter, a lance in bend or*; name, Knight. See P. 2, n. 6.

LANGUED (French *langué*, of *langue*, the tongue), is a term for the tongue of beasts and birds, when of a different tincture from that of the charge. All beasts and birds (except they are tinctured gules) are langued gules; but when the beast is gules, he must be langued and armed azure. This rule is never to be deviated from, except in cases only where the blazon directs that the beast should be langued of any other colour or metal; and then such colour or metal must be expressed. If a beast or bird is

to be represented in coat-armour, without either tongue or claws, you must say, when blazoning, *sans langue and arms*.

LARMES, the French for *tears*; see GUTTÉE.

LATTICE. See TREILÉE.

LAUREL, the emblem of victory and triumph, is frequently met with as a bearing; as well in wreaths and branches, as in sprigs and leaves.

LAVERPOT, or ewer, as borne in the arms of the Founders' Company. P. 2, n. 6.

LAZARUS, ST., CROSS OR, worn by the knights of that order. P. 4, n. 24.

LEASH, a tierce, or three of a kind; as three bucks, hares, &c.; also a leathern thong, by which falconers held the hawk on their hand; a term also applied to the line attached to the collar of a greyhouud or other dog.

LEATHER-BOTTLE, as borne in the arms of the Bottle-makers' and Horners' Company. P. 19, n. 5.

LEGS IN ARMOUR, *three legs in armour, conjoined in the fess point, spurred and garnished or*: this is the arms of the Isle of Man. See P. 13, n. 1. Philpot says, three legs conjoined was the hieroglyphic of expedition. Nisbet says, "three legs of men, the device of the Sicilians, the ancient possessors of the Isle of Man."

LENTALLY, an ancient term for *party per bend*.

LEOPARD. This well-known animal is frequently borne as a charge, and its positions are blazoned by the same terms as those of lions; as, passant, gardant, rampant, &c. P. 14, n. 30. *Sable, three leopards rampant argent, spotted sable*; name, *Lynch*.

LEOPARD'S FACE. When the heads of leopards are erased or couped at the neck, as P. 7, n. 22, they are blazoned by the word *head*, viz., *a leopard's head erased*: but if no part of the neck appears, and the position of the head is *gardant*, as P. 7, n. 21, it is then blazoned a *leopard's face*, without mentioning the word *gardant*, which is always implied.

LEOPARD LIONÉ. See LION LEOPARDIE.

**LEVEL.** This instrument is the type of equity and uprightness in all our actions, which are to be levelled and rectified by the rules of reason and justice; for the plummet ever falls right, howsoever it be held; and whatever befals a virtuous man, his actions and conscience will be uncorrupt and uncontrollable. P. 12, n. 24. *Azure, three levels with their plummets or;* name, *Colbrand.*

**LEVER,** a name sometimes given to the cormorant.

**LILIES OF THE FLAG** are those borne in the arms of the kingdom of France. See **FLEUR-DE-LIS.** The lily is the emblem of purity.

**LIMBECK, or STILL.** Heralds term it an antique limbeck; this example is part of the Pewterers' arms. P. 19, n. 12.

**LINED,** having a line affixed to the collar of a dog or other animal, which are frequently *collared* of one tincture, and *lined*, or chained, of another. The term is also applied to the inner covering, or lining, of a mantle, robe, cap, &c.

**LINES.** See **PARTITION LINES.**

**LION.** The lion's form is strikingly bold and majestic; his large head and shaggy pendant mane, his strength of limb, and formidable countenance, exhibit a picture of terrific grandeur. Hence, and on account of his heroic qualities, this animal, termed the king of beasts, is frequently used in heraldry, as an emblem of strength, courage, generosity, power, and royalty. The Egyptians represent inundation by a lion, because it takes place under that sign; and hence, says Plutarch, the custom of placing at the gates of temples, figures of lions with water issuing from their mouths.

**LIONCEL,** a young lion. This term is sometimes, but absurdly, used in heraldry when there are more than three lions in the same field.

**LION OF ENGLAND.** This term is used when speaking of a canton, or augmentation of arms. In such case, instead of saying *on a canton gules, a lion passant gardant or*, as an augmentation, you say, he bears *on a canton a lion of England*, which hath the same signification.

**LION LEOPARDIE.** This is a French term for what the English call a *lion passant gardant*. The word *leopard* is always made use of by the French heralds to express in their language, a lion full-faced, or *gardant*. Thus, when a lion is placed on an escutcheon, in that attitude which we call *rampant gardant*, the French blazon it a *lion leopardie*; when he is *passant* only, they call him *leopard lioné*.

**LION OF ST. MARK.** The arms of the republic of Venice are those of St. Mark, viz., *a lion sejant gardant and winged or, his head encircled with a glory, holding in his fore-paws an open book, wherein is written, Pax tibi Marce, evangelista meus; over the dexter side of the book, a sword erect, all proper.* P. 15, n. 20.

**LION-POISSON, or sea-lion,** so termed, as the upper part is of a lion, and the hinder part ends in a fish's tail, with webbed feet; this is borne by *Inhoff*, of Germany. This example was copied from the family seal. P. 15, n. 20.

**LION-DRAGON,** the upper half a lion, and the other going off like the hinder part of a dragon. P. 15, n. 21. *Or, a lion-dragon gules, armed, langued, and crowned of the first; name, Bretigni. Party per chevron, gules or, three lion-dragons ducally crowned and counterchanged; name, Easton.*

**LIONS CONJOINED,** under one head; the tricorporated lion, and double-headed lion (according to Leigh), are borne in armory symbolically, and not as monsters. P. 15, n. 22.

**LITVIT'S SKIN,** a pure white fur.

**LIZARD,** a small animal of the crocodile species, generally painted green. P. 17, n. 6.

**LOBSTER;** in blazon the term *upright* is given to all shell fish when borne as the example, because they, wanting fins, cannot properly be termed *hauriant*. P. 14, n. 32.

**LOCHABER-AXE.** The ancient arms of the Highlanders: see P. 4, n. 8; and two more in Plate 22, n. 18.

LODGED, a term for the buck, hart, &c., when resting or lying on the ground. This term is used for beasts of chase, as couchant is for those of prey. T. 9, n. 17. Plate D, n. 18. *Argent, on a mount proper, a stag lodged, gules; name, Harthill.*

LONG Bow, bend in pale, gules; name *Bowes*. See P. 22, n. 14.

LOZENGE, a four-cornered figure, resembling a pane of glass in old casements; some suppose it a representation of the physical composition given for colds, and that the figure was first adopted in heraldry to reward some eminent physician. T. 6, n. 17. Plutarch says in the life of *Theseus*, that at *Megara*, an ancient town of Greece, the tomb-stones under which the bodies of the Amazons lay, were shaped after this form; which some conjectured to be the cause why ladies have their arms on lozenges.

LOZENGES, CROSS OF. P. 4, n. 17. *Gules, a cross of lozenges, flory or; name, Fotherby.* P. 16, n. 15.

LOZENGY is when the field or charge is covered with lozenges. T. 5, n. 21. *Lozengy, argent and gules; name, Fitzwilliam.*

LUCY, an old term for the fish called a pike. P. 22, n. 7.

LUMIERES, are the eyes.

LUNA is the Latin for the moon; in blazoning by the planets, it is used in heraldry instead of argent.

A LURE, two wings conjoined with their tips downwards, joined with a line and ring, used by falconers to decoy their hawks, by casting it up in the air like a fowl. P. 14, n. 34. *Gules, a lure, stringed and braced argent; name, Warre.*

LURE also signifies two wings conjoined and inverted, which, with the tips downward, are said to be *in lure*. T. 10, n. 2.

LUTRA. See OTTER.

LYMPHAD is an old-fashioned ship with one mast, and rowed with oars. P. 2, n. 4.

LYRE, a musical instrument. See P. 4, n. 28.

**MADDER BAG.** See P. 3, n. 1.

**MAIDEN'S HEAD**, a term for the head and neck of a woman, couped below the breast, the head wreathed with a garland of roses, and crowned with an antique coronet. See P. 11, n. 2.

**MAIL**, armour for the body and arms, composed of small close rings, termed *mail*, or *ring armour*, as if woven in a loom. The rings composing this armour were woven together in different ways: the ancient sort were not very complex; but those of later times had the work done in so curious a manner, that ornament was combined with strength, preventing the effects of sword or lance. Mail, when painted or engraved, is made like the scales of fish, which are the best resemblance of the *mail*. See P. 1, n. 17.

**MALLET.** P. 20, n. 24. *Gules a chevron between three mallets or;* name, *Soame*.

**MALTA**, CROSS OF, so called because worn by the knights of that order. P. 4, n. 25.

**MANACLES**, or handcuffs. P. 2, n. 29.

**MANCHE**, or **MAUNCH**, an old-fashioned sleeve with long hangers. T. 7, n. 13.

**MANCHET**, a cake of bread, not unlike a muffin.

**MANED**, the term used in blazoning the mane or neck-hair of horses, unicorns, tigers, or other animals, when their manes are of a different tincture from the body.

**MAN TIGER**, or **MANTICORA**, an imaginary monster, with body like a lion, face like a man, and horns on the head, like those of an ox. P. 18, n. 9.

**MANTLE**. A military habit, used in ancient times by great commanders in the field, as well to manifest their dignity as to repel the extremity of the weather, and to preserve their armour from rust. P. 16, n. 24.

**MANTLING** are ornamented foliage-work, for the adorning of helmets in paintings of coats of arms.

**MARCASSIN**, a young wild boar, distinguished from the old by its tail being drawn as hanging down; whereas the old boar's is curled, with the end only pointing downward.

MARINED, a term used for an animal which has the lower part of its body like a fish. See P. 15, n. 20. P. 14, n. 29.

MARINE-WOLF, or seal. It resembles a quadruped in some respects, and a fish in others. Seals are common on most of the rocky shores of Great Britain; they feed on most sorts of fish, and are seen searching for their prey near shore; their head in swimming is always above water; they sleep on rocks surrounded by the sea; they are extremely watchful, and never sleep long without moving; but, if disturbed by anything, take care to tumble over the rocks into the sea. P. 11, n. 11. *Argent a chevron engrailed gules, between three marine wolves naissant sable, finned of the first, langued of the second; name, Fennor.*

MARK, ST. See LION OF ST. MARK.

MARKS OF CADENCY. See DISTINCTION OF HOUSES.

MARQUIS'S CORONET. See CROWNS AND CORONETS OF ENGLAND.

MARS, the name of one of the planets; in heraldry signifies the colour gules, and in engraving is represented by perpendicular lines.

MARTLET (very frequent in armories all over Europe) was borne by those who went to the Holy Land to fight against the Turks: this bird is frequently seen under the cornices of houses, with feet so short, and wings so long, that should they pitch on a level they could not easily rise; therefore they alight on high places, that they may drop on the wing. See T. 7, n. 15. Guillim observes that this bird, which is represented without feet, is given for a difference to younger brothers, to put them in mind that, in order to raise themselves, they are to look to the wings of virtue and merit, and not to their legs, having but little land to set their feet on. P. 12, n. 4; also P. C. n. 17.

MASCALLY, *argent and gules, counterly*; names, *Pogeis* and *Pegg*. See P. 16, n. 8.

MASCLE. This figure is of a lozenge form, and perfo-

rated, as the example ; by some said to represent spots in certain flints found in Brittany. It differs from the *fusil*, in being shorter and broader. T. 6, n. 19. *Argent, a mascle, gules.*

**MASCLES**, conjunct, *argent, seven mascles conjunct, three, three, and one, gules.* P. 2, n. 32.

**MASCLES**, CROSS OF. P. 4, n. 12.

**MASONED**, a term applied to plain strokes, representing the cement in stone buildings. P. 3, n. 27.

**MATCH**, as used by artillery to fire cannon, is a kind of rope, twisted and prepared in a peculiar manner. It is made of hempen tow, spun on the wheel, like cord, but very slack ; and is composed of three twists, boiled in a preparation of saltpetre, &c. P. 17, n. 4. *Argent, on a fess gules, between two matches kindled proper, a martlet or; name, Leet.*

**MATCHLOCK**, a peculiar kind of gun-lock, formerly much used. P. 5, n. 12. *Argent, a chevron between three matchlocks, sable; name, Leverage.*

**MEMBERED**, the term used in blazoning the beak and legs of a bird, when of a different tincture from the body.

**MERCURY**, one of the planets, in heraldry signifies the colour purple.

**MERILLION**, an instrument used by the Hatbandmakers, and borne as part of their arms. P. 2, n. 1.

**MERMAID**, a fictitious sea animal, half a woman, and half a fish, used in armories, as represented in the example. P. 14, n. 4. *Argent, a mermaid gules, crined or, holding a mirror in her right hand, and a comb in her left; name, Ellis.*

**MERMAN, or NEPTUNE.**

**MESLES**, an ancient term for a field composed equally of metal and colour, as gyronny, paly, bendy, &c.

**MICOUPY**, and **MIPARTÉE**, a French term, when the half of the shield is divided per fess and per pale.

**MIDDLE-BASE** is the middle part of the base, represented by the letter H, Table 1.

**MIDDLE-CHIEF** is the middle part of the chief, represented by the letter B, Table 1.

MILL-PIC, an instrument used by mill-wrights. P. 17, n. 17. *Sable, on a chevron between three mill-pics, argent, as many mullets gules; name, Mosley.* See another shape, P. 6, n. 5.

MILL-CLACK, represented as the example. P. 2, n. 23.

MILL-RIND, or RINE, is the iron fixed to the centre of a mill-stone, by which the wheel turns it; termed in French *fer-de-moline*, or mill-iron.

MILL-STONE, charged with a millrine, P. 19. n. 11. *Azure, three mill-stones, argent: name, Milverton.*

MILLRINE, A CROSS; so termed, as its form is like the mill-link, which carries the mill-stone, and is perforated as that is. T. 6, n. 14 and 15.

MINIVER, a white fur, said to be the belly part of the skin of the Siberian squirrel.

MITRE is a round cap, pointed and divided at the top, from which hang two pendants, fringed at both ends. The mitres used by all archbishops and bishops are surrounded at bottom with a plain fillet of gold, P. 9, n. 12; excepting that of the palatinate bishop of Durham, which issues out of a ducal coronet.\* See P. 9, n. 11. These ornaments are never actually worn in England, but merely depicted on coats of arms. In Germany several families bear the mitre for their crest, to show that they are advocates for, or feudatories of, ancient abbeys, or officers of bishops.

MOLE, the little animal so called, when used in heraldry, is represented as P. 11, n. 12. *Argent, three moles sable, their snouts and feet gules; name, Nangothan.*

MOLE-HILL, as the example, P. 1, n. 19.

MOLINE, A CROSS, not so wide or so sharp as that which is called ancre. T. 6, n. 2. *Argent, a cross moline gules; name, Undal.* The cross moline is used as a distinction for the eighth brother. See DISTINCTION OF HOUSES.

MONKEY, the well-known animal so called, when used

\* It has been considered that archbishops have the right of using the ducal coronet; but, according to the best authorities, it belongs solely to the arms of the see of Durham.

in heraldry, is represented as in nature ; but if collared, the collar is placed round the loins, instead of the neck, as shown in the example, P. 11, n. 14.

MOOR-COCK, an heraldic representation of the male of the black game, or large black grouse. *Argent, a moor-cock sable* ; name, *Moore*. P. 11, n. 19.

MORION, a steel cap or helmet for the head, anciently worn by foot-soldiers, and variously shaped ; see P. 17, n. 24 ; and another in P. 22, n. 22. This is borne by the *Earl of Cardigan*. *Argent, a chevron gules, between three morions azure*.

MORSE. See SEA-LION.

MORTAR, P. 20, n. 23. *Sable, a mortar and pestle gules* ; name, *Wakerly*.

MORTCOURS are lamps used at funerals ; they are borne as part of the Wax-Chandlers' arms. P. 2, n. 31.

MORTIER, a cap of state formerly worn in France by some of the judicial dignitaries ; as the President of the Chamber of Deputies, the Chancellor, and the Chief Justice.

MORTNÉ is a term Colombière has applied to a lion that has neither tongue, teeth, nor claws ; which, he says, is borne by *Leon*, an ancient barony in Brittany. P. 11, n. 1. The term signifies, literally, *still-born*, and is used by French heralds to describe an animal divested of its natural means of defence and sustenance.

MOTTO, a word or short sentence, inserted in a scroll, under, and sometimes over, a coat of arms. Mottos are frequently allusive to the name of the bearer, and more frequently to the bearings ; and in general are short quaint sayings, of the nature of an axiom or epigraph, expressive of the predominant passion, moral or religious sentiment, of the first adopter, or of some action for which he was distinguished. They are not strictly hereditary, like the arms, but may be varied or relinquished at pleasure. By the rules of heraldry, they are not permitted to women.

MOUND (of the French *monde*, Latin *mundus*, the world) is a name given to a ball or globe, which forms part of the

regalia of an emperor or king. It is an emblem of sovereign authority and majesty, and is surmounted by a cross, usually the cross pattée, in all Christian countries. P. 12, n. 18. Justinian was the first who used the orb or mound with a cross on the top, which was introduced into England by Edward the Confessor.

**MOUNT**, a hillock, or elevation of ground, usually arched, and blazoned *vert*.

**MOUNTAIN CAT.** See P. 11, n. 16.

**MOUNTED**, a term applicable to a horse bearing a rider ; also frequently used to describe a cross placed upon steps.

**MOURN**, a term for the blunted head of a tilting-spear.

**MOUSSUE**, A CROSS, for a cross rounded off at the ends. P. 6, n. 20.

**MULLET**, supposed to be the rowel of a spur, and should consist of five points only ; whereas stars consist of six, or more. T. 7, n. 1. *Argent, a mullet gules* ; name, *Haye*. Some have confounded stars and mullets together, which mistake is easily rectified by allowing mullets to consist of five points only, and stars of six, eight, or more. Bara says, mullets differ from stars by being always pierced in the middle ; Gibbon says, all French authors take the mullet for the rowel of a spur, which *molette* signifies in their language ; and they affirm it must be always pierced.

Mr. Nisbet says, he ordinarily takes mullets for stars in blazon, when they accompany celestial figures, *as those in the arms of Baillie* ; but when they accompany military instruments, and other pieces of armour, for spur-rowels : as also when they have no such figures with them, but are alone in the shield, consisting only of five points, as in the arms of Sutherland, Douglas, &c.

**MURAILLÉ**, a term used to express any ordinary that is walled, as P. 18, n. 12. *Azure, on a pale muraille with three pieces on each side, or, an indorse sable* ; name, *Sublet*.

**MURAL CROWN** was made of gold, with battlements

on the edge of its circle, and was given by the Romans to him who first mounted the wall of a besieged town or city, and fixed the standard belonging to the army. P. 8, n. 23.

MURREY. See SANGUINE.

MUSCHETOR signifies an ermine-spot, without those three spots over them that are used in ermine.

MUSIMON, a beast which is said to be engendered between a goat and a ram. P. 13, n. 20.

MUSION, an ancient term for a cat.

MUZZLED is when animals have their mouths tied with a muzzle.

NAIANT, swimming, applied to fish when borne horizontally across the field in a swimming posture. T. 10, n. 3.

NAISSANT, coming out, applied to a lion, or other creature, that seems to be coming out of the middle of an ordinary or charge, as P. 7, n. 26.

NARCISSUS, a flower consisting of six petals, each resembling the leaf of the cinquefoil. P. 2, n. 8.

NAVAL CROWN. Claudius, after surprising the Britons, invented this as a reward for service at sea: it was made of gold, and consisted of prows of galleys and sails placed upon the rim or circle, alternately. It is now formed of the sterns and square sails of ships, instead of prows, placed alternately on the circle or fillet. P. 8, n. 22.

NEBULÉ, one of the partition lines, signifies clouded, and is used when the outlines of an ordinary or partition line run arched in and out, or waved so as to resemble clouds, as T. 3.

NOMBRIL-POINT, or navel-point, is that part of the escutcheon marked with the letter F, under the fess-point. T. 1.

NOVA SCOTIA, badge of. See BADGE.

NOWED signifies tied or knotted, and is said of a serpent, wyvern, or other creature, whose body or tail is twisted like a knot. See P. 7, n. 17.

OAK. This tree is variously borne, as an emblem of

strength, constancy, and long life : or, on a mount in base, an oak acorned proper ; name, Wood. Plate H, n. 12.

OBSIDIONAL CROWN, or garland ; it was composed of grass, or twigs of trees, interwoven as the example ; it was by the Romans given as a reward to him who held out a siege, or caused it to be raised, repulsing the enemy, and delivering the place. P. 8, n. 26.

OGRESS. See PELLET.

OLIVE CROWN, or garland. It was given by the Greeks to those who came off victorious at the Olympic games. P. 22, n. 4.

OLIVE-TREE is the emblem of peace and concord ; or, a fess gules, between three olive-branches, proper ; name, Roundel.

OMBRE, a French term for shadowed.

ONDÉE or UNDÉE, the French term for wavy.

ONGLÉ (Lat. *ungulatus*), a term used by French heralds in blazoning the talons or claws of birds or beasts, which they describe as onglé of such a colour.

OPINICUS : a fictitious beast of heraldic invention ; its body and fore legs like those of a lion ; the head and neck like those of the eagle ; to the body are affixed wings, like those of a griffin ; and it has a tail like that of a camel. P. 15, n. 6. The opinicus is the crest to the arms of the Barber-surgeons. It is sometimes borne without wings.

OR signifies gold, and, in engraving, is represented by small dots all over the field or charge. T. 2.

ORB. See MOUND, and REGALIA OF ENGLAND.

ORDINARIES are any of those figures which, by their ordinary and frequent use, are become peculiar to the science : such as the cross, chief, pale, fess, inescutcheon, chevron, saltire, bend, and bar. T. 4. Ferne says, before any of these ordinaries were ever used in arms, they anciently distinguished their leaders' shields with beasts, birds, fishes, plants, &c. The ordinaries began long after, and were used as differences.

ORIFLAM, or ORIFLAMME, a name given to the standard

of France : it is a blue banner, charged with golden fleurs-de-lis.

ORLE signifies a border or selvage within the shield, at some distance from the edges. T. 5, n. 4. *Azure, an orle argent*; name, *Sir John Spring*. In-orle signifies things placed regularly within the escutcheon, in the nature of an orle, near the edges. P. 7, n. 4. Martlets, trefoils, &c., when in-orle, are always eight in number. The phrase *in-orle* is also frequently used to describe any two bearings so depicted as to meet, or nearly meet, in the form of an arch ; as “two branches of laurel *in-orle*.”

ORLE, of three pieces, sable : this example is taken from Upton, to show that this ordinary is borne of many pieces. P. 16, n. 17.

ORLE and BORDURE, sable, an orle within a bordure argent. P. 16, n. 18.

OSTRICH, the largest of all birds, is frequently borne in coat armour. From the idle story of its being able to digest iron, this bird is, in heraldry, usually painted with a horse-shoe in its mouth. P. 14, n. 24.

OSTRICH FEATHERS are always drawn with their tops turned down, as P. 15, n. 8. If in coat-armory an ostrich feather is white, and the quill part gold, or any other colour different from the feather, it is blazoned *penned, shafted, or quilled, of such a colour*.

OSTRICH FEATHERS IN PLUME : if three feathers are placed together, as in P. 15, n. 8, they are termed a *plume*, and their number need not be mentioned in the blazoning ; but if there are more than *three*, the number should be expressed ; for example, *a plume of five ostrich feathers*. If there is more than one row of feathers, those rows are termed in blazon *heights* ; for example, *a plume of ostrich feathers in two heights*, by some termed a *double plume*, at P. 15, n. 9. Where the plume is composed of nine feathers, in two heights, they should be placed *five* in the *bottom row*, and *four* in the *top row* ; if there are three heights, then the plume should consist of twelve feathers : viz., *five, four, and three*. They are termed a *triple plume*. See P. 15, n. 10.

OTTER, an amphibious animal, found only at the sides of lakes and rivers ; it always swims against the stream ; choosing rather to meet than pursue the fishes it preys upon. P. 11, n. 10. *Argent, a fess between three otters sable* ; name, *Lutterel*.

OUNCE, or LYNX.

OVER-ALL is when any charge is borne over another. See Plate D, n. 13. *Three bars wavy azure, over-all a lion rampant of the first* ; name, *Bulbeck*.

OWL. This bird signifies prudence, vigilance, and watchfulness, and was borne by the Athenians as their armorial ensign. P. 14, n. 16. Owls, in heraldry, are always represented full-faced.

PADLOCK : *sable, three padlocks argent* ; name, *Lovett*. P. 1, n. 1.

PALE is an honourable ordinary, consisting of two perpendicular lines drawn from the top to the base of the escutcheon, and contains one-third of the middle part of the field. T. 4, n. 2. The pale is like the palisades used about fortifications, and formerly used for the enclosing of camps ; every soldier was obliged to carry one, and to fix it according as the lines were drawn for the security of the camp.

IN PALE is when things are borne one above another, perpendicularly, in the nature of a pale. See T. 10, n. 16.

PER PALE, so termed when the field or charge is equally divided by a perpendicular line, as T. 3, n. 1. *Party per pale, or and sable* ; name, *Searle*.

PALET, see PALLET.

PALL, an archiepiscopal ornament sent from Rome to metropolitans, and appropriated to archbishops : it is made of the wool of white lambs, and resembles the letter Y in shape. It consists of pieces of white woollen stuff, three fingers in breadth, and embroidered with crosses. See P. 4, n. 10.

PALLET is a diminutive of the pale, containing one half of the breadth of the pale. See T. 4, n. 3.

**PALLISADO.** See **VALLARY.**

**PALLISSE** is like a range of palisades before a fortification, and is so represented on a fess, rising up a considerable length, and pointed at the top with the field appearing between them. Plate 16, n. 16.

**PALMERS' STAFF.** See P. 7, n. 3.

**PALM-TREE.** See P. 22, n. 2. The Egyptians represented the year by a palm-tree, and the month by one of its branches; because it is the nature of this tree to produce a branch every month.

**PALY** is when the field is divided into four or more even number of parts, by perpendicular lines, consisting of two different tinctures, interchangeably disposed. *Paly of six, or and azure*; name, *Gurney*. T. 5, n. 17.

**PALY-BENDY** is by lines perpendicular, which is paly, and by others diagonal athwart the shield, from the dexter to the sinister, which is called bendy. P. 3, n. 22. *Paly bendy sinister of six, or and azure, a canton, ermine*; name, *Buck*, of Yorkshire. See P. 3, n. 21.

**PER**, a particle generally used in heraldry before an ordinary, to denote a partition of the field, as *party per fess, pale, &c.*

**PANTHER** in heraldry, when depicted with fire issuing from his mouth and ears, is termed *incensed*. P. 14, n. 7.

**PAPAL CROWN.** See **POPE.**

**PAPILLONÉ** is a field divided into variegated specks, like those on a butterfly, but ranged like the scales of a fish. P. 3, n. 25.

**PARROT.** P. 17, n. 7. Of all foreign birds, the parrot is the best known among us, uniting the greatest beauty with the greatest docility. Parrots are frequent in the arms of the ancient families of Switzerland; occasioned by two great factions in the year 1262; which were distinguished by their ensigns; the one having a red standard with a white star, and the other a white standard with a green parrot; and the families that were concerned in those factions bore in their arms either stars or parrots.

PARTITION LINES are such as party-per-pale, party-per-bend, party-per-fess, party-per-chevron, party-per-cross, party-per-saltire; by which is understood a shield divided or cut through by a line or lines, either perpendicular, diagonal, traverse, &c., as in example, T. 3. Why lines are used in heraldry, is to difference bearings which would be otherwise the same; for an escutcheon charged with a chief engrailed differs from a chief wavy as much as if the one bore a cross and the other a saltire.

PARTY signifies parted or divided, and is applied to all divisions of the field, viz.

PARTY-PER-PALE is the field divided by a perpendicular line. T. 3, n. 1. *Party-per-pale, argent and gules*; name, *Walgrave*.

PARTY-PER-PALE and CHEVRON signifies the field to be divided into four parts, by two lines; one is a pale line, the other a line in form of a chevron. P. 3, n. 31.

PARTY-PER-PALE and BASE is the field divided into three parts by the pale line, and a horizontal one in base, P. 3, n. 32.

PASCHAL LAMB. See HOLY LAMB.

PASSANT-GARDANT, for a beast walking full-faced, looking right forward. T. 9, n. 1. Carter says, *Gules, a lion passant-gardant, or*, was the coat-armour of the dukes of Aquitaine, and was joined with the coat of the kings of England by the match of Henry the Second, being before two lions, the posture and colours one and the same.

PASSANT-REGARDANT signifies a beast walking and looking behind him. T. 9, n. 12.

PASSION, or Cross of the Passion, is like that of Calvary, but has no steps.

PASSION-NAIL. See P. 4, n. 31.

PATERNAL signifies, in heraldry, the original arms of a family.

PATERNOSTER, A CROSS, one which is made of beads. P. 4, n. 7.

PATONCE, A CROSS, is flory at the ends, and differs from

that which is so called, inasmuch as the cross flory is circumflex and turns down; whereas this extends to a pattée form. T. 6, n. 4. *Vert, a cross patonce, or; name, Boydell.*

PATRIARCHAL CROSS, so called from its being appropriated to patriarchs, as the triple cross is to the Pope, P. 4, n. 20. Morgan says, the patriarchal cross is crossed twice, to denote that the work of redemption which was wrought on the cross extended to both Jews and Gentiles.

PATTÉE, A CROSS, is small in the centre, and so goes on widening to the ends, which are very broad. T. 6, n. 6.

PATTÉE, a cross pattée throughout. See P. 16, n. 9. Some authors term it *cross pattée entire*.

PATTES are the paws of any beast.

PAVILION. See TENT.

PAW. See GAME.

PEACOCK, when borne affronté, with its tail spread, is termed *in pride*, as P. 7, n. 11; when represented with its wings close, as the example, P. 1, n. 15, it is blazoned simply a *peacock*, and it must be drawn as the example.

PEA-RISE, a term for a pea-stalk, leaved and blossomed; it is part of the crest of *St. Quintin*.

PEAN, one of the furs, the ground black, and the spots gold. P. 13.

PEARL, in heraldry, is used for argent, and in engraving is left white.

PEGASUS, among the poets, a horse imagined to have wings, being that whereon Bellerophon was fabled to be mounted when he engaged the Chimera: *azure, a Pegasus, the wings expanded argent*, are the arms of the Inner Temple, London. P. 2, n. 20.

PELICAN HERALDIC. The pelican is generally represented with her wings indorsed, her neck embowed, pecking her breast; and when in her nest feeding her young, is termed *a pelican in her piety*. This bird was in such esteem with the Egyptians, that they held it as

a hieroglyphic of the four duties of a father to his children; generation, education, instruction, and good example. T. 7, n. 19.

**PELICAN NATURAL.** In size it exceeds the swan. This bird has an enormous bag attached to the lower mandible of the bill, and extending almost from the point of the bill to the throat. See P. 22, n. 13.

**PELLETS** are black roundles; some term them ogresses, and gun-stones. T. 8, n. 13.

**PEN.** P. 20, n. 17. *Gules, three pens argent*; name, *Cowpen*.

**PENDENT** signifies hanging down.

**PENNON**, a small flag, ending in one sharp point, or two, which used to be placed on the tops of spears, with the arms, crest, or motto, of the bearer.

**PENNY-YARD-PENNY**, so termed from the place where it was first coined, which was in the castle of Penny-yard, near the market-town of Ross, situated upon the river Wye, in the county of Hereford. P. 12, n. 16. *Azure, three penny-yard-pence proper*; name, *Spence*.

**PENONCLÉS.** See **PENNON**.

**PERCLOSE**, or demi-garter, is that part of the garter that is buckled and nowed. See example, P. 16, n. 23. *Or, the perclose of three demi-garters nowed azure, garnished of the first*; name, *Narboon*.

**PERFLEW.** See **PURFLEW**.

**PERFORATED.** See **PIERCED**.

**PERSIA, CROWN OF.** P. 8, n. 14.

**PETRONEL**, an ancient name for a pistol.

**PEWIT:** see the example, P. 5, n. 23.

**PHEON**, the iron part of a dart, with a barbed head, frequently borne in coats. T. 7, n. 4.

**PHEONS**, a Cross, of four. T. 6, n. 12.

**PHÆNIX**, an imaginary bird, famous among the ancients, who describe it in form like the eagle, but more beautiful in its plumage; and add that, when advanced in age, it makes itself a nest of spices, which being set on fire by the sun, or some other secret power, it burns

itself, and out of its ashes riseth another. In heraldry, *a phoenix in flames proper* is the emblem of Immortality. T. 7, n. 20. Burnet, in his Theory of the Earth, says, “I do not doubt but the story is a fable as to any such kind of bird, single in her species, living and dying, and reviving in that manner; but it is an apologue, or a fable with an interpretation, and was intended as an emblem of the world, which, after a long age, will be consumed in the last fire; and from its ashes or remains will arise another world, or a new-formed heaven and earth. This, I think, is the true mystery of the phoenix, under which symbol the Eastern nations preserved the doctrine of the conflagration and renovation of the world.”

PIERCED, A CROSS, or any other ordinary perforated or struck through, with a hole in it, so that the field may be seen; the piercing must be particularly expressed as to its shape, whether square, round, or lozenge; viz., *argent, a cross, square-pierced, azure.* P. 4, n. 1.

PIKE-STAFF. See the example, P. 2, n. 3.

PILLAR. *Or, a pillar sable, enwrapped with an adder argent;* name, *Myntur.* P. 12, n. 3. The adder thus enwrapped about the pillar signifies prudence conjoined with constancy; both which being united in men of high spirit, do greatly avail to the achieving of noble enterprises.

PILE is an ordinary, taken from those piles on which bridges, &c., are built. Piles have been granted to such as have been very useful in founding commonwealths and colonies. T. 4, n. 22. Edmondson is of opinion that, when there are two, three, or more piles, issuing from a chief, and they are not expressed in the blazon to meet in a point, they should be drawn perpendicular. *Argent a pile gules; this belonged to Sir John Candoys in the time of Edward the Third.* Carter.

PILE, PARTY-PER, transposed. This kind of bearing is rare; for the natural bearing of piles is with the points downward: another peculiarity is, that the field is divided

into three distinct colours. This coat is borne by *Meinstorpe* of Holsatia. P. 3, n. 33.

**PILE, PARTY-PER,** *in point, argent, and azure.* P. 3, n. 24.

**PILE, PARTY-PER,** *in traverse, argent, and gules;* so termed, from the lines having their beginning from the exact points of the chief and base sinister, and so extending to the extreme line in the fess point on the dexter side : this coat is borne by *Rathlowe* of Holsatia. P. 3, n. 35.

**PILGRIMS' OR PALMERS' STAFFS.** See P. 7, n. 3 and 10. *Azure, three pilgrims' crook-staffs or;* name, *Pilgrim.*

**PILY-BENDY:** *or and azure, a canton ermine.* P. 7, n. 1.

**PINCERS,** P. 17, n. 16, *argent, a fess between three pair of pincers gules;* name, *Russel.*

**PINE-TREE** is the emblem of death, because, being once cut, it never sprouts again. *Argent, on a mount in base, a pine-tree fructed proper;* name, *Pine.*

**PLACCATE,** a piece of armour worn over the breast-plate, to strengthen it.

**PLATE** is a round flat piece of silver, without any impression on it. T. 8, n. 10.

**PLAYING-TABLE,** or backgammon tables, P. 5, n. 8. *Azure, three pair of backgammon tables open proper, edged or;* name, *Pegriz.*

**PLough.** *Azure, a plough in fess argent;* name, *Kroge.* P. 12, n. 12.

**PLUMBY.** See **PURPLE.**

**PLUME.** See **OSTRICH FEATHERS.**

**PLUMMET,** used by mariners to fathom the depth of water. P. 2, n. 11.

**POINTS OF THE ESCUTCHEON.** See **ESCUCHÉON.**

**POINTS, A CROSS,** of sixteen : so termed from its having four points at each extremity. P. 6, n. 4.

**IN POINT,** is when swords, piles, &c., are so borne as to resemble the point of a pile ; that is, that the points of such bearings almost meet in the base of the escutcheon.

**POISSON.** See MARINED.

**POLAND, CROWN OF.** P. 8, n. 13.

**POMMÉ,** A CROSS, signifies a cross with a ball or knob at each end; from *pomme*, an apple. T. 6, n. 9.

**POMEGRANATE:** the arms of the city of Grenada in Spain, are *argent, a pomegranate in pale, slipt proper;* this figure is the emblem of royalty, as being crowned on the top. P. 12, n. 6.

**POMEKIS,** are green roundles, so termed from the French word *pomme*, an apple. T. 8, n. 14.

**POMELLED,** signifies the round ball or knob affixed to the handle of a sword or dagger.

**POMMETTY,** A CROSS, is one the extremities of which terminate in several, or more than one, ball or knob, like those of a pilgrim's staff. P. 6, n. 19.

**POPE'S CROWN.** See TIARA.

**POPINJAY,** a small parrot, or parroquet, with red beak and legs.

**PORCUPINE.** P. 11, n. 5. *Gules, a porcupine saliant argent, quilled and chained or;* name, *Sir Simon Eyre, Lord Mayor of London, 1445.* He built Leadenhall.

**PORTATE,** A CROSS, so termed because it does not stand upright, as generally crosses do, but lies athwart the escutcheon in bend, as if it were carried (Lat. *portatus*) on a man's shoulder. P. 6, n. 16.

**PORTCULLIS,** a falling-door, like a harrow, hung over the gates of fortified places, and let down to keep an enemy out, the perpendicular bars being spiked, both to wound the assailants, and fix themselves in the ground. The portcullis is one of the distinctions of the royal house of Tudor. T. 7, n. 12.

**PORTUGAL, CROWN OF,** is a ducal coronet, heightened up with eight arched diadems that support a mound, ensigned with a plain cross. P. 8, n. 9.

**POSÉ.** See STATANT.

**POTENT,** A CROSS, so termed by reason of the resemblance its extremities bear to the head of a crutch, which

in Chaucer's description of old age, is called a *potent*:—

“So ald she was, that she ne went  
A foote, but it were by *potent*.”

T. 6, n. 5. *Azure, a cross potent or; name, Branchley.*

POTENT-COUNTER-POTENT, *argent and azure*; fur so termed, because it is said to resemble the heads of crutches: in blazon the colours being named, they may be tinctured with any other, as *argent, sable, &c.* T. 2, n. 6.

POULDROU, that part of a suit of armour which covers the shoulder.

POWDERING signifies the strewing of a field, crest, or supporters, irregularly with any small figures, as ermine, martlets, fleurs-de-lis, &c.

PRASIN, an ancient term for green; from the Greek, signifying a leek.

PRECISE MIDDLE CHIEF. See MIDDLE CHIEF.

PRECISE MIDDLE BASE. See MIDDLE BASE.

PREDOMINANT signifies that the field is but of one tincture. *Kimber.*

PREENE, an instrument used by clothiers in dressing cloth. P. 20, n. 5. *Azure, a preene or; name, Preener.*

PREMIER, from the French, signifies *first*; and is used by English heralds to signify the most ancient peer of any degree by creation.

PRESTER JOHN, or Presbyter John, is drawn as a bishop, sitting on a tombstone, having on his head a mitre, his dexter hand extended, a mound in his sinister, and in his mouth a sword fesswise; the point to the dexter side of the field. This is part of the arms of the episcopal see of Chichester. P. 16, n. 11.

PRETENCE. See ESCUTCHEON OF PRETENCE.

PRIDE: this term is used for turkeycocks and peacocks. When they extend their tails into a circle, and drop their wings, they are said to be in their pride. P. 7, n. 11.

PRIMROSE, an ancient term for the quatrefoil.

PRISONERS' BOLT. See SHACKBOLT.

PROBOSCIS is the trunk of an elephant. P. 17, n. 20.

PROPER: this term is applied to all creatures, vege-

tables, &c., when borne in coats of arms in their natural colours.

**PRUSSIA, CROWN OF.** P. 8, n. 12.

**PURFLED**, trimmed or garnished, a term for the studs and rims of armour being gold : viz., *an arm in armour proper, purfled or.*

**PURFLEW** is the embroidery of a bordure of fur, shaped exactly like vair. When of one row, it is termed purflewed : when of two, counter-purflewed ; and when of three, vair.

**PURPURE** is the colour purple, and, in engraving, is represented by diagonal lines, from the left to the right ; it is said to derive its name from a shell-fish called *pur-pura*. T. 2.

**PYOT.** A provincial name for a magpie.

**QUADRANS,** Lat. a Canton.

**QUADRANT** signifies square ; a cross potent quadrant in the centre, that is, the centre of the cross is square. See P. 4, n. 29.

**QUARTER**, an ordinary of a quadrangular form, containing a fourth part of the field ; it is formed by two lines, one drawn from the side of the shield horizontally to the centre, and the other perpendicularly from the chief, to meet it in the same point. T. 4, n. 23.

**QUARTERINGS** are the partitions of a shield, containing many coats of arms. See Plate J, n. 19.

**QUARTERLY** is when a shield or charge is divided into four parts, by a perpendicular and horizontal line, which, crossing each other in the centre of the field, divide it into four equal parts, called quarters. Plate C, n. 6. Plate J, n. 19.

**QUARTERLY PIERCED** signifies a square hole in a cross, a millrine, &c., through which aperture the field is seen. See examples, P. 4, n. 1.

**QUARTERLY QUARTERED** is a saltire quartered in the centre, and the branches each parted by two different tinctures alternately. See Plate J, n. 16.

**QUATREFOIL**, four-leaved grass : this, as well as the trefoil, is much used in heraldry. T. 6, n. 22.

**QUEUE**, a term for the tail of an animal.

**QUILL OF YARN.** See the example, P. 5, n. 22.

**QUINTAIN**, an ancient tilting-block used in a sport or game, still in practice in marriages in Shropshire, and some other counties. The sport consists in running a tilt (on horseback) against a quintain, or thick plank, fixed in the ground. He that, by striking this plank, breaks the greatest number of tilting-poles, and shows the greatest activity, gains the prize; which was formerly a peacock, but of late years has been a garland. See the example, P. 19, n. 6.

**QUINTAL**, or **QUINTIN**, a kind of tilting-post used in a gymnastic pastime of our ancestors. There is one at Offham, in Kent; it stands upon a green in the midst of the village, and is about seven feet in length; the transverse piece is about five feet in length, the broad part of which is marked with many circles about the size of a half-crown; and at the other end is a block of wood, weighing about four or five pounds, suspended by a chain; the whole of which turns round upon a pivot upon the upright part; and the game was played as follows: a man on horseback being armed with a strong pole, of a certain length, rides with full speed within a few feet of the quintal, and making a strong thrust at that part of it where the circles are marked, it is turned round with such violence, that, unless he is very expert, he is sure to receive a blow on the head from the pendulous piece on the opposite side.

**QUIVER OF ARROWS**, a case filled with arrows.

**RACK-POLE BEACON.** See FIRE-BEACON.

**RADIANT**, or **RAYONNANT**, is when rays or beams are represented about a charge; as T. 6, n. 16.

**RAGULED** is when the bearing is uneven or ragged, like the trunk or limb of a tree lopt of its branches, so that only the stumps are seen. One of the lines of partition, from its shape, is termed raguled. T. 3, P. 4, n. 2.

**RAGULY**, A CROSS, is one which seems to be made of two trunks of trees without branches. P. 4, n. 2. *Sable, a cross raguly, or; name, Stoway.*

RAINBOW, is a semicircle of various colours, arising from clouds. Plate H, n. 6. *Argent, a rainbow proper; name, Pont.*

RAMPANT, a term applied to describe a beast standing upright on his hinder legs ; the lion, in this position, signifies vigour and courage, and is the hieroglyphic of heroes and illustrious princes. T. 9, n. 2.

RAMPANT-GARDANT signifies a lion standing upright on his hinder legs, full-faced, looking right forward. T. 9, n. 2.

RAMPANT-REGARDANT ; a term for any beast standing upright on its hinder legs, looking behind or towards its back. T. 9, n. 4.

RAM : the male sheep. The inhabitants of Thebes regarded the ram as sacred, and did not feed on its flesh. The Egyptians had a singular veneration for the ram, because the *image of Ammon* bore his head, and that this sign, the first of the zodiac, was the presage of the fruits of the earth. *Sable, a chevron, between three rams' heads couped, argent; name, Ramsey.*

RAPING, an old term for ravenous beasts when represented feeding.

RAVEN, a bird found in almost all countries in the world, is considered in heraldry the emblem of constancy ; or, a raven proper ; name, *Corbet*. P. 11, n. 18.

RAVISSANT, a French term, used to describe the position of a wolf, or other wild beast, half raised, on the point of springing on his prey. It is also applied occasionally to all ravenous animals, when feeding on or devouring their prey.

RAY, a stream of light from any luminous body, as the sun or stars. Plate B, n. 30. When rays are depicted round the sun, they should be sixteen in number ; when round an estoile, six only : in either case, straight and waved alternately.

RAYONNANT, A CROSS, is that which has rays of glory behind it, darting from the centre to all the quarters of the escutcheon. T. 6, n. 16.

REBATED is when the top or point of a weapon is broken off.

**REBATEMENT.** See DIFFERENCE.

**REBUS**, in heraldry, is generally a device, represented by a picture, allusive to the name of the bearer; as, a pine-tree for *Pine*, three salmons for *Salmon*, &c. Frequently, however, the painted representation is accompanied with words, or an imperfect motto: the accompanying words explaining the thing represented, and the representation aiding to make sense of the imperfect motto; as the motto, “*We must*,” on a sun-dial: the meaning of which is made up by the thing itself; that is, “*We must die all.*” Puerilities of this kind were anciently so much in fashion, that many instances of their use, especially during the sixteenth century, may be found even in churches. Examples; *Islip*, abbot of Westminster, sculptured in the church a portrait of the abbot slipping from a tree. *Bolton*, prior of St Bartholomew, Smithfield, sculptured in the church, a bolt or arrow pierced through a tun. *Rose Knotwing* in a painting on glass in an old house, Islington, the representation of a rose, a knot, or twisted cord, and a wing. Peacham, in his “*Compleat Gentleman*,” says, “Certain citizens, wanting arms, have coined themselves devices alluding to their names, which we call *rebus*: thus, Master Jugge, the printer, in many of his books, took, to express his name, a nightingale sitting in a bush with a scroll in her mouth, on which was inscribed, *Jugge, Jugge, Jugge.*”

**RECLINANT**, bowed or bending backward.

**RECERCELÉE.** See CERCÉLÉE.

**RECROSSED**, A CROSS, is the same as a crosslet.

**REED.** See SLAY.

**REFLECTED**, or **REFLEXED**, curved, or turned round, as the chain or line from the collar of a dog, &c., thrown over the back.

**REGALIA**, ensigns of royalty; see *ante*, p. 69.

**REGARDANT** signifies an animal looking behind, having its face turned towards its back: as seeing, marking, vigilant. T. 9, n. 12.

**REIN-GUARD**, for that part of armour which guards the lower part of the back.

**REIN-DEER**, as drawn in armoury, is a stag with double attires ; as the example, P. 15, n. 5.

**REMORA**. This word, in heraldry, is used to denote a serpent, in blazoning the figure of Prudence, which is represented holding in her hand a javelin entwined with a serpent proper ; such serpent is expressed by the word Remora.

**RENVERSÉ**, is when anything is set with the head downwards, or contrary to its natural way of being : as a chevron with the point downwards, or when a beast is laid on its back. P. 11, n. 3.

**RERE-MOUSE**, or **BAT**. This creature is of near resemblance to both bird and beast ; for by its wings and flying, it should be a bird ; and by its body, a kind of mouse, bringing forth its young alive, and suckling them with its paps: *argent, a rere-mouse displayed sable* ; name, *Baxter*. P. 14, n. 18.

**RESPECTING**, a term for fish, or tame beasts, when placed upright one against the other. T. 10, n. 5.

**REST**: this figure is deemed by some a rest for a horseman's lance ; by others a musical instrument, termed a clarion or claricord. T. 7, n. 11.

**RESTRIALL**, an ancient term for barry, paly and pily.

**RHINOCEROS**. P. 14, n. 21.

**RIBBON** or **RIBAND**, an ordinary containing the eighth part of the bend, of which it is a diminutive. T. 4, n. 9.

**RICH COLOUR**. See **GULES**.

**RING** of gold was used by the Romans as a mark of nobility ; the people wore silver rings, and the slaves iron. The ring is a type of fidelity.

**RISING**, a term applied to birds when preparing to fly. T. 9, n. 20.

**ROMPU**, a **CHEVRON**, signifying a chevron, bend, or the like, broken. P. 3, n. 18. *Sable, a chevron rompu, between three mullets or* ; name, *Sault*. See Plate C, n. 27.

**ROSE**, in blazon, the following (according to Guillim) should be observed, viz., *argent, a rose gules, barbed and sealed proper*. The rose is blazoned gules ; the leaves are called *barbed*, and are always green, as the seed in the

middle is yellow ; the word *proper* should be omitted in blazoning this flower ; for it could not be understood of what colour, as there are two sorts, *white* and *red*. T. 6, n. 24. The rose is used as a distinction for the seventh brother. See Distinction of Houses. P. 10, n. 7.

The roses of England were first publicly assumed as devices by the sons of Edward III. *John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster*, used the red rose for the badge of his family, and his brother *Edward*, who was created *Duke of York*, anno 1385, took a white rose for his device, which the followers of them and their heirs afterwards bore for distinction in that bloody war between the two houses of *York* and *Lancaster*. The two families being happily united by Henry VII., the male heir of the house of Lancaster, marrying Princess *Elizabeth*, the eldest daughter and heiress of *Edward IV.* of the house of York, anno 1486, the two *roses* were united in one, and became the royal badge of England.

**ROSELETES**, Leigh says, signify single roses, having five leaves each.

**ROSE-DOUBLE.** See P. 6, n. 21.

**ROUNDLES**, or **ROUNDLETS**; first is the **BEZANT**, a piece of gold coin which was current in Byzantium (now called Constantinople). Second is the **PLATE**; a round flat piece of silver, without any impression. When any of these figures are found of the colour green, they must (in blazon) be called **POMEIS**; if blue, **HURTS**; if red, **TORTEAUX**; if purple, **GOLPES**; if black, **PELLETS**; if tenne, **ORANGES**; if sanguine, **GUZES**. T. 8, n. 9 to 15. According to the author of *Notitia Anglicana*, they signify little bread-cakes used in the croisades, of variety of colours, like our modern eatable wafers. If there are two, three, or more, in a coat, and they be counterchanged, be they of any colour or metal, they retain the name of roundles, viz. *party per pale, or and gules, three roundles counterchanged*; name, *Abbot*.

Only English heralds term the roundles by their several names as above; the French, and all other nations, have

no such practice, but express the colour of every roundle, terming them all torteaux.

**ROUSANT**, a term for a bird preparing to take wing, but whose weight of body prevents it from rising suddenly into the air, as swans, &c. When this term is applied to a swan, we are to understand that her wings are indorsed; as the example, T. 10, n. 10.

**RUBY**, a stone used in heraldry instead of gules, being of a red colour. This stone was the last of the third row of Aaron's breastplate, whereon *Gad* was engraved.

**RUSSIA, CROWN OF.** P. 8, n. 11.

**RUSTRE**, is a lozenge pierced of a circular form in the middle. Some authors say the rustre was fixed at the end of lances used in tournaments; others, that it was a piece of iron which interposed between the heads of nails fixed on ports of cities and castles. See P. 6, n. 22. Boyer says, *rustre* is from the German *raute*, which signifies the nut of a screw.

**SABLE** is the colour black, and in engraving is represented by perpendicular and horizontal lines crossing each other. T. 2.

**SACRE OR SAKER**, a kind of falcon; the head gray, the feet and legs bluish, the back a dark brown.

**SAGITTARIUS**, an imaginary creature, half man and half beast; it represents one of the twelve celestial signs, and was borne by King Stephen, of England, who entered the kingdom when the sun was in that sign, and obtained a great victory by the help of his archers. P. 14, n. 1.

**SAIL**, P. 20, n. 16. *Gules, three sails argent*; name, *Cavell*.

**SALAMANDER** is represented like a small common lizard; its legs and tail are longer; the belly is white; one part of the skin is black, and the other yellow; both of them very bright, with a black line all along the back. Salamanders are bred in the Alps, and some parts of Germany, in marshy wet places: that they can live in, and

not be burned by, the fire, is of course a fiction, on account of which, however, the salamander was the hieroglyphic of Constancy. P. 17, n. 3. *Azure, a salamander or, in flames proper; name, Cennino.*

SALIANT signifies leaping. T. 9, n. 6.

COUNTER-SALIANT is when two beasts on the same escutcheon are saliant; the one leaping one way, and the other another, so that they look the direct opposite ways; as the example, T. 9, n. 9.

SALLED HEADPIECE, an ancient term for a helmet.

SALTS, or SALT-CELLARS, are vessels, with salt falling from the sides, as borne in the arms of the Salters' Company; as P. 15, n. 26. Some heralds have blazoned them sprinkling salts. They were anciently drawn as the example. At coronation dinners, and all great feasts given by the nobility and gentry, in ancient times, it was usual to set one of these salts in the centre of the dining-table; not only for holding salt for the use of the guests, but as a mark to separate and distinguish the seats of the superior sort of company from those of an inferior degree; it being the custom of former times to set the nobility and gentry above the salt, and the yeomanry and persons of lower rank below the salt.

SALTIRE. This cross is an ordinary which is formed by the bend dexter and bend sinister crossing each other in the centre at acute angles; uncharged, it contains the fifth, and charged, the third part of the field. T. 4, n. 21.

PER SALTIRE is when the field is divided into four parts by two diagonal lines, dexter and sinister, that cross each other in the centre of the field, dividing it into four equal parts, in form of a saltire. T. 3, n. 6. *Party per saltire ermine and gules; name, Restwold.*

SANGUINE is the murrey colour, or dark red, and is represented in engraving by lines diagonally from the dexter to the sinister side, and from the sinister to the dexter. P. 18, n. 2.

SANS-NOMBRE signifies many whole figures strewed on the field; but if part of them are cut off at the extremities

of the escutcheon, as the example, P. 7, n. 31, it then is termed *Seme*.

**SAPPHIRE**, in heraldry, is used to express the colour azure, it being a stone of a fine sky-blue colour, and the hardest next a diamond. It was one of the stones put into the breast-plate of the high-priest of the Jews.

**SARDONYX**; this stone is used in heraldry instead of sanguine, or dark red colour.

**SATURN**, one of the planets, and is used instead of the colour sable.

**SATYRAL**, a fictitious animal, having the body of a lion, the tail and horns of an antelope, and the face of an old man. P. 18, n. 9.

**SATYR**. See **MAN TIGER**.

**SCALING-LADDER**. This instrument is used to scale the walls of besieged castles and cities. Plate C, n. 18. *Argent, three scaling-ladders bendwise gules; name, Killing-worth.*

**SCARPE**; it is supposed to represent a shoulder-belt, or an officer's scarf. T. 4, n. 11.

**SCEPTRE**, a royal staff used by kings; *azure, a sceptre in pale or, ensigned with an eye*. P. 12, n. 9. The eye is the emblem of providence in government; the sceptre is an emblem of justice; so by some it is made a more ancient ensign of a king than the crown or diadem. The sceptre was originally a javelin without a head. *Tarquin the Old first used it among the Romans, and adorned its top with an eagle.*

**SCEPTRE WITH THE DOVE, &c.**; see **REGALIA OF ENGLAND**, page 69.

**SCORPION**, P. 17, n. 19. *Argent, a fess engrailed between three scorpions erect sable: name, Colle.*

**SCOTCH SPUR**, P. 20, n. 19. This is the ancient way of making spurs before rowels were invented, with the buckles fixed to the heel-piece, as the example. Tillet says, that gilt spurs were fit for the dignity of a knight, and white spurs for an esquire.

**SCRIPT**, *argent, a chevron between three palmers' scripts,*

*the tassels and buckles or;* name, *Palmer.* P. 12, n. 7. In the chancel at Snoland, in Kent, where Thomas Palmer, who married the daughter of Fitz-Simon, lies buried, is the following epitaph :—

“ Palmers all our faders were,  
I a Palmer lived here ;  
And travell'd still, till worn wud age  
I ended this world's pilgrimage.  
On the blest Ascension day,  
In the cheerful month of May,  
A thousand with four hundred seaven,  
I took my journey hence to heaven.”

Palmer (so called from a staff of a palm-tree, which they carried as they returned from the holy war), a Pilgrim that visited holy places; yet a Pilgrim and a Palmer differed thus: a Pilgrim had some dwelling-place, and a Palmer had none; the Pilgrim travelled to some certain place, the Palmer to all, and not to any one in particular; the Pilgrim must go at his own charge, the Palmer must profess wilful poverty; the Pilgrim might give over his profession, but the Palmer might not.—*Bailey.* The dress of a Pilgrim was an under vest, with an outer robe, having half-open sleeves, showing the under-sleeves, which continued to the wrists. On his head a broad-brimmed hat, with a shell in front; on his feet sandals, or short laced boots; in his hand a staff, and by his side a scrip.

SCROGS, a term used by the Scotch heralds for a small branch of a tree.

SCROLL, or label, wherein the motto is inserted.

SCRUTTLE. See WINNOWING-BASKET.

SCUTCHEON. See ESCUTCHEON.

SCYTHE, an instrument used in husbandry. *Argent, a scythe and in fess a fleur-de-lis sable;* name, *Snyde, or Sneyde.* P. 7, n. 34.

SEA-HORSE; the fore part is formed like a horse, with webbed feet, and the hinder part ends in a fish's tail. P. 14, n. 3.

**SEA-GULL.** P. 19, n. 17. *Azure, a chevron or, between three sea-gulls argent; name, Houlditch.*

**SEAL.** See MARINE WOLF.

**SEAL'S PAW,** erased, P. 19, n. 9. *Argent, a chevron between three seals' paws, erased, sable.* These are the arms of *Yarmouth*, in Norfolk.

**SEA-DOG** is drawn in shape like the talbot, but with a tail like that of the beaver; a scalloped fin continued down the back from the head to the tail; the whole body, legs, and tail scaled, and the feet webbed. P. 15, n. 7.

**SEA-LION.** The upper part is like a lion, and the lower part like the tail of a fish. See P. 15, n. 20. When the sea-lion is drawn erect, as P. 14, n. 29, it is blazoned, *a sea-lion, erect on his tail.*

**SEA-PIE**, a water-fowl of a dark brown colour, with a red head, and the neck and wings white. P. 15, n. 3. *Gules, a chevron, between three sea-pies or; name, Snyer.*

**SEAX**, a scimitar, with a semicircular notch hollowed out of the back of the blade. P. 15, n. 2. It is said to be formed exactly like the Saxon sword. Verstegan says, this was the weapon of the Saxons, which they wore under their coats when they slew the Britons on Salisbury Plain. Rapin says, the word Saxon comes from Seax, which in their language signifies a sword. They had two sorts; a long one which they wore by their side, and another that was shorter, which served for a dagger: both were in the shape of a cutlass or falchion.

**SEEDED** is chiefly applied to roses, to express the colour of their seed.

**SEGREANT** signifies a griffin erect on its hind-legs, with the wings indorsed, and displayed as ready to fly. P. 7, n. 13.

**SÉJANT**, the French for *sitting*; a term applied to all beasts when borne in that position. T. 8, n. 21.

**SÉJEANT-ADDORSED** is when two beasts are sitting back to back. T. 9, n. 11. *Argent, two squirrels séjant-addorsed gules; name, Samwell.*

**SEMÉ** is an irregular strewing without number, all over the field. P. 7, n. 31.

**SENGREEN**, or house-leek, is part of the arms of Caius College, Cambridge.

**SENTRIE**, an ancient term for Piles.

**SERAPH'S HEAD** is a child's head between three pair of wings ; the two uppermost and two lowermost are counterly crossed ; the two middlemost displayed. See P. 19, n. 1.

**SERPENT**. The Egyptians, Phœnicians, Greeks, and Romans used to worship the serpent. This animal, when stamped on money, and represented in painting, was a hieroglyphic of health and good fortune. It is probable that Moses, in order to oblige the Jews to address themselves to God, and to expect from Him health and the cure of their diseases, which they wanted, might therefore have set up the brazen serpent which in Egypt was the hieroglyphic of both.

**SHACKBOLT**, by some called a prisoner's bolt. P. 2, n. 24. *Sable, three pair of shack-bolts argent*; name, *Anderton*. See one pair, P. 15, n. 27.

**SHAFTED** is when a spear-head has a handle in it; then it is termed shafted.

**SHAKE-FORK**. See **HAY-FORK**.

**SHAMROCK**, a term in Ireland for the trefoil, or three-leaved grass.

**SHAVE**. See **CURRIERS' SHAVE**.

**SHIELD**. See **ESCUTCHEON**.

**SHIPS** are borne in arms, and very properly, by those who have performed noble actions at sea, and raised themselves to posts of honour for services on that element.

**SHOVELLER**, a species of water-fowl, somewhat like the duck. The ancient heralds drew this bird with a tuft on its breast, and another on the back of its head, as P. 15, n. 1. *Gules, a shoveller argent*; name, *Langford*.

**SHRUTTLE**. See **WINNOWING-BASKET**.

**SHUTTLE**; *argent, three weavers' shuttles sable, tipped,*

*and furnished with quills of yarn ; name, Shuttleworth.* P. 12, n. 22.

SILK-HANKS, P. 20, n. 14. Such are borne in the arms of the Silk-Throwers' Company.

SINISTER signifies the left side or part of anything, and is the female side in an impaled coat.

SINISTER CANTON is the canton placed on the left side of the shield in chief.

SINISTER BEND is a bend placed from the sinister chief to the dexter base, and in size the same as the bend.

SINISTER CHIEF is the left side of the chief, expressed by the letter C, Table 1.

SINISTER BASE, the left hand part of the base, represented by the letter H, Table 1.

SINISTER HAND, the left hand. P. 7, n. 33.

SINOPLE signifies the colour green.

SKEIN, a Scotch term for a dagger. *Gules, a chevron, between three skeins argent, hilted and pomelled or, surmounted of as many wolves' heads, couped close ; name, Skein.*

SLAY, SLEA, or REED ; an instrument used by weavers, and borne as part of the arms of the Company of Weavers of the city of Exeter. P. 2, n. 18.

SLING. See P. 19, n. 19. Such a sling is part of the arms of Cawardyn ; viz. *sable, a sling bendwise between two pheons' heads.*

SLIPS. See BRANCHES.

SLIPPED is a flower or branch plucked from the stock. T. 10, n. 11.

SLUGHORN : this term is used by the Scotch heralds for what the French call *le cri de guerre*, and the English the *war-cry*.

SNAIL, sometimes termed a house-snail. P. 12, n. 13. *Sable, a fess between three house-snails argent ; name, Shelly.*

SNAKE, with its tail in its mouth, among the Egyptians represented the year.

SOL, the sun, and in heraldry sometimes is used to express gold, in blazoning the arms of sovereigns.

SOLDERING-IRON, a tool used by the plumbers, and borne in the arms of their company. P. 2, n. 33.

SPADE-IRON, or the shoeing of a spade. P. 15, n. 25.  
*Azure, three spade-irons or; name, Becton.*

SPAIN, CROWN OF. See P. 8, n. 8.

SPANCELLED, or fettered, is when a horse has his fore and hind legs, of the near side, fettered with fetter-locks fastened to the ends of a stick. P. 19, n. 21. This is the arms of *Percivall*.

SPERVERRS, a term for *tents*, as borne by the Upholders' Company.

SPHANG, in Hebrew, from whence the word Sphinx is derived, signifying overflowing. *Spelman*.

SPHINX is said to have had a head, face, and breasts like a woman; body and legs like a lion, and wings like a bird. This figure is the Egyptian emblem of the overflowing of the Nile, which began at the entering of the sun into the sign Leo, continued during its passage through the constellation Virgo, and ended at the equinox. This example is borne as a crest; name, *Asgil*. P. 14, n. 2.

SPIDER and WEB. *A cobweb, in the centre a spider; name, Cobster, of Lombardy.* See P. 16, n. 10.

SPLENDOR; a term for the sun, which, when represented with a human face, and environed with rays, is blazoned *in splendor*.

SPRIGS. See BRANCHES.

SPRINGING, for beasts of chase, is the same as saliant for those of prey. T. 9, n. 15.

SQUARE, P. 20, n. 7. *Argent, a chevron, between three carpenters' squares, sable; name, Attow.*

SQUIRREL: its head, tail, and colour, are much like those of a fox: its food is nuts, fruits, and vegetables. P. 11, n. 24. Also P. 16, n. 7.

SRUTTLE. See WINNOWING-BASKET.

STAFFORD KNOT. See the example, P. 15, n. 31. *Or,*

*on a chevron gules, a Stafford knot argent, the arms of Stafford town.*

**STAG**, a beast admired for its elegance and beauty, borne in heraldry in various positions: as, *trippant, courant, lodged, at bay, at gaze, &c.*: see those terms. T. 9, n. 14.

**STARS**, see ESTOILES.

**STATANT** signifies an animal standing, with all feet on the ground. T. 8, n. 23.

**STAVES OF AN ESCARBUNCLE** are the eight rays that issue from its centre. See T. 7, n. 18.

**STILTS** were anciently used for scaling walls, castles, &c. See the examples, P. 7, n. 5. *Argent, two stilts in saltire sable, garnished or;* the arms of *Newby*, of Yorkshire.

**STIRRUP.** P. 17, n. 22. *Gules, three stirrups with buckles and straps or;* name, *Scudamore*.

**STORK.** *Argent, a stork sable, membered gules;* name, *Starkey*, of Cheshire. P. 14, n. 19.

**STREAMING** is the stream of light darting from a comet. See Plate H, n. 7.

**SUFFLUE**, a term for a rest or clarion.

**SUN**, in heraldry, is represented with a human face, environed with rays, and is termed a sun in its splendor. P. 17, n. 5.

**SUPER-CHARGÉ** is one figure charged or borne upon another.

**SUPER-IMBATTLED**; *azure, a fess, super-imbattled, between six estoiles or;* name, *Tryon*. See Plate A, n. 8.

**SUPPORTERS** are figures, animals, or birds, which stand on each side of the shield, and seem to support the same.

**SUPPRESSED.** See DEBRUISED.

**SURCOAT**, a loose, thin taffeta coat, formerly worn by military men over their armour, and upon which their arms were embroidered, in order that they might be distinguished in time of battle.

**SURMOUNTED** is when one charge is placed over another. See Plate A, n. 34, viz. *sable, a pile argent, surmounted of a chevron gules;* name, *Dyxton*.

SURTOUT, a term for over-all ; it signifies a small escutcheon, containing a coat of augmentation.

SWALLOW. *Or, three swallows close, proper ; name, Watton.* See P. 22, n. 23.

SWAN. P. 14, n. 15. *Gules, a swan argent, membered or ; name, Leyham.*

SWEPPE ; used in ancient times to cast stones into towns and fortified places of an enemy. This instrument was invented by the Phœnicians. P. 2, n. 17. *Argent, a svepe azure, charged with a stone or ; name, Magnall.*

SWIVEL, two iron links which turn on a bolt. P. 2, n. 29. Three such are borne on a chevron, in the arms of the Ironmongers' Company.

SYNAMUR. See SANGUINE.

SYPHON. See FIRE-BUCKET.

SYREN, or mermaid.

TABARD, a short loose garment for the body, without sleeves, worn by our ancient knights over their armour, in order to distinguish them in battle ; whereon were embroidered their arms, &c. At present a tabard is worn only by heralds, on public occasions.

TABERNACLE. See TENT.

TALBOT, a sort of hunting-dog between a hound and a beagle, with a large snout, long, round, hanging, and thick ears. P. 14, n. 26. *Argent, a talbot passant, sable, gutté d'or ; name, Shirrington.*

TAPER-CANDLESTICK. See CANDLESTICK.

TASCES, or TASSES, a part of armour to cover the thighs.

TASSEL is a bunch of silk, or gold fringe, and is an addition to the strings of mantles and robes of state. P. 17, n. 18. *Gules, three tassels or ; name, Wooler.*

TASSELED ; that is, decorated with tassels.

TAU, a CROSS, or St. Anthony's cross ; so called because St. Anthony the monk is always painted with it upon his habit ; likewise named from the Greek letter tau. P. 4, n. 26.

TEAZEL, the head or seed-vessel of a species of thistle ;

it is used by clothiers in dressing cloth, and borne in the arms of their company. P. 2, n. 7.

**TENNE**, or **TAWNY**, signifies orange-colour, and in engraving is represented by diagonal lines from the dexter to the sinister side of the shield, traversed by perpendicular lines. P. 18, n. 1.

**TENT**, tabernacle, or pavilion. Tents were the chief habitations of the patriarchs, in the first ages of the world, as they are of the Arabs at this day, who have no cities, towns, or villages. P. 16, n. 21. *Sable, a chevron between three tents, argent ; name, Tenton.*

**TÊTE** (French) signifies the head of an animal.

**THATCH-RAKE**. P. 20, n. 4.

**THUNDERBOLT**, in heraldry, is a twisted bar in pale inflamed at each end, surmounting two jagged darts, in saltire, between two wings displayed with streams of fire : this was the ensign of the *Scythians*. P. 12, n. 20.

**TIARA**, a cap of golden cloth, from which hang two pendants, embroidered and fringed at the ends, *semé* of crosses of gold. This cap is enclosed by three marquises' coronets : on the top is a mount of gold, with a cross of the same. When *Boniface VIII.* was elected into the See of Rome, 1295, he first encompassed his cap with a coronet : *Benedict II.*, in 1335, added a second to it ; and *John XXII.*, in 1411, a third, with a view to indicate by them that the *pope* is *sovereign priest, the supreme judge, and the sole legislator* amongst Christians. P. 8, n. 4.

**TIERCÉ** is a French term for a shield divided, or ingrafted into three areas. P. 6, n. 26 to 33. These partitions are not used by English heralds.

**TIERCÉ-IN-BEND**. P. 6, n. 26.

**TIERCÉ-IN-PAIRLE**. P. 6, n. 27.

**TIERCÉ-IN-PALE**. P. 6, n. 28.

**TIERCÉ-IN-GYRONS**, bend sinisterwise. P. 6, n. 29.

**TIERCÉ-IN-PILE**, from sinister to dexter. P. 6, n. 30.

**TIERCÉ-IN-GYRONS ARONDI**. P. 6, n. 31.

**TIERCÉ-IN-MANTLE**. P. 6, n. 32.

TIERCÉ-IN-FESS. P. 6, n. 33.

TIGER HERALDIC, so termed to distinguish it from the natural tiger. See T. 8, n. 3.

TIGER NATURAL. See P. 22, n. 1.

TILLAGE, RAKE-HEAD. P. 20. n. 3.

TLTING-SPEAR, a spear used at tilts and tournaments. P. 22, n. 8.

TIMBRE signifies the helmet, when placed over the arms in a complete achievement.

TINCTURE is the colour of anything in coat-armour: under this denomination may be included the two metals *or* and *argent*, gold and silver, because they are often represented by yellow and white, and are themselves of those colours.

TIRRET, a modern term for manacles or hand-cuffs, as in the badges of the house of *Percy*. T. 10, n. 12.

TOMB-STONE. P. 23, n. 10. Three such are the arms of *Tomb*.

TOPAZ, a stone of a gold colour, by some used instead of *or*. This stone was the second of the first row of Aaron's breastplate, whereon the name of *Simeon* was engraved.

TORN, an ancient name in heraldry for a spinning-wheel.

TORQUED, wreathed or twisted, from the Latin *torqueo*.

TORQUED, sometimes applied to a *dolphin hauriant*, which forms a figure similar to the letter S. See Plate F. n. 18.

TORSÉ. See WREATH.

TORTEAUX is a roundle of a red colour. T. 8, n. 11.

TORTOISE; *vert, a tortoise passant argent*; name, *Gawdy*. The tortoise is an amphibious creature, much esteemed as well for the beauty of its shell as for the delicacy of its flesh. P. 11, n. 13.

TOURNÉ, a French term synonymous with REGARDANT.

TOWER; *argent, a tower sable, having a scaling-ladder raised against it in bend sinister*. This is the arms of *Cardivar ap Dinwall, Lord of Aberser*, in South Wales. P. 16, n. 20.

**TOWERED**, a term applied to the towers or turrets on walls or castles.

**TRANSFLUENT**, a term for water running through the arches of a bridge. See P. 16, n. 22.

**TRANSPOSED** is when bearings are placed out of their usual situation. See P. 3, n. 33.

**TREFOIL**, or three-leaved grass. T. 6, n. 21. *Argent, a fess nebule between three trefoils slipt gules; name, Thorp of Gloucestershire.*

**TREILLÉ**, or latticed; it differs from *fretty*, for the pieces in the *treille* do not cross under and over each other, but are carried throughout, and are always nailed in the joints. *Argent, treillé gules, nailed or; name, Bardonenche.* See P. 18, n. 5.

**TRESSURE**, allowed to be half the breadth of the orle, and is borne flory and counterflory: it passes round the field in the same shape and form as the escutcheon, and is generally borne double, and sometimes treble. T. 5, n. 5. Plate J, n. 9. If a coat be impaled with another, either on the dexter or sinister side, and hath a tressure, the tressure must finish at the impaled line, and not be continued round the coat. The double tressure flowered, in the royal arms of Scotland, was the badge and memorial of the ancient alliance between *Charlemagne* and *Achæus*, king of Scotland, in the year 792. The “tressure flowerie” encompasses the lion of Scotland, the ancient imperial ensign of that kingdom since Fergus I.

**TRESTLE**, or three-legged stool. P. 17, n. 14. *Gules; a fess humette, between three trestles argent; name, Stratford.*

**TREVET**. P. 17, n. 13. *Argent, a trevet sable; name, Trevett.* The trevet is termed from its three feet, a *tripod*, which in Greek signifies a stool of so many feet. Amongst the heathens, Apollo's priests gave answers from the oracle sitting on such a stool; whence he that spoke oracles was said to speak *tanquam ex tripode*.

**TREVET**, triangular. P. 7, n. 12. *Argent, a triangular trevet sable; name, Barkle.*

**TRICORPORATED** is a lion with three bodies issuing from the three corners of the escutcheon, and meeting under one head in the fess point ; this device was borne by Edmund Crouchback, Earl of Lancaster, brother to King Edward I. P. 15, n. 16.

**TRIDENT**, a three-pronged barbed fork, generally placed in the hand of Neptune.

**TRIPARTED**, divided into three parts.

\_\_\_\_\_, a cross-flory. P. 6, n. 9.

**TRIPPANT**, or **TRIPPING** ; this term is proper for beasts of chase, as passant for those of prey ; represented with one foot up, as it were on a trot. See T. 9, n. 14. *Argent, a stag tripping proper, attired and unguled or* ; name *Holme*.

**COUNTER-TRIPPING** is when two beasts are tripping, the one passing one way, and the other another, as the example, T. 9, n. 10 ; also, *sable, two hinds counter-tripping in fess argent* ; name, *Cottingham*. P. 14, n. 13.

**TRIPLE PLUME**. See **OSTRICH FEATHERS**.

**TRIUMPHAL CROWN** was composed of laurel, and granted to those generals who had vanquished their enemies, and had the honour of a triumph granted to them by the Roman Senate. P. 8, n. 25. In after ages it was changed for gold, and not restricted to those that actually triumphed, but presented on several other accounts, as by foreign states and provinces to their patrons and benefactors.

**TRON-ONNÉE**, A CROSS, is a cross cut in pieces, yet so as all the pieces preserve the form of a cross, though set at a small distance from each other. P. 4, n. 9.

**TRUMPET**. P. 32, n. 15. *Argent, a chevron engrailed, between three trumpets sable* ; name, *Thunder*.

**TRUNCATED**, or **TRUNKED**, a term applied to the main stem of trees, &c., when couped, or cut off smooth. See the example, Plate H, n. 14.

**TRUNDLES**, quills of gold thread, used by the embroiderers, and borne in the arms of their company. P. 2, n. 22.

TRUSSING ; the example is a falcon, his wings expanded, *trussing* a mallard. See P. 3, n. 23.

TURKEY. P. 22, n. 11. *Argent, a chevron sable, between three turkey-cocks in their pride proper : name, Yeo.*

TURKISH CROWN. See GRAND SEIGNIOR.

TURNPIKE. See the example, P. 1, n. 4 ; also P. 19, n. 10, *three such, sable, on a field argent ; name, Woolstone.*

TURNSTILE, or TURNPIKE. P. 17, n. 11. This example is borne as a crest by *Sir Grey Skipwith*, Bart., but now blazoned as a “reel, proper.”

TURRET, a small tower on the top of another.

TURRET. See P. 22, n. 3. *Sable, on a bend between two turrets argent, three pheons gules, on a chief or, a lion passant, between two lozenges azure ; name, Johnson.*

TURRETED, having small turrets on the top of a wall, as P. 16, n. 19.

TUSCANY, CROWN OF. P. 8, n. 17.

TUSK, the long tooth of an elephant, boar, &c.

TUSKED, a term used in blazonry, when the tusks of an animal are of a different tincture from its body.

UMBRIATED, signifies shadowed.

UNDÉE, or UNDY, the same as WAVED, or WAVY.

UNGULED, signifies hoofed.

UNICORN, a fabulous beast, with a long twisted horn on its forehead : its head and body like a horse, with cloven feet, and hair under the chin like a goat, tail like a lion and of a bay colour. P. 14, n. 5. *Argent, a unicorn passant gules, armed or ; name, Stasam.*

UNION, CROSS OF THE. This form was settled as the badge of the union between England and Scotland, and is blazoned, *azure, a saltire argent surmounted of a cross gules, edged of the second.* See P. 4, n. 27.

URCHIN. See HEDGE-HOG.

URDÉE. See CLECHÉE.

VAIR, a fur used for lining the garments of great men ; it consisted of pieces put together, made in the shape of

little glass pots, which the furriers used to whiten furs in ; and because they were most frequently of an azure colour, those who first settled the rule of this science decreed, in relation to vair, that this fur in its blazon should be always *argent* and *azure*. T. 2, n. 4. Vair a border. T. 5, n. 16.

**VAIR ANCIENT**, as appears by many good MSS., was represented by lines nebule, separated by straight lines, in fess. See the example, P. 13.

**VAIR**, a CROSS, being composed of four pieces of vair, their points turned to one another, in the form of a cross. P. 4, n. 34.

**VAIR-EN-POINT** is a fur with the cups ranged upon a line counterwise, or and *azure*. P. 13.

**VALLARY-CROWN** was of gold, with palisades fixed against the rim ; it was given by the general of the army to a captain or soldier that first entered the enemy's camp, by forcing the palisade. P. 8, n. 21.

**VAMBRACED**, signifies an arm habited in armour. See P. 2, n. 34. *Gules, three dexter arms vambraced, in pale proper*; name, *Armstrong*.

**VAMPLET**, a piece of steel formed like a funnel, placed on tilting-spears just before the hand, to secure it, and so fixed as to be taken off at pleasure.

**VANNET**, a term by some French authors for the *escallop* or *cockle-shell*, when represented without ears. See P. 3, n. 11.

**VARVELLED, OR VERVELLED**. See **VERVELS** and **JESSES**.

**VENICE, CROWN OF THE DOGE OF**. P. 8, n. 20.

**VENUS**, one of the planets, used for the colour vert.

**VERDOY** signifies a bordure to be charged with any kind of vegetables. The example is, *argent a bordure azure, verdoys of eight trefoils, argent*. P. 3, n. 12. It would be more heraldic to say, *argent, a border charged with eight trefoils, argent*.

**VERRY**, a fur ; so termed, which always consists of four distinct colours, whose names must be mentioned in the blazon, as thus ; *verry, or, azure, sable, gules, &c.* P. 13.

**VERT** signifies the colour green: it is represented in engraving by diagonal lines from the dexter chief to the sinister base. T. 2.

**VERVELS**, small rings fixed to the end of the jesses, through which falconers put a string in order to fasten the bells to falcons' legs.

**VIROLLES**, or **VERULES**, a term applied to the ornamental rings of a hunting-horn, when set round with metal or colour different from the horn.

**VIZOR.** See **GARDEVISOR**.

**VOIDED** is when an ordinary has nothing but an edge to show its form: all the inward part supposed to be cut out or evacuated, so that the field appears through: therefore it is needless to express the colour or metal of the voided part, because it must of course be that of the field. P. 6, n. 17.

**VOIDERS.** These figures are formed like the flanches and flasques, yet they differ from both as being always smaller, and not so circular. P. 7, n. 7.

**Voider**, according to Holme, is certainly a diminutive of the flanch, and by reason of its smallness cannot be charged. It is a bearing, but being very rarely used as such, several heraldic writers do not mention it.

**VOL**, among the French heralds, signifies both the wings of a bird borne in armoury, as being the whole that makes the flight. P. 7, n. 16.

**DEMI-VOL** is when only a single wing is borne. T. 9, n. 23.

**VOLANT**: thus we term any bird that is flying. T. 9, n. 22.

**VORANT**: a term for any fish, bird, beast, or reptile, swallowing any other creature whole. Plate F, n. 19.

**VULNED** signifies wounded, and the blood dropping therefrom, as is represented on the breast of the example. Plate F, n. 5. Likewise a heart vulned. P. 7, n. 18. *Argent, a fess gules, between three hearts vulned, and distilling drops of blood on the sinister side proper; name, Tote.*

WAKE'S KNOT. See the example, P. 15, n. 34.

WALLED. See MURIAILLE.

WASTEL-CAKE, a round cake of bread.

WATER-BAGS. P. 20, n. 18. *Argent, two water-bags sable, hooped together or;* name, *Banister*. By the help of the hoop, put about the neck, these bags anciently were carried.

WARDEN, the name of a *pear*, and in armoury sometimes termed a *warden* only, in allusion to the name; *three pears* being the arms of *Warden*.

WATER BOUGET, a vessel anciently used by soldiers to fetch water to the camp. See P. 22, n. 16; and T. 6, n. 20.

WATTLED, a term for the gills of a cock, &c., when of a different tincture from its body.

WAVY, formed like waves, having always three risings, like waves rolling; also a line of partition: it sometimes denotes the first bearer to have got his arms for services done at sea. T. 3.

WEARE, WEIR, or *dam*, in *fess*. It is made with stakes and osier twigs, interwoven as a fence against water. P. 7, n. 25. Some authors term it a *Haie*.

WEEL: this instrument is used to catch fish. P. 2, n. 12. *Argent, a chevron ermine, between three weels, their hoops upwards, vert;* name, *Wylley*. See another, P. 15, n. 30.

WEEL, P. 15, n. 30. *Or, a chevron between three such weels sable,* name, *Folborne*.

WELL, as example, P. 7, n. 8. *Gules, three wells argent;* name, *Hadiswell*.

WELL. See the example, P. 7, n. 9, *sable, three wells argent;* name, *Borton*.

WELL-BUCKET, *argent, a well-bucket sable, handle and hoops or;* name, *Pemberton*. See the example, P. 4, n. 30.

WELKE; the name of a shell-fish. T. 8, n. 7. *Sable, a fess engrailed between three welkes;* name, *Shelley*, of Sussex, Bart.

**WERVELS.** See **VERVELS.**

**WHARROW-SPINDLE:** an instrument formerly used by women to spin as they walk, sticking the distaff in their girdle, and whirling the spindle round, pendant at the thread. P. 2, n. 13.

**WHALE'S HEAD.** See P. 3, n. 24. *Argent, three whales' heads, sable; name, Whalley.*

**WHIRLPOOL.** See **GURGES.**

**WHINTAIN.** See **QUINTAIN.**

**WING OF AN IMPERIAL EAGLE.** The Germans and French always represent the wings of the eagle with a small feather between the pinion feathers. See P. 3, n. 29. Wings are hieroglyphics of celerity, and sometimes of protection.

**WINDMILL-SAIL.** P. 19, n. 24. *Azure, a chevron between three windmill-sails; name, Milnes.*

**WINGED,** the term used in blazonry when the wings are of a different tincture from the body.

**WINNOWING-BASKET,** for winnowing of corn. P. 5, n. 17. *Azure, three scrutiles (or winnowing-baskets) or; name, Swans.*

**WOLF.** P. 14, n. 10. *Argent, a wolf passant, sable; name, Walelle.* Wolves were formerly so numerous in this island, that King Edgar commuted the punishments for certain offences into the acceptance of a number of wolves' tongues from each criminal; and he converted a heavy tax on one of the Welsh princes into an annual tribute of three hundred wolves' heads.

**WOOL-CARD,** P. 20, n. 1. *Sable, three wool-cards, or; name, Cardington.*

**WREATH,** an attire for the head, made of linen or silk, of two different tinctures twisted together, which the ancient knights wore when equipped for tournaments; the colours of the silk are usually taken from the principal metal and colour contained in the coat of arms of the bearer. P. 8, n. 28.

**WYVERN,** a kind of flying serpent, the upper part resembling a dragon, and the lower an adder or snake:

some derive it from *vipera*, and so make it a winged viper ; others say it owes its being to the heralds, and has no other creation. T. 7, n. 24. *Argent, a wyvern gulee ; name, Drakes.*

YATES, an ancient name in armoury for *gates*.

ZODIAC, in bend sinister, with three of the signs on it, viz., Libra, Leo, and Scorpio. See Plate H, n. 1. This coat is said to appertain to the king of Spain, Columbus having first discovered South America.

AN

ALPHABETICAL

LIST OF HERALDIC TERMS,

IN

ENGLISH, FRENCH, AND LATIN.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
ABATEMENT	Abatement	Diminutiones armorum
Addorsed	Addossé	Adumbratio
Adumbration		Aquilæ Mutilæ
Alerions	Aiglettes, Aiglons	Anchoratus
Anchored	Ancré	Annulus, vel Annilius
Annulet	Annelet	
Argent	Argent	Argenteus
Armed	Armé	Armatus
Armoury, Armory	Armoiries	Insignia
Attired	Acorné	
Avelane		Crux Avellana
Azure	Azur	Azureus
Bar	Barre	Vectis
Bar-Gemel	Jumelles	Jugariæ fasciolæ
Barrulet	Barelle	Barrula
Barry	Barellé	Transverse fasciolatus
Barry Pily	Parti Emanché	Fasciatum
Barry-per-pale	Contreface	Runcinatus
Barbed and Crested	Barbé et Cresté	Contrafasciatus
Barnacles		Barbula et Crista
Barnicle		Pastomides
Baton	Baston	Barnicla
Beaked	Becqué	Bacillus
		Rostratus

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Bend	Bande	Tænia
Per Bend Sinister	Contrebarré	Contravittatus
Bendy	Bandé	
Bendy of Six	Contrebandé	
Bend Sinister	Barre	Vitta
In bend	En Bande	Oblique dextrorsus positus
Party-per-bend	Tranché	Oblique dextrorsus bi- partitum
Bendlet	Bandellette	Bandula
Bezant	Besant	Bizantius nummus
Bezanty	Bezanté	
Billets	Billettes	Laterculi
Billetty	Billetté	Laterculatus
Border	Bordure	Fimbria
Bordered	Bordé	Fiimbriatus
Caboshed	Cabossé	Ora obvertantia
Caltraps	Chaussé-trappes	Murices or Tribuli
Canton	Canton	Quadrans Angularis
Cantoned	Cantonnée	Stipatus
Charge	Charge	Figura
Charged	Chargeé	Ferens
Checky	Echiqueté	Tesselatum
Chess-Rook		Lusorius Latrunculus
Chevron	Chevron	Cantherius
Per Chevron	Mantelé	Manteliatum
Chevrony	Chevroné	Cantheriatus
Chief	Chef	Summum
In Chief	In Chef	In Summo
Cinquefoil	Quinquefeuille	Quinquefolia
Cleché	Cleché	Floralis
Close	Clos	Clausum
Collared	Acollé	
Combatant	Affronté	Pugnantes
Compony	Componé	Compositus
Counter-Compony	Contre Componé	
Counterchanged	Parti de l'un en l'autre	Transmutatus
Counter-imbattled	Bretessé	Utrinque-principatus
Counter-quartered	Cont'-Escarfelé	Contraquadrate par- titus
Counter-potent	Contrepotence	Patibulatum
Counter-Vair	Contrevaire	
Coward	Couée	
Cotice	Cotice	Tæniola
Cotised	Cotová	Utroque latere ac cinctus

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Couchant	Couchant	Jacens
Couped	Coupé	A latere disjunctum
Combed	Cresté	
Couple-close		Cantheria
Courant	Courant	Currens
Crowned	Couronnée	Coronatus
Crescent	Croisant	Luna Cornuta
Crest	Crête	Crista
Crested	Cresté	
Cross	Croix	Crux
In-Cross	En Croix	In modum crucis collata
Crosslet	Croisette	Crucicula
Dancette	Danché	Denticulatus
Defamed	Diffamé	
Demy	Demi	Dimidiatus
Diapered	Diapré	Duriatus
Differences	Brisures	Diminutiones Armonrum
Displayed	Employé	Expansus
Dismembered	Dismembré	
Dismembred	Morné	Mutilatus
Dormant	Dormant	Dormiens
Doublings	Double	
Dove-Tail	Assemble	
Embattled	Crenelé	Piunatus
Engrailed	Engrailé	Striatus
Engrafted	Enté	Insitus
Environed	Environné	Septus
Erasded	Arraché	Lacer
Eradicated		Eradicatus.
Ermine	Hermimes	
Ermines	Contre Hermimes	
Escalop	Coquille	Conchilium
Escarbuncle	Escarbuncle	
Escutcheon	Ecusson	Scutum
Etoile	Etoile	
Fess	Face	Fascia
Per Fess	Coupé	Transverse sectum
Fitchy	Fiché	Figibilis
Fillet	Filet	
Fimbriated	Franché	Fimbriatus
Flanch	Flanqué	Orbiculi Segmentum
Flory	Florence	Liliatus
Fret	Frette	
Fretty	Fretté	Caltratus

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Furs	Pannes	Pellis
Fusil	Fusée	Fusus
Fusilly	Fuselé	Fusillatum
Garb	Gerbe	Fascis frumentarius
Galtrap	Chaussée-trappe	Murices
Gardant	Gardante	Obverso ore
Gliding	Ondoyante	Undans
Gorged	Clariné	Cymbalatus
Gules	Gueules	Ruber
Gutty	Gutté	Gutis Respersum
Gyron	Gyron	Cuneus
Gyronny	Gironné	Cuneatus
Hauriant	Hauriant	Hauriens
Helmet	Casque	Galea
Horned	Accorné	
Hooded	Chapperoné	Calypratus
Imbattled	Crenellé	Pinnatus
Indented	Danché	Indentatus
Incensed	Animé	Incensus
Indorsed	Adossé	Ad invicem tergum vertentes
Iuesutchcon	Ecusson	Scutulum
Ingrailed	Engrailé	Striatus
Invecked	Canellé	Invectus
Issuant	Issant	Nascens
Label	Lambel	Lambella
Lambrequin	Lambrequin	Pennæ
Langued	Lampasse	Lingua
Lozenge	Lozange	Plinthium
Lozengy	Lozangé	Rombulis interstinctus
Mantle	Manteau	Pallium
Martlet		Merula
Manche	Manche	Manica
Mascle	Macle	Macula
Masoned	Massoné	Glutinatus
Membred	Membré	Tibiatus
Mirlind	Fer de Moulin	Ferrum Molendinarium
Montant	Montant	Resupinus
Mound	Monde	Mundus
Musseled	Emmuselé	
Mullet	Molette	Rotula Calcaris
Nebuly	Nebulé	Nubilatum
Or	Or	Aurum
Orle	Environné	Limbus

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
In Orle	Environné	Ad oram positus
Over all	Sur le tout	Toti superinductum
Pale	Pal	Palus
In-pale	En Pal	In Palum collocatus
Pall	Pairle	
Paly	Pallé	Palis exoratus
Palet	Vergetté	Palus Minutus
Paly-per-fess	Contrepalé	Contrapalitus
Party-per-pale	Parti	Partitus
Papillone	Papellonné	Papillionatus
Passant	Passant	Gradiens
Patty	Paté	Patens
Paw	Patte	
Perished	Peri	
Pheon	Fer de dard	Ferrum jacul
Pile	Pointe	Pila Pontis
Pometty	Pometté	
Potent	Potence	
Proper	Propre	Color naturalis
Purpure	Pourpre	Purpureus color
Quarter	Quartier	Quadrans
Quarterly	Escarcelé	
Quartering	Escarceler	Cumulationes Ar- morum
Quarterly Quartered	Contre escarcelent	
Quatrefoil	Quatrefeuille	Quatuorfolia
Rampant	Rampant	Erectus
Ranged	Rangé	Ordinatus
Rebuses	Armes Parlantes	
Reversed	Renversé	
Regardant	Regardant	Retrospiciens
Respectant	Affronté	Pugnantes
Rising	Essortant	Surgens
Rompu	Rompu	Fractus
Roundle	Torteau	Tortella
Sable	Sable	Ater, or Niger
Saltier	Sautoir	
Party-per-Saltire	Escarcelé en sautoir	
Saltirewise	Posé en sautoir	
Saliant	Saillant	Salient
Scaled	Escaillé	
Segreant	Segrant	Erectus
Sejant	Assis	Sedens
Seme	Semé	Sparsus
Shortened	Raccourci	Accisus
Streaming	Chevelée	

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Stringed	Enguiché	Appensus
Statant	En Pied	
Surmounted	Surmonté	
Tail	Queue	Cauda
Taloned	Onglé	Ungulatus
Tierce	Tierce	Tertiatum
Treille	Treillé	
Trefoil	Treflle	Trifolium
Tripping		More suo incedens
Trunked	Tronqué	Truncatus
Tusked	Defendu	
Vair	Vairé	Variegatum
Vert	Vert	Viridis color
Voided	Vuidé	Evacuatus
Volant	Volant	Volans
Vorant	Engoulant	Vorans
Umbrated	Ombré	Inumbratus
Water Bouget	Bouse	Uter Aquarius militaris
Wavy	Ondé	Undulatus
Whirlpool	Tournant d'Eau	Gurges
Two Wings expanded	Vole	Ala
A Wing	Un Demi Vol	Ala Simplex
Winged	Aislé	Alatus
Wreath	Torce	Tortile
Wyvern	Dragon	Viverra

## Manual of Rank and Nobility.

HONOUR, says Cicero, is the reward of virtue, as infamy is the recompense of vice; so that he who aspires to honour should arrive at it by the way of virtue; which the Romans expressed by so building the temple of honour, that there was no possibility of entering it without first passing through the temple of virtue.

### THE KING.

The king is so called from the Saxon word *koning*, or *cuning*, from *can*, intimating power, or *ken*, knowledge, wherewith every sovereign should especially be invested.

The supreme executive power of the British dominions is vested, by the English laws, in a single person, the *King* or *Queen*; for it matters not to which sex the crown descends; the person entitled to it, whether male or female, is immediately invested with all the ensigns, rights and prerogatives of sovereign sway. What follows, therefore, is applicable equally to queen-regnant as to king. See *QUEEN*, p. 204.

The king is styled Father of his country; and because the protection of his subjects belongs to his care and office, the militia is annexed to his crown. He is also called the *fountain of honour*, because in him is vested the power of bestowing titles and dignities.

A king is to fight the battles of his people, and to see right and justice done to them; as also, according to his coronation oath, to preserve the rights and privileges of our holy church; the royal prerogative belonging to the crown; the laws and customs of the realm; to do justice, show mercy, keep peace and unity, &c.; and he hath power of pardoning where the law condemns.

The king being *principium, caput, et finis parlamenti*, may of his mere will and pleasure convoke, adjourn, remove, and dissolve parliaments; as also to any bill that

is passed by both Houses he may refuse to give his royal assent without rendering a reason ; without which assent it cannot pass into a law. He may also, at his pleasure, increase the number\* of members of both houses, by creating more peers of the realm, and bestowing privileges upon any towns to send burgesses by writ to parliament ; and he may refuse to send his writ to some others that have sat in former parliaments (a right, though seldom exercised). This has proved very unfortunate to some kings.

The king of England is deemed a constituent part of the supreme legislative power, and therefore is not himself bound by any general act of parliament, unless specially named. He is the generalissimo of the kingdom, with the power of raising and regulating fleets and armies—the fountain of honour, office, and privilege—head and supreme governor of the national church, the fountain of justice and general conservator of the peace of the kingdom—his majesty being supposed, in law, to be always present in all his courts, though he cannot personally distribute justice. His judges are the mirror by which the king's image is reflected.†

Besides the attribute of sovereignty, the law ascribes to the king, in his political capacity, absolute *perfection*: the “*king can do no wrong*;” which ancient and fundamental maxim is not to be understood as if everything transacted by the government was of course just and lawful, but means only two things : First, that whatever is exceptionable in the conduct of public affairs is not to be imputed to the king ; nor is he answerable for it personally to his people. And, 2ndly, that the prerogative of the crown extends not to do any injury ; it is created for the benefit of the people ; and therefore cannot be exerted to their prejudice. Or perhaps it means that, although the king is subject to the infirmities and passions of other

---

\* Since the union of England and Scotland, the king can neither make an English peer nor a Scotch peer ; all the peers that the king of Great Britain now creates, are either British or Irish.

† Plowden.

men, the constitution has prescribed no mode by which he can be made personally amenable for any wrong that he may actually do. The law will therefore presume no wrong, where it has provided no remedy. The *inviolability of the king* is essentially necessary to the free exercise of those high prerogatives which are vested in him, not for his own private splendour and gratification, but for the security and preservation of the real happiness and liberty of his subjects.

The law ascribes to the king's majesty, in his political capacity, an absolute *immortality*. The king never dies. *Henry, Edward, or George*, may die; but the king survives them all. For, immediately upon the decease of the reigning prince in his natural capacity, his kingship, or imperial dignity, by act of law, without any *interregnum* or interval, is vested at once in his heir, who is *eo instanti* king, to all intents and purposes. And so tender is the law of supposing even a possibility of his death, that his natural dissolution is generally called his *demise*; *dmissus regis, vel coronæ*: an expression signifying merely a transfer of property.

By letters patent, his majesty may erect new counties, universities, bishoprics, cities, boroughs, colleges, hospitals, schools, fairs, markets, courts of judicature, forests, chases, free warrens, &c.; and no forest or chase is to be made, nor castle, fort, or tower to be built, without his special licence. He hath also power to coin money, and to settle the denomination or value for which the coin is to pass current.

The dominions of the kings of England were first England, and all the sea round about Great Britain and Ireland, and all the isles adjacent, even to the shores of the neighbouring nations; and our law saith the sea is of the legiance of the king, as well as the land; and as a mark thereof, the ships of foreigners have anciently asked leave to fish and pass in these seas, and do at this day lower their topsails to all the king's ships of war; and all children born upon these seas (as it sometimes happens)

are accounted natural-born subjects to the king of Great Britain, and need not be naturalised as others born out of his dominions.

To England, Henry I. annexed Normandy, and Henry II. Ireland, our kings being styled only lords of Ireland till the 33rd of Henry VIII., although they had all kingly jurisdiction before. Henry II. also annexed the dukedoms of Guyenne and Anjou, the counties of Poitou, Touraine, and Maine; Edward I. all Wales; and Edward III. the right, though not the possession, of France; but Henry V. added both; and his son, Henry VI., was crowned and recognised by all the states of the realm at Paris. King James I. added Scotland, and since that time there have been superadded considerable parts of America, the East Indies, &c.

The dominions at this day in possession of the sovereign of the United Kingdom, are, Great Britain and Ireland, and all the seas adjacent; as also the islands of Alderney, Sark, Man, Jersey, and Guernsey, which were parcel of the duchy of Normandy: besides those profitable islands, Barbadoes, Jamaica, Bermudas, with several other isles and places in America, the East Indies, and upon the coasts of Africa.

The mighty power of the king of England, before the conjunction of Scotland, and total subjection of Ireland, which were usually at enmity with him, was well known to the world, and felt by the neighbouring nations; but his real strength was never fully tried till after the Revolution, when the parliaments of all three kingdoms seemed to vie which should most readily comply with their sovereign's desires and designs. All Europe is now sensible how great is the power of the monarch of England, which is like a huge fortress, or garrison town, fenced not only with strong works, and the wide sea, but guarded also with excellent outworks, the strongest and best-built ships of war in the world, and so abundantly furnished with men and horses, with victuals and ammunition, with clothes and money, that if all the potentates of Europe

should conspire, (which God forbid!) they could hardly distress it, provided it be at unity with itself.

No king in Christendom, or other potentate, receives from his subjects more revenue, honour, and respect, than the king of England ; all persons stand bare in the presence of the king, and in the presence chamber, though in the king's absence, except one person only, the lord Kinsale of the kingdom of Ireland, whose noble ancestor, John de Courcy, Earl of Ulster, in that kingdom, having in the reign of King John performed an eminent service for his royal master, was, in reward thereof, permitted (and his successors) to be covered in the king's presence, which honour is still continued.

Of the sacred person and life of the king our laws and customs are so tender, that it is made high treason only to imagine or intend his death : and, as he is the father of his country, so every subject is obliged by his allegiance to defend him, as well in his natural as political capacity ; for the law saith, the life and member of every subject is at the service of the sovereign.

#### THE QUEEN.

The queen is so called from the Saxon word *cunigine*, as the king from *koning*.

The queen of England is either queen-regnant, queen-consort, or queen-dowager. The queen-regnant, or sovereign, is she who holds the crown in her own right ; as the first (and perhaps the second) Queen Mary, Queen Elizabeth, Queen Anne, and her present Most Gracious Majesty, Queen Victoria ; and such a queen has the same powers, prerogatives, rights, dignities, and duties, as if she were king.

The queen-consort is the wife of the reigning king ; and she, by virtue of her marriage, is participant of divers prerogatives above other women.

She is a public person, exempt and distinct from the king ; and not, like other married women, so closely connected as to have lost all legal or separate existence so

long as the marriage continues. For the queen-consort is of ability to purchase lands, and to convey them ; to make leases, to grant copyholds, and do other acts of ownership, without the concurrence of her lord, which no other married woman can do. She is also capable of taking a grant from the king, which no other wife is from her husband. The queen-consort of England has separate courts and officers distinct from the king's, not only in matters of ceremony, but even of law ; and her attorney and solicitor-general are entitled to a place within the bar of his majesty's courts, together with the king's counsel. She may likewise sue and be sued alone, without joining her husband. She may also have separate property in goods as well as lands, and has a right to dispose of them by will. In short, she is in all legal proceedings looked upon as a single, not as a married woman. The reason given for which is this : the wisdom of the common law would not have the king (whose continual care and study ought to be for the public good) troubled and disquieted on account of his wife's domestic affairs ; wherefore it vests in his queen a power of transacting her own concerns without the intervention of the king, as if she was an unmarried woman.

The queen-consort hath also many exemptions and minute prerogatives. For instance : she pays no toll ; nor is she liable to any amercement in any court. But, in general, except where the law has expressly declared her exempted, she is upon the same footing with other subjects ; being to all intents and purposes the king's subject, and not his equal.

Though the queen-consort is in all respects a subject, yet, in point of security of life and person, she is put on the same footing as the king. It is equally treason to compass or imagine the death of our lady the king's companion, as of the king himself. And to violate or defile the queen-consort amounts to the same high crime ; as well in the person committing the fact, as in the queen herself, if consenting. If, however, the queen be accused

of any species of treason, she shall (whether consort or dowager) be tried by the peers of parliament.

A queen-dowager is the widow of the king, and as such, enjoys most of the privileges belonging to her as queen-consort. But it is not high treason to conspire her death, or to violate her chastity, because the succession to the crown is not thereby endangered. Yet still, *pro dignitate regali*, (for sustaining the royal dignity,) no man can marry a queen-dowager without special licence from the reigning sovereign, on pain of forfeiting his lands and goods. But a queen-dowager, when married again to a subject, does not lose her regal dignity, as peeresses-dowager do their peerage when they marry commoners.

---

### Royal Titles.

THE Royal Style, as settled on the 5th of November, 1800, in consequence of the Union with Ireland, which was to commence from the 1st of January, 1801, runs thus:—"George the Third, by the Grace of God, of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith; and of the United Church of England and Ireland, on earth the supreme head." In the Latin it is differently expressed:—"Georgius Tertius, Dei Gratiâ Britanniarum Rex," &c.; the word Britanniarum, first introduced upon that occasion, being regarded as expressive, under one term, of the incorporated kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland. James the First, when he ascended the throne of England, revived the title which had been laid aside by an edict of Egbert, in the commencement of the ninth century, and styled himself *King of Great Britain*, comprehending under that appellation his dominion over England and Scotland. Before the "Union of the Crowns," Britain alone was in general used in the style of our sovereigns, to signify England and Wales. Alfred, however, was called

*Governor of the Christians of Britain ; Edgar, Monarch of Britain ; Henry the Second, King of Britain ; and, nearly synonymous with the latter, John was styled, Rex Britonum.*

The title of *King of Ireland*, was first granted by the Pope to Henry the Second, though it was not regularly added to the royal dignities, until assumed by Henry the Eighth, in 1541 ; before that time the dominion of the English sovereigns over that island was usually expressed by the term "Lord ;" and it is a fact, that our monarchs publicly denominated some of the Irish chieftains kings, while they themselves were content with the subordinate honour of "Lord." It should be remembered, however, that the title of king did not invariably denote sovereignty ; and, according to the ancient feudal system, of which those Irish kings formed a part, many of the barons who were dignified with that high-sounding appellation, were in a state of vassalage. The King of Majorca was tributary to the King of Arragon ; the King of Man to the King of Scotland ; and the Kings of Ireland to the King of England ; to which might be added other instances from the early history of this country ; while, even so late as the reign of Richard the Second, the whole of the kings of Ireland were tributary to Robert de Vere, duke of that island.

The title of *Defender of the Faith*, still retained in the royal style, belonged anciently to the kings of England, though it had not been generally assumed by them. "We are and will be Defenders of the Catholic Faith," is an expression to be found in writs of Richard the Second. Pope Leo the Tenth, in the year 1521, renewed that dignity, which was afterwards confirmed by Clement the Seventh, in consequence of Henry the Eighth having written an answer, then much esteemed, to Luther's book on the Babylonian Captivity. Upon the suppression of the monasteries, the Pope issued a bull, annulling this title ; but his attempt was as futile in that respect, as was his silly effort to depose that sovereign ; the English

Parliament, in the 35th year of Henry's reign, established it beyond the power of change from foreign interposition, giving that monarch not only a complete confirmation of the title, but the power of exercising it. The Pope's supremacy in England was totally suppressed, and the king acknowledged *Supreme Head of the Church*, as well as of the state; thereby laying the foundation of that reformation which was afterwards so completely and happily accomplished in this kingdom.

Henry the Eighth was the first King of England who assumed the title of *Majesty*, which is still retained. Before that reign the sovereigns were addressed by the style of "*My Liege*," and "*Your Grace*"; the latter of which epithets was originally conferred on Henry the Fourth. "*Excellent Grace*," was given to Henry the Sixth; "*Most High and Mighty Prince*," to Edward the Fourth; "*Highness*," to Henry the Seventh; which last expression was sometimes used to Henry the Eighth, and sometimes "*Grace*"; until near the end of his reign, when, in matters of state, they gave way to the more lofty and appropriate appellation of "*Majesty*," being the expression with which Francis the First addressed him at their interview in 1520. The Emperor Charles the Fifth had, the preceding year, first assumed the novel and high-sounding title of *Majesty*; and the polished French monarch lost not so favourable an opportunity of complimenting our then youthful Henry. Elizabeth was, however, frequently addressed as the "*Queen's Highness*," as well as the "*Queen's Majesty*." James the First completed the present style of "*Most Excellent Majesty*," or "*Sacred Majesty*," the latter being in allusion to the inviolability or sanctity of the royal person and prerogatives.

The title of her present Majesty is as follows:—

"Her Most Excellent Majesty Victoria, of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland Queen, Defender of the Faith, Sovereign of the Orders of the Garter, Thistle, Bath, St. Patrick, St. Michael, and St. George."

The royal *arms* are as follow:—

establi  
terpost  
ormain  
he Pe  
l, and t  
h, as m  
n of th  
ately n

and t  
retained  
for t  
attemt  
on th  
Sint  
outh.  
st ex  
i, and  
reign.  
lofty  
the  
m at  
fifth  
igh-  
eab  
om-  
as.  
i,  
D-  
of  
x

*The Regalia of England*  
*Plate 1*



Quarterly, first and fourth gules, three lions passant-gardant in pale, or, for *England*; second, or, a lion rampant, within a double tressure, flory-counterflory, gules, for *Scotland*; third, azure, a harp, or stringed argent, for *Ireland*; the whole encircled with the garter and its motto.

*Crest.* Upon the royal helmet the imperial crown, proper, thereon a lion statant-gardant, or imperially crowned of the first.

*Supporters.* Dexter, a lion rampant-gardant, or, imperially crowned proper; sinister, a unicorn, argent, armed, crined and unguled or, gorged with a coronet composed of crosses pattée and fleurs-de-lis, with a chain affixed thereto, passing between the fore-legs and reflexed over the back of the last.

*Motto.* DIEU ET MON DROIT, is in the compartment below the shield, with the union roses, shamrock and thistle, engrafted on one stem.

A representation of the royal arms of Great Britain, beautifully engraved by Mutlow, will be found in Plate 4 of Regalia, n. 1.; it should be noticed however, that the Hanoverian escutcheon in the centre is now omitted; in other respects, the arms are precisely those borne by her present Majesty.

## The Regalia of England.

### PLATE 1.

THE CROWN of England, with which the kings of England have generally been crowned, is called St. Edward's crown. It was made in imitation of the ancient crown supposed to have been worn by that monarch, and which was kept in the abbey church of Westminster till the beginning of the civil wars in the reign of King Charles the First, when, with the rest of the regalia, it was taken away, and sold

in 1642. It was embellished with pearls and precious stones of various kinds, as diamonds, rubies, emeralds, and sapphires; surmounted by a mound, enriched with a band or fillet of gold, embellished also with precious stones. Upon the mound was a cross of gold, embellished likewise with precious stones; and three very large oval pearls, one of them fixed on the top, and two others pendant at the ends of the cross. It was composed (as all the imperial crowns of England are) of four crosses *pattée*, and as many fleurs-de-lis placed on a rim or circlet of gold, embellished with jewels. From the crosses arise four circular bars, or arches, which meet at the top in form of a cross, at the intersection of which is a pedestal, whereon is the mound before mentioned. The cap within this crown is of purple velvet, lined with white taffeta, and turned up with ermine. See Regalia, P. 1, n. 1. A fac-simile of which in metal or silver gilt may be seen in the Tower of London.

Plate 1, n. 2, represents the crown with which our sovereigns were crowned from the reign of Charles II. to that of George III. inclusive. It was made for the coronation of King Charles II., and was embellished with divers large rose, or faucet, and table diamonds, with four large pear-shaped pearls. This crown was particularly remarkable for a very large and splendid ruby, set in the middle of one of the four crosses, and on account of the mound being one entire stone of a sea-water-green colour, called an agmarine, or aqua-marine. The cap was of purple velvet, lined with white taffeta, and turned up with ermine, as St. Edward's crown was.

At the coronation of King George the Fourth, this crown was broken up, and reconstructed, with many additional jewels borrowed for the occasion. The celebrated aquamarine mound was then found to be nothing but paste; for this therefore was substituted a mound, the entire periphery of which was one blaze of diamonds; the ruby and other precious stones were reset, with numerous additional and costly embellishments, and the whole remodelled



*The Regalia of England*

Plate 2



2



much in the form of the present state crown, making allowance for size and weight. His late majesty William IV. was crowned with the same crown as his royal predecessor; but when the sovereignty of these realms devolved on our present youthful queen, alteration was again indispensable, as the crown was both too large and too heavy for her majesty's head. The crown worn by her weighs about three pounds only, while that of George IV. weighed five pounds and a half.

The NEW CROWN, of which a correct engraving will be found in plate 9, is composed of hoops of gold, inclosing a cap of deep purple or rather blue velvet; the hoops being completely covered with precious stones, surmounted with a ball covered with small diamonds, and having a Maltese cross of brilliants on the top of it. This cross has in its centre a splendid sapphire; the rim of the crown is clustered with brilliants, and ornamented with fleurs-de-lis and Maltese crosses, equally rich. In the front of the Maltese cross, which is in the front of the crown, is the enormous heart-shaped ruby, traditionally said to have been worn by the Black Prince at the battle of Cressy, and by Henry V. at the battle of Agincourt. Beneath, in the circular rim, is an immense long sapphire. There are many other precious gems, emeralds, rubies, sapphires, and several small clusters of drop pearls. The arches of the crown are depressed in the centre, and the circlet and arches covered with diamonds.

#### PLATE 2.

Nos. 1 and 2 are representations of crowns worn by queens-consort at their coronation. In recent cases, as those of queens Charlotte and Adelaide, their diadems have been composed of their own jewels, which have been returned to them after the ceremony.

No. 3. The Curtana, or Sword of Mercy: the blade, thirty-two inches long and nearly two broad, is without

a point, and is borne naked before the sovereign at a coronation, between the Swords of Justice, spiritual and temporal.

## PLATE 3.

1. The golden Sceptre with its Cross, set upon a large amethyst, of great value, garnished round with table diamonds. The handle of the Sceptre is spiral, but the pummel is set round with rubies, emeralds, and small diamonds. The top rises into a fleur-de-lis of six leaves, all enriched with precious stones, from whence issueth a mound made of the amethyst already mentioned. The Cross is decorated with precious stones; length of the Sceptre, thirty-three inches.

2. The Sceptre with the Dove, the emblem of Peace, perched on the top of a Jerusalem Cross, ornamented with diamonds; length of the Sceptre, forty-three inches. This emblem was first used by *Edward the Confessor*, as appears by his seal. It is also marked on the seals of Henry I., Stephen, and Henry II.; but omitted by Richard I. Richard II. assumed it again on his seal; and it was also used by Edward IV. and Richard III. The ancient one was sold in 1642 by order of the parliament; that now in the Tower was not made till after the restoration of King Charles.

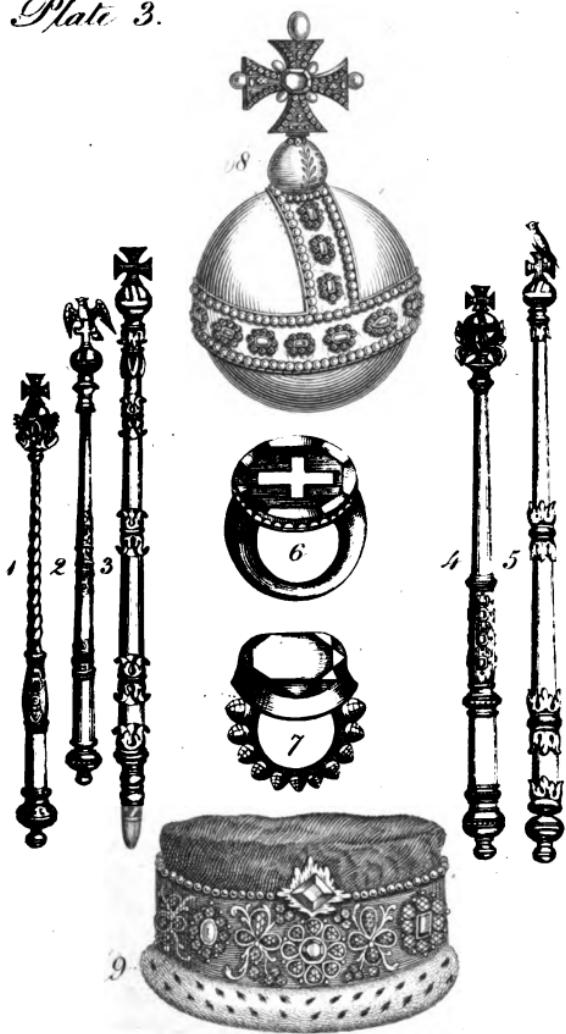
3. St. Edward's Staff, in length fifty-five inches and a half, and three inches and three quarters in circumference, all of gold: this Sceptre is carried before the king or queen-regnant at a coronation.

4. This Sceptre Queen Mary bore, in proceeding to her coronation with her consort, King William: length of the Sceptre, thirty-four inches.

5. An ivory Sceptre, with a Dove on the top, made for King James the Second's queen; it is ornamented in gold, and the dove on the top of gold enamelled white: length of the Sceptre, thirty-seven inches.

6. The coronation Ring.

*The Regalia of England*  
Plate 3.





7. The Queen-consort's Coronation Ring.

8. The golden Orb or Globe, placed in the monarch's right hand before the coronation ; and borne in the left, with the Sceptre in the right after the ceremony. The orb is a ball of gold, six inches in diameter, encompassed with a band or fillet of gold, embellished with roses of diamonds, encircling other precious stones, and edged with pearls. On the top is a remarkably fine amethyst of an oval form, near an inch and a half in height, which is the base or pedestal of a cross of gold, three and a quarter inches high, incrusted with diamonds, and adorned with a sapphire, an emerald, and several large pearls. The whole height of the orb and cross is eleven inches.

9. The Queen-consort's Circle, worn in proceeding to her coronation.

There are also exhibited among the Regalia at the Tower, the golden spurs worn by King George IV. at his coronation, the massive tankards, out of one of which he drank at the banquet in Westminster Hall, and other splendid ornaments of the table used on that occasion.

---

### The Regalia of Scotland.

It was under the direction of his late majesty, George the Fourth, that search was made, in 1817, in the crown-room of the castle of Edinburgh, for the insignia of the royalty and ancient independence of Scotland ; respecting which much mystery had long existed. The result of this research gave great satisfaction to the antiquary, and more particularly to the people of Scotland.

The CROWN is supposed to be the same with which Bruce was crowned in the year 1306 ; the old Regalia having previously been taken away, at the degradation of Baliol, in 1296, by King Edward I. It is of an elegant

form, the lower part being a golden diadem of two circles, embellished with pearls and precious stones; the upper circle surmounted by fleurs-de-lis and crosses fleury, interchanged with large pearls alternately. The arches of gold with enamelled figures, crossing each other, and surmounted by a ball of gold enamelled, over which is a cross pattée of pearls, were added by James V. The cap is of crimson velvet, turned up with ermine, and decorated with pearls. See P. 4, n. 2.

The SCEPTRE is a slender rod of silver, thirty-two inches in length, with three figures at the head representing the Virgin Mary, Saint Andrew, and Saint James, surmounted by a ball of rock crystal, &c. P. 4, n. 3. This was made in the reign of James, at the time of the alteration of the crown, and was used by the Lord Chancellor to touch Acts of Parliament, in token of the royal assent.

The SWORD OF STATE is of beautiful workmanship, and was presented to James IV. by Pope Julius II. The hilt is of silver gilded, and the cross beautifully adorned with filagree-work. P. 4, n. 4. The sheath and belt are also of exquisite taste, and beautifully ornamented.

The last Scottish coronation ceremony which took place was that of Charles II. at Scone, 1651, when the crown was borne by the unfortunate Argyle, who soon after died on the scaffold, and at the place of execution said, "I placed the crown on the *King's head*, and in reward he brings *mine* to the block."

So many important and interesting particulars are attached to the history of the Scottish Regalia, that we regret the limits of this treatise prevent our entering into more minute details.

The ancient relics of Scotland's regality, from which the accompanying illustrations have been taken, are now placed in the Castle of Edinburgh, in the charge of four commissioners—the *Keeper of the Great Seal*, the *Lord Privy Seal*, the *Lord Justice-Clerk*, and the *Lord Advocate*, with a deputy-keeper, and under him two

Royal Arms.



Royal of Scotland.





yeomen keepers, wearing the dress of the ancient yeomen of the guards, who, by the gracious and generous permission of her Majesty, have the liberty of exhibiting the Regalia to the public.

THE PRINCE OF WALES.

SINCE the union with Scotland, his title hath been "Prince of Great Britain, but ordinarily created Prince of Wales;" and as eldest son to the King or Queen-regnant of England, he is Duke of Cornwall from his birth, as likewise Duke of Rothesay, and Seneschal of Scotland.

At his creation he is presented before the sovereign in his surcoat, cloak, and mantle, of crimson velvet, being girt with a belt of the same, and the monarch places a cap and coronet upon his head, composed of a circle or fillet of gold relevated with four crosses pattée, and as many fleurs-de-lis; and from the two crosses pattée arise two semicircular bars, conjoined by a pedestal, and surmounted with a mound, thereon a cross pattée; the whole being enriched with jewels and precious stones; and within it is a lining, or cap of crimson velvet, turned up with ermine. See P. 9, n. 2.

A ring is worn on his middle finger, a staff of gold is in his hand, and also his letters patent, after they are read.

His mantle of creation, which he wears at royal coronations, is doubled below the elbow with ermine, spotted diamondwise; but the robe which he wears in parliament is adorned on the shoulders with five bars or guards of ermine, set at a distance one from the other, with gold lace above each bar.

The younger sons of the sovereigns of England are by courtesy styled princes by birth, as are all their daughters princesses; and the title of royal highness is given to all the king's children, both sons and daughters.

## DUKE.

THE title and degree of a duke is of more ancient standing in other countries than with us ; for at the time of the Conquest, the king himself was Duke of Normandy ; which, perhaps was the reason that neither he, nor his successors for several ages, thought fit to raise a subject to so high a dignity.

The first duke we meet with in England, properly so called, was Edward, surnamed the Black Prince, eldest son to King Edward III., whom his father, on the 17th March, 1337, created in parliament Duke of Cornwall ; by which creation the first-born sons of the sovereign of England are Dukes of Cornwall from their birth.

A duke is said to be so called from *dux*, a leader or captain, because the *duces* of the ancient Romans were leaders of an army, and chosen in the field, either by casting lots, or by the common voice ; but now the dignity of duke is generally conferred by kings and princes, and descends to the heir ; though in some nations sovereigns are so called, as Duke of Savoy, Brunswick, &c.

The ceremony of creating a duke in England is as follows : "he must have on his surcoat, cloak, and hood, and be led between two dukes, an earl going somewhat before him on the right hand, bearing a cap of state with the coronet on it ; see P. 9, n. 6 ; (which cap is of crimson velvet, lined with ermine, and the coronet gold), but the cap must not be indented, as that of the prince ; and on the other side must go an earl, bearing a golden rod or verge : and before the duke that is to be created shall go a marquis, bearing the sword ; and before him an earl with the mantle, or robe of estate, lying on his arm ; which mantle is the same as that of the prince, being fine scarlet cloth, lined with white taffeta, and is doubled on the shoulders with four guards of ermine at equal distance, with a gold lace above each guard to difference it from that of the prince, which has five guards and laces ; and being attired as aforesaid, in his surcoat, cloak, &c., and

by the said peers (who must be in their robes of state) conducted into the presence-chamber, after the oath, obeisance being made three times to the king sitting in his chair of state, the person so vested kneeleth down, and Garter king of arms delivering his patent to the king's secretary, he delivereth it to the king, who delivers it again to be read aloud ; and at the word *investimus*, the king puts a duke's mantle (as before described) upon the person who is to be so made ; and at the words *gladio cincturamus*, girts him with a sword ; at *cappæ et circuli aurei impositionem*, the king, in like manner, puts upon his head the cap with the coronet ; and at these words, *vergæ aureæ traditionem*, the king giveth the verge of gold and the rod into his hand ; then is the rest of the patent read wherein he pronounceth him duke, after which the king giveth the patent to the duke to be kept."

The mantle which a duke wears at the coronation of a king or queen over his surcoat, &c., is of crimson velvet, lined with white taffeta, and is doubled with ermine below the elbow, and spotted with four rows of spots on each shoulder.

A duke may have, in all places out of the king's or prince's presence, a cloth of state hanging down within half a yard of the ground ; and so may his duchess, who may have her train borne by a baroness.

All dukes' eldest sons, by the courtesy of England, are from their birth styled marquises if their fathers enjoy that title, and the younger sons, lords, with the addition of their Christian name, as lord Thomas, lord James, &c. ; and all dukes' daughters are styled ladies.

A duke hath the title of grace ; and in formal superscriptions or addresses is styled, most high, potent, and noble prince ; and dukes of the royal blood, most high, most mighty, and illustrious princes.

## MARQUIS.

A MARQUIS, which by the Saxons was called *markenreve*, and signified a governor or ruler of marches and frontier countries, hath been a title with us but of late years, the first being Robert Vere, Earl of Oxford, who, by King Richard II., in 1387, was created Marquis of Dublin, and from thence it became a title of honour; for, in former times, those that governed the marches were called lord marchers, and not marquises.

The ceremony in creating a marquis is the same as used in the creation of a duke, except that he is led by a marquis, and his sword and cap borne by earls; the coronet of which cap is partly flowered, and partly pyramidal, with pearls on the points and leaves, of an equal height; that of a duke hath only leaves, and his mantle four guards; that of a marquis has but three guards and a half. Plate 9, n. 7.

His oath is the same as that of a duke, as is his coronation mantle, with only this difference—his mantle has four rows of spots on the right shoulder and but three on the left: whereas a duke's has four rows on each.

The honour of marquis is hereditary, as is that of a duke, earl, viscount, and baron; and the eldest son of a marquis, by the courtesy of England, is called earl, or lord of a place; but the younger sons only lord by their Christian names, as lord John, &c.; and the daughters of marquises are born ladies; the eldest son of a marquis ranks next beneath an earl.

## EARL.

THE next degree of honour is an earl, which title came from the Saxons; for in the ancient Anglo-Saxon government, earldoms of counties were not only dignities of honour, but offices of justice, having the charge and custody of the county whereof they were earls, and for assistance having their deputy, called *vicecomes*, which office is now

managed by sheriffs. The first earl in Britain that was invested by girding with the sword, was Hugh de Pusaz, Bishop of Durham, who, by King Richard the First, was created Earl of Northumberland.

An earl's robes nowise differ from a duke's or marquis's, except that a duke's mantle has four guards, a marquis's three and a half, and an earl's but three, with a gold lace : and his coronation mantle is the same as theirs, with only this difference—a duke has four rows of spots on each shoulder ; a marquis four on the right, and but three on the left; and an earl has but three on each. His cap is also the same, but his coronet is different ; for as a duke's has only leaves, a marquis's leaves and pearls of equal height, his has the pearls much higher than the leaves. Plate 9, n. 8.

When an earl is to be created, he is attired in his cloak, surcoat, &c., being led between two earls, and three others going before, all in their robes of state, of whom the first bears the sword and girdle, the second the mantle, and the third the cap and coronet ; and after the oath taken, which is the same with that of a duke and marquis, he being conducted into the presence-chamber (the king sitting on his throne), kneels down while the patent is reading. Then is the mantle of state put on him by the king, the sword girt about him, the cap and coronet put upon his head, and the patent of his creation delivered into his hand.

After a man is created an earl, viscount, or any other title of honour, above the title he enjoyed before, it becomes part of his name, and not an addition only ; and in all legal proceedings he ought to be styled by that of his dignity. An earl has the title of lordship ; and, being written to, is styled right honourable.

By the courtesy of England, an earl's eldest son is born a viscount (and is called lord of some place), and all his daughters are ladies ; but his younger sons have no title of peerage.

## VISCOUNT.

THE next degree of honour to an earl is that of viscount, which was anciently an office under an earl, who, being the king's immediate officer in his county, and his personal attendance being often required at court, had his deputy to look after the affairs of the county, which officer is now called a sheriff, retaining the name of his substitution (in Latin vicecomes); but about the 18th of Henry VI., 1440, it became a degree of honour, by his conferring this title upon John Lord Beaumont, by letters patent, with the same ceremony as that of an earl, marquis, and duke.

A viscount, at his creation, has a hood, surcoat, mantle, verge, cap, and coronet, and his mantle has two guards and a half, each having a gold lace; his coronation mantle has three rows of spots on the right shoulder, and two on the left.

His coronet, which is a circle of gold, is adorned with twelve silver balls. Plate 9, n. 9.

The title of a viscount is, right honourable and truly noble, or potent lord.

The eldest son of a viscount has no title of peerage, nor are his daughters ladies; but the eldest son and daughter of the first viscount in Great Britain and Ireland are said to be the first gentleman and gentlewoman without a title in the kingdom.

## ARCHBISHOPS AND BISHOPS.

THE two archbishops have superintendence over all the churches of England, and in some respects over the other bishops; and the Archbishop of Canterbury has a kind of supereminence over the Archbishop of York; for he has power to summon him to a national synod or convocation, and is primate of all England, and next in rank to the royal family; precedes not only dukes, but all the great officers of the crown; nor does any, except the lord

chancellor, or lord keeper, come between him and the Archbishop of York.

He is "*primate and metropolitan of all England,*" and has the title of grace given him, and most reverend father in God.

To the Archbishop of Canterbury it properly belongs to crown the sovereign, to consecrate a new-made bishop, and to call provincial synods : the Bishop of London being accounted his provincial dean, the Bishop of Winchester his chancellor, and the Bishop of Rochester his chaplain.

The Archbishop of York, who is "*primate of England, and metropolitan of his province,*" hath the honour to crown the queen-consort, and to be her perpetual chaplain : he hath also the title of grace, and most reverend father in God.

Next to the two archbishops in the episcopal college, the bishops of London, Durham, and Winchester have always the precedence, by a statute made 21 Hen. VIII.; and all the other bishops according to the priority of their consecrations.

The Bishop of London precedes, as being bishop of the capital city of England, and provincial dean of Canterbury ; the Bishop of Durham, as count palatine, and Earl of Sedberg ; and the Bishop of Winchester, as prelate of the order of the Garter.

All bishops (as spiritual barons) are said to be three ways barons of the realm, viz. by writ, patent, and consecration ; they precede all under the degree of viscounts, having always their seat on the sovereign's right hand in the parliament-house ; and being the fathers and guardians of the church, they are styled fathers in God.

As the two archbishops are called most reverend, and have the title of grace, so the inferior bishops are called right reverend, and have the title of lordship given them.

A bishop's robe, in parliament, is of fine scarlet cloth, having a long train, and is doubled on the shoulders with miniver, edged with white ermine, as is the bosom ; and

when he goes to the House of Lords (the sovereign being there), his train is supported by four chaplains to the door of the house; after which, by a red riband fixed to the end of the train and tied in a loop, he supports it himself, the loop being put over his right wrist; and in that form he takes his seat, having a four-square cap on his head.

#### BARONS.

A TEMPORAL baron is an hereditary dignity of nobility and honour next to a bishop; and of this degree there are two sorts in England, viz. a baron by writ, and a baron by patent.

A baron by writ is he unto whom a writ of summons in the name of the sovereign is directed, without a patent of creation, to come to the parliament, appointed to be holden at a certain time and place, and there to treat and advise with his sovereign, the prelates, and nobility, about the weighty affairs of the nation.

The ceremony of a baron by writ is this: "He is first brought by Garter king of arms in his sovereign's coat to the lord chancellor, between two of the youngest barons, who wear the robe of the baron; there he shows his prescript, which the chancellor reads, then congratulates him as a baron, and invests him with the robe: and the writ being delivered to the clerk of the parliament, the baron is showed to the barons by the king of arms, and placed in their house; and from thence is this title allowed him as hereditary, and descendible to the heir-general."

The first institutor of a baron by patent was King Richard II., who in the year 1388, the eleventh of his reign, created John Beauchamp, of Holt Castle, Baron of Kidderminster, and invested him with a surcoat, mantle, hood, cape, and verge. A baron has but two guards and laces on each shoulder; and his coronation mantle has but two rows of spots on each shoulder.

A baron had no coronet till the reign of King Charles

the Second when he was adorned with a circle of gold, and six silver balls set close to the rim, but without jewels, as now borne. P. 9, n. 10.

The form of creating a baron by patent was formerly thus:—"The king sitting in state in the presence-chamber, first advance the heralds by two and two, and then the principal king of arms alone, bearing in his hand the patent of creation, and a baron the robe; and then the person to be created follows betwixt two other barons, who, having entered the presence-chamber, made obeisance to the king three times; after which the king of arms delivereth the patent to the lord chamberlain of the household, and he to the king, and the king to one of his principal secretaries of state, who, reading it aloud, at the word *investimus*, the king puts on him the baron's robe. When the patent is read, the king gives it to him that is created, who, returning thanks for his great honour, withdraws." Now it is simply by the delivery of the patent.

A barony by patent goes to the heir-male, being almost universally so limited. But a barony by writ goes to the heirs-general; and in case of more female heirs than one, it becomes in abeyance; when the king may make his option, and grant it to which of them he thinks fit.

## PRIVILEGES OF PEERS.

THE nobility of England enjoy many great privileges, the principal of which are as follow:—

They are free from all arrests for debt, as being the king's hereditary counsellors: therefore a peer cannot be outlawed in any civil action; and no attachment lies against his person; but execution may be taken upon his lands and goods. For the same reason they are free from all attendance at court-leet, or sheriffs' torns; or, in case of a riot, from attending the *posse comitatus*.

In criminal causes they are tried by their peers, who give their verdict not upon oath, as other juries, but upon

their honour. A court is built on purpose, in the middle of Westminster Hall, which is pulled down when their trials are over.

To secure the honour of, and prevent the spreading of any scandal upon peers, or any great officer of the realm, by reports, there is an express law, called *scandalum magnatum*, by which any man convicted of making a scandalous report against a peer of the realm, though true, is condemned to a fine, and to remain in prison till the same be paid.

---

## Knighthood

### THE MOST NOBLE ORDER OF THE GARTER.

ACCORDING to the most authentic accounts, this most ancient and noble order was instituted by King Edward III., anno 1350, the 24th year of his reign.\*

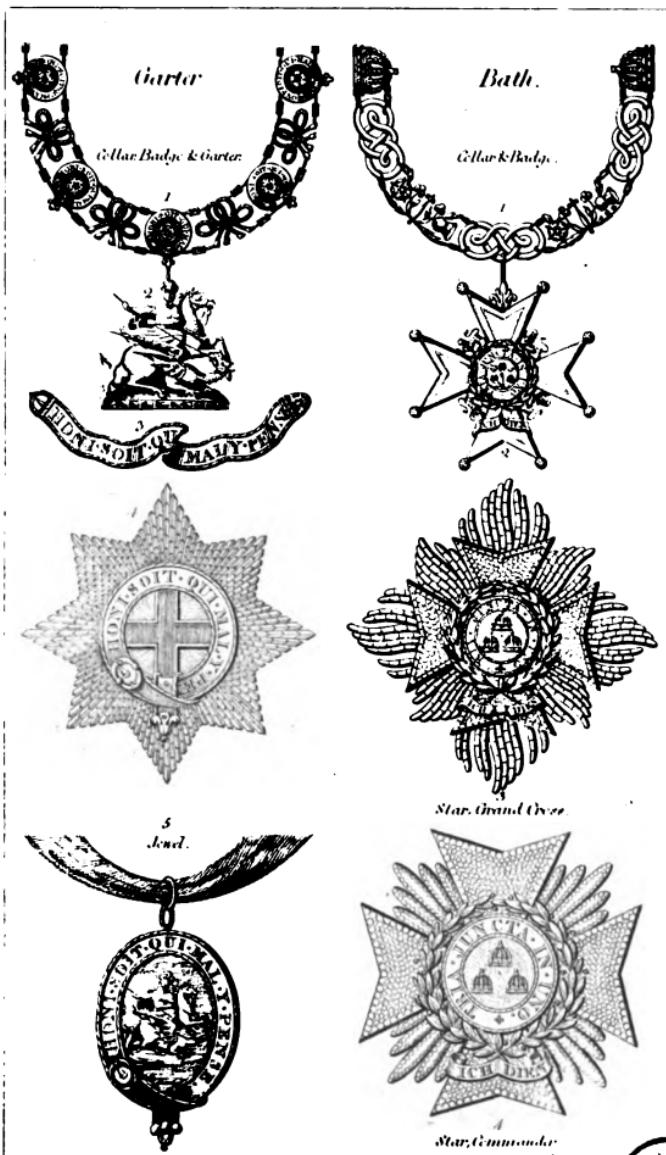
Respecting the pristine institution, it seems that the English monarch, having engaged in a war against France, to obtain that crown, which he claimed as descended to him in right of his mother, thought fit to allure to his party all such brave men as were eminent commanders and soldiers of fortune, with the view of exciting a spirit of emulation and military genius among his nobility. To this end he erected a round table in the castle of Windsor, in imitation of King Arthur's at Winchester; and here the numerous guests were exercised at tilts and tournaments, and royally entertained with magnificent feasts, to attach them to the king's party. On the return of his

---

\* The patron, St. George, was a person of great renown and chivalry, who, according to the learned Selden, suffered martyrdom at Lydia, under Dioclesian. His fame was so great, that many temples and monasteries were dedicated to him in the Eastern countries, whence his reputation reached England, where his memory is still annually celebrated on the 23rd day of April, commonly called St. George's day.

# KNIGHTHOOD.

PL.





Majesty from his victorious expedition into France, he rewarded those knights who had served him valiantly with this distinguished badge or order; the total number so honoured being twenty-six, of which his Majesty himself was one.

Some authors assert, that, in 1347, the same king displaying his garter as the signal of a battle which was crowned with success, (supposed to be Cressy, where he took John, King of France, prisoner) gave rise to this order; but the King of France was not taken prisoner at the battle of Cressy, but at Poictiers, which took place some time after, and at which King Edward himself was not present; the English army being commanded in chief, on that occasion, by the Prince of Wales, his son, surnamed the Black Prince.

A romantic story has also obtained credence, that the fair Countess of Salisbury, in dancing with King Edward, let fall her garter, which the king took up, and tied round his own leg; at which the queen being jealous, or the courtiers smiling, he restored it to its fair owner, giving as a motto—

“*Honi soit qui mal y pense.*”

“Evil be to him (or her) who evil thinks of it.”

This order, which has ever been considered as the highest in rank and dignity in the world, and with which kings and princes of all nations have deemed it most honourable to be invested, consists of the sovereign and twenty-five companions, called knights of the Garter. There are besides five principal officers; the prelate, annexed to the see of Winchester; the chancellor, annexed to the see of Salisbury; registrar, the dean of Windsor; Garter king of arms; and usher, or black rod. Of these the *prelate* is the principal, whose office is ancient as the institution. William de Edynton, then bishop of Winchester, was the first prelate; from which time his successors, bishops of Winchester, have continued prelates to this day. The prelate is obliged to wear the habit of the order yearly, on

the vigil and day of St. George, whether it be in parliament, or on any other solemn occasion and festival.

With respect to the chancellor, at the first institution of this order the common seal was ordained to remain in the custody of whatsoever knight companion the king should please. But King Edward IV. finding it necessary to settle the office of chancellor of the Garter on a person distinct from the knights companions, yet subservient to them, in a chapter holden at Westminster, the 16th of his reign, ordered that the seal should be delivered to Richard de Beauchamp, bishop of Salisbury, during pleasure ; and not long afterwards, by letters patent, by reason that the chapel of Windsor was within the diocese of Salisbury, the said Richard de Beauchamp was ordained chancellor for life ; and it was farther ordained that, after his decease, his successors, bishops of Salisbury, should always have and hold the said office of chancellor.

King Edward VI., however, in the 7th year of his reign, ordained that this high office should not be executed by an ecclesiastic, but by a knight of known extraction, sufficient abilities, and of honour untainted ; whereupon Sir William Cecil, then principal secretary of state, was made chancellor of the garter ; and so this office continued, until King Charles I., by the unanimous consent of the knights companions, declared that the bishop of Salisbury and his successors should for ever have and execute the office of chancellor of the Garter, and should succeed thereto immediately upon the first vacancy : from which period the bishops of this see have continued to preside as chancellors.

The office of Registrar was constituted at the first institution. What the first registrar's name was, or who were his successors to the reign of Henry V., are not known ; but from the reign of Henry V. to that of Henry VIII. they were canons of Windsor. The first dean of Windsor constituted registrar was John Vesey, in the 8th of Henry VIII. ; and at a chapter holden at Whitehall, 11th Charles I., that prince was pleased to declare that

the office of the dean and registrar should be united in one and the same person. For the greater honour and splendour of this most noble order, King Henry V., with the advice and consent of the knights companions, instituted the office of Garter King-of-arms, and was pleased to appoint him the principal officer within the office of arms, and chief of all the servants of arms.

The services enjoined by him relating to the order were at first performed by Windsor Herald-at-arms, an officer created with that title by Edward III. much about the time of the institution of this order.

The first person created Garter was Sir William Brugges, who in the institution of his office is called “*Jartier Roy d’Armes d’Anglois* ;” but his title otherwise runs “*Dictus Gartier Rex Armorum*.” John Smart was successor to Brugges, and had this office given him by patent under the title of “*Rex Armorum de Garteria* ;” and John Wrythe was styled “*Principalis Heraldus et Officiarius inditi ordinis Garterii Armorum Rex Anglicorum*.” But Sir Gilbert Dethic, leaving out “*Heraldus*,” joined “*Principalis*” with “*Rex*,” and so it has since continued “*Principalis Rex Armorum*” (principal King-of-arms).

There was assigned by Queen Elizabeth a badge of gold, to be daily worn by the King-of-arms and his successors on his breast, in a gold chain or riband, and thereon enamelled the sovereign’s arms with an imperial crown, and both surrounded with a princely garter; but Sir Edward Walker, when Garter, obtained leave to impale therein St. George’s arms with those of the sovereign.

The office of Usher of the Black Rod was likewise instituted by the founder, and was granted by him to William Whitehorse, Esq., for life, and was then termed “*Officium Hospiarii Capellæ Regis infra Castrum de Windsore*.” In the 3rd of Henry IV. this office is called “*Officium Virgarii comitivæ de la infra Castrum Regis de Windesore*.”

In the next patent to John Athelbrigg, 1st Henry V., it is altered to “*Officium Virgarii sive Ostrarii*,” &c. And

afterwards “Officium Virgæ Baculi coram Rege ad Festum Sancti Georgii infra Castrum Regis de Windesore ;” and ever since it has passed in patent by the name of “Virgæ Baculus Virgarius,” or “Nigri Virgifer.” But in the constitutions of the office he has the title given him of Horsiarius, and is also there required to be a gentleman of blood and arms ; and if not a knight at his entrance into office, he is to be knighted by the sovereign.

As Garter was declared the principal officer of arms, this officer was appointed chief usher in the kingdom, and so called Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod.

In a chapter holden at Whitehall, 13th Charles II., this office was fixed to one of the gentlemen ushers daily waiters at court, the eldest of whom is properly called Gentleman Daily Waiter and Black Rod. His employment in general, besides what relates to the order of the Garter, is attendance in the House of Lords, and also among the officers of the court. In the 8th of Elizabeth there was assigned him a gold badge, to be openly worn in a gold chain or riband on his breast, composed of one of the knots in the collar of the Garter which tie the roses together and encompass the garter on both sides.

The first elected by King Edward into the most noble order of the Garter was Edward, his eldest son, surnamed the Black Prince ; and the rest of his accomplished companions were these that follow, and who are thus placed in their stalls :

1. The Sovereign, King Edward III.
2. Edward, Prince of Wales.
3. Henry, Duke of Lancaster.
4. Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.
5. Piers, Captain de Beuch.
6. Ralph Stafford, Earl of Stafford.
7. William Montacute, Earl of Salisbury.
8. Roger Mortimer, Earl of March.
9. Sir John Lisle.
10. Sir Bartholomew Burghersh.
11. Sir John Beauchamp.
12. Sir John Mohun.
13. Sir Hugh Courtenay.

14. Sir Thomas Holland.
15. Sir John Grey.
16. Sir Richard Fitz-Simon.
17. Sir Miles Stapleton.
18. Sir Thomas Wall.
19. Sir Hugh Wrotesley.
20. Sir Nele Lorin.
21. Sir John Chandos.
22. Sir James Audley.
23. Sir Otho Holland.
24. Sir Henry Earn.
25. Sir Saue Daubrichcourt.
26. Sir Walter Pavely.

From this account, it appears that the persons who were distinguished by this honour were not all of the nobility, although at the present day this high and most honourable badge of distinction is only bestowed on the chief ranks of the peerage.

In their stalls they are placed according to their seniority, and not according to their dignities and titles of honour: hence a knight bachelor in former days has taken precedence of a duke, as Sir Henry Lee knt. had precedence of the Duke of Lenox, in the time of James I.

By a chapter holden 3rd June, 1786, a new statute was ordained, that the order should consist of the sovereign and twenty-five knights companions, exclusive of the sons of his Majesty or his successors, who had been, or might be, elected knights thereof.

Edward III. connected with the order a number of poor or alms-knights, men of rank and merit, who had not the means of living nobly; an institution which is still continued, the members of which were long known under the title of Poor Knights of Windsor.

The habit and insignia of the order are, garter, surcoat, mantle, hood, george, collar, cap, and feathers. THE GARTER, of dark-blue velvet edged with gold, bearing the motto, "HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE," in letters of gold, with buckle and pendant of richly-chased gold, is worn on the left leg below the knee. P. 1, n. 3. THE MANTLE is of blue velvet lined with taffeta; on the left

breast is embroidered the STAR. P. 1, n. 4. THE SURCOAT, or kirtle, is of crimson velvet, lined with white taffeta. The hood affixed to the mantle is also of crimson velvet. THE HAT is of black velvet lined with white taffeta, and adorned with a large plume of white ostrich feathers, with a tuft of black heron's feathers in the centre, affixed to the hat by a band of diamonds. THE COLLAR is of gold, composed of twenty-six pieces (in allusion to the number of knights), each in the form of a garter, enamelled blue, with the motto. P. 1, n. 1. To which is appended the BADGE, or figure of St. George on horseback. P. 1, n. 2. THE JEWEL (P. 1, n. 5) is worn in common, pendent to a broad dark-blue riband, over the left shoulder.

#### THE MOST HONOURABLE MILITARY ORDER OF THE BATH.

KNIGHTS OF THE BATH, so called from part of the ceremony at their creation, were commonly made at the coronation of a king or queen, or at the creation of a prince or duke of the blood royal.

In the reign of Henry IV. there was a degree of knighthood specified under the express appellation of Knights of the Bath. That king, on the day of his coronation, in the Tower of London, conferred the honour on forty-six esquires, who had watched all the night before, and had *bathed* themselves. Mr. Selden thinks this order more ancient than the time of Henry IV.; and Mr. Ashmole is of opinion that the said king did not constitute, but rather that he restored, the ancient manner of making knights, for formerly knights bachelors were created by ecclesiastics with the like ceremonies; which, however, were by King Henry IV. made peculiar to the degree of knights of the Bath.

After the coronation of Charles II., who created sixty-eight knights, the order was neglected till the year 1725, when George I. was pleased to revive and re-organise it, to consist of the sovereign, grand-master, and thirty-six companions. That king allowed the chapel of King

Henry VII. to be the chapel of the order, and directed that each knight's banner, with plates of his arms and style, should be placed over the several stalls, in like manner as over those of the knights of the Garter in St. George's chapel at Windsor; and he allowed them supporters to their arms. His Royal Highness Prince William, second son to the Prince of Wales, on this occasion was made the first knight companion; his Grace the Duke of Montague, grandmaster; and the Dean of Westminster (for the time being) dean of the order. The other officers are, Bath King-of-arms, a genealogist, a registrar, a secretary, a gentleman-usher, and a messenger.

Several alterations have since been made. In January, 1815, it was ordained that "for the purpose of commemorating the auspicious termination of the long and arduous contests in which this empire had been engaged," the order should be composed of three classes.

**THE FIRST CLASS** to consist of not exceeding seventy-two knights grand crosses, exclusive of the sovereign and princes of the blood.

**SECOND CLASS.** KNIGHTS COMMANDERS to be entitled to the distinctive appellation of knighthood, and to have the same rights and privileges as knights bachelors, taking precedence of them; they wear the BADGE pendent by a red riband, instead of collar, round the neck (P. 1, n. 2), and the star embroidered on the left side. P. 1, n. 4. Those persons only are eligible either to this or the first class who are not below the rank of major-general in the army, or rear-admiral in the navy, excepting twelve of the number, who may be appointed for civil or diplomatic services.

**THIRD CLASS.** COMPANIONS OF THE ORDER take precedence of esquires, but are not entitled to the appellation of knights bachelors. The BADGE (P. 1, n. 2) is worn pendent by a narrow red riband to the button-hole.

The BADGE is commonly pendent by a ring to a broad red riband over the right shoulder, hanging on the left side; but on particular occasions it is worn pendent to the

collar. P. 1, n. 1 and 2. The SURCOATS are of red taffeta, lined with white, and girt with a white kirtle. The MANTLE is also the same as the surcoat, with the STAR (P. 1, n. 3) on the left breast. Motto, "TRIA JUNCTA IN UNO."

#### THE MOST ANCIENT ORDER OF THE THISTLE

Is supposed to have been instituted by king Achaius on the occasion of a bright cross, similar to that on which the patron, St. Andrew, suffered martyrdom, appearing in the heavens to him and Hurgus, king of the Picts, on the night previous to the battle gained by them over Athelstan, king of England. Some have thought the order of even later date. It was, however, revived in 1540, by James V. of Scotland; again by James II. of England, in 1679; and subsequently by Queen Anne and King George I.; since which it has been several times re-organised. The order consisted of the sovereign and twelve knights until the reign of King George IV., who, by royal warrant at his coronation, increased the number of knights to sixteen. The COLLAR has thistles and sprigs of rue and gold enamelled (P. 2, n. 1), to which is appended the BADGE. N. 2. The STAR is worn on the left side, N. 3; and the JEWEL is pendent to a green riband over the left shoulder, tied under the arm. N. 4. Motto, "NEMO ME IMPUNE LACESSET." The officers of this order are—a secretary, an usher of the green rod, Lion king of arms, and pursuivants.

#### THE MOST ILLUSTRIOUS ORDER OF ST. PATRICK

Was instituted by King George III., Feb. 5, 1783, and consists of the sovereign, grandmaster, a prince of the blood royal, and fifteen knights; the lord lieutenant of Ireland, *pro tempore*, being grandmaster.

The officers of the order are, the Lord Primate the Archbishop of Armagh, prelate; the Archbishop of Dublin, chancellor; the Dean of St. Patrick, registrar; a secretary; a genealogist; an usher of the green rod; Ulster, king of arms; and Athlone, pursuivant of arms.

KNIGHTHOOD.

P.2



*Thistle.*

*Collar & Badge.*



*S. Patrick.*

*Collar & Badge.*



3



3



*Jewel.*



*Jewel.*





THE COLLAR is of pure gold, composed of six harps and five roses alternately joined together by twelve knots ; in the centre is a crown, and pendent thereto by a harp is the BADGE. P. 2. n. 1 and 2. The STAR is of silver embroidery, upon a circular centre *or*, a cross saltire *gu.*, surmounted by a trefoil slipped *ppr.*, each leaf charged with a crown *or*, within a circular fillet of gold, with the motto, “*QUIS SEPARABIT.*” P. 2, n. 3. The JEWEL is likewise worn pendent from a light blue riband scarfwise over the right shoulder N. 4.

#### THE ROYAL HANOVERIAN GUELPHIC ORDER

WAS founded by his majesty George IV., when Prince Regent, in 1815, in commemoration of the raising of Hanover into a kingdom, and for rewarding those persons who had performed any signal service to their king and country. His majesty, the King of Hanover, is grandmaster. The order is composed of three classes, into which civil and military men are admitted, viz., grand crosses, commanders, and knights. The BADGES of the military grand crosses, military commanders, and military knights, only differ in size according to their class. P. 3, n. 2.

The BADGES of the civil grand crosses, commanders, and knights are also alike, only differing in size, having a crown upon the upper limb of the cross (without the swords), by which it is suspended, and a wreath of oak-leaves instead of laurel. It is worn on grand occasions suspended from the collar, N. 1 ; but on ordinary occasions it is worn pendent from a sky-blue riband scarfwise. Commanders suspend it by a sky-blue riband worn round the neck, and knights by a riband and gold buckle from the button-hole.

THE STAR worn by the military grand crosses is of eight points, &c., with the motto, “*NEC ASPERA TERRENT.*” N. 3. That worn by the civil grand crosses only differs in the omission of the swords, and a wreath of oak-leaves being substituted for laurel.

The star of the civil commanders differs from the last.  
See P. 3, n. 4.

That of the military commanders is the same, with the addition of the swords, and changing the oak into laurel-leaves.

Until his royal highness the Duke of Cumberland became King of Hanover, this decoration was at the disposal of the sovereign of Great Britain : it is now wholly Hanoverian, under the control of the King of Hanover.

THE MOST DISTINGUISHED ORDER OF ST. MICHAEL  
AND ST. GEORGE

WAS also instituted by his majesty George IV., in 1818, in commemoration of the united states of the Ionian Islands being placed under his sovereign protectorship.

The order is composed of three classes, and consists of the sovereign, a grandmaster, a first and principal knight grand cross, eight grand crosses, twelve knights commanders, and twenty-four knights, exclusive of British subjects holding high and confidential employ in the service of the united states of Malta.

The COLLAR and BADGE (P. 3, n. 1 and 2) are worn round the neck on grand occasions ; but ordinarily the badge is worn pendent from a red riband with blue edges.

The STAR worn by the knights grand crosses is of exquisite taste, and can only be understood by reference to P. 3, n. 3. That worn by the knights commanders is of a similar description, but of less beauty. P. 3, fig. 4. Motto, "AUSPICIUM MELIORIS AËVI."

## KNIGHTHOOD.

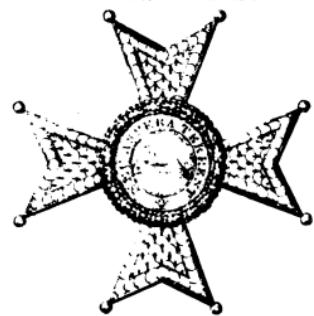
P. 3.



*Star, Military Grand Cross.*



*Star Civil Commander.*



*Star, Commander.*





# BRITISH AND FOREIGN ORDERS,

WITH THEIR

## ABBREVIATIONS.

---

### BRITAIN.

K. G.	Knight of the Garter.
K. T.	Thistle.
K. P.	St. Patrick.
G. C. B.	Grand Cross of the Bath.
K. C. B.	Commander of the Bath.
C. B.	Companion of the Bath.

### HANOVER.

G. C. H.	Knight Grand Cross of the Guelphic Order.
K. C. H.	Commander of the Guelphic Order.
K. H.	of the Guelphic Order.

### AUSTRIA.

K. L.	Knight of Leopold.
K. M. T.	St. Maria Theresa.

### RUSSIA.

K. A.	Knight of St. Andrew.
K. A. N.	Alexander Newski.
K. S. A.	Anne.
K. S. G.	George.
K. S. W.	Wladimir.

### PORUGAL.

K. B. A.	St. Bento d'Avis.
K. T. S.	Knight of the Tower and Sword.

### SPAIN.

K. G. F.	Knight of the Golden Fleece.
K. C. S.	Charles the Third.
K. F.	Ferdinand.
K. H.	Hermenegilde.

## PRUSSIA.

- K. B. E. Knight of the Black Eagle.  
 K. R. E. ——— Red Eagle.  
 K. M. M. ——— Order of Military Merit.  
 K. S. J. ——— St. John.

## SWEDEN.

- K. G. V. Knight of Gustavus Vasa.  
 K. P. S. ——— the Polar Star.  
 K. S. ——— the Sword.

## POLAND.

- K. S. P. Knight of St. Stanislaus.  
 K. W. E. ——— the White Eagle.

- K. C. Knight of the Crescent.—TURKEY.  
 K. E. ——— Elephant.—DENMARK.  
 K. S. F. ——— St. Ferdinand and Merit—SICILY.  
 K. S. C. ——— Constantine and St. George.  
 K. J. ——— St. Januarius—NAPLES.  
 K. M. ——— MALTA.  
 K. M. H. ——— Merit in HOLSTEIN.  
 K. M. J. ——— Maximilian Joseph—BAVARIA.  
 K. S. E. ——— St. Esprit—FRANCE.  
 K. S. L. ——— Sun and Lion—PERSIA.  
 K. W. ——— William—NETHERLANDS.  
 K. S. M. G. ——— St. Michael and St. George—IONIAN  
ISLANDS.  
 K. S. M. ——— St. Maurice—SARDINIA.  
 K. S. H. ——— Hubert.  
 K. G. C. Knight Grand Cross of the Order of Cruziero—  
BRAZILS.  
 K. H. G. Knight of the Holy Ghost—FRANCE.  
 K. S. L. ——— St. Louis of France.  
 K. A. Annunciation of SARDINIA.  
 K. S. J. St. Joseph—TUSCANY.

N.B. No British subject is allowed to wear the insignia of any foreign order, without first obtaining her Majesty's permission; and no license or permission subsequent to March, 1813, to wear the insignia of those orders in England, authorises the assumption of any style, appellation, rank, precedence, privilege, &c., appertaining to a knight bachelor of the United Kingdom.

## KNIGHTS-BANNERETS.

THIS degree of knighthood is of very ancient date. It has been used in England ever since the reign of Edward I., and usually bestowed on the most deserving persons, distinguished by their gallantry and reputation in the wars. The ceremony used at their creation is very glorious, and performed by the king (or his general, which is very rare,) at the head of his army, drawn up in battalia, after a victory, under the royal standard displayed, attended by all the field-officers and nobility of the court then in the army.

Knights-bannerets take place before the younger sons of all viscounts and barons, and also precede baronets, and are allowed to bear their arms with supporters, which is denied to all others under the degree of a baron, unless they be knights companions of any of the established orders.

In the year 1773, at a review of the royal navy at Portsmouth, his majesty George III. conferred this honourable title on several flag-officers, viz., Admirals Pye and Sprye, and on Captains Knight, Bickerton, and Vernon. But this was not according to the original institution, viz., "by the king in person, at the head of his army, under the royal banner displayed, on occasion of some glorious victory."

## BARONETS.

THIS title was originally instituted by King James I., the 22nd of May, 1611, by letters patent under the great seal, to feed his unpardonable profusion, although under the specious plea of assisting him in the reduction of Ulster. The whole order was designed by the founder not to exceed two hundred persons; of which, if any became extinct for want of male heirs, no new creations should be made even to fill the vacancies. King James indeed never exceeded the number, except by four in the room of the same number who were elevated to the peerage.

But the great rule of the institution was, that none should be admitted unless upon good proof that they were men for quality, state of living, and good reputation, worthy of it; and, at the least, descended of a grandfather, by the father's side, that bore arms, and had also a clear revenue in lands of at least 1000*l.* per annum.

Those who are conversant with the personal history of the kingdom, and will read over the first list, will be readily convinced that it was highly respectable, and that these requisites were complied with.

In the reign of Charles II., however, this list of baronets was increased to 888; and since the reign of George II., the number has been unlimited, and the qualifications necessary for admission into this order have been frequently dispensed with.

The order of baronets in Scotland was also projected by King James, for the plantation and cultivation of the province of Nova Scotia, in America; and his son, Charles I., executed his father's plan of institution, soon after his accession to the throne, the first person dignified with this order being Sir Robert Gordon, of Gordonstow, whose patent bears date May 28, 1625.

#### KNIGHTS BACHELORS.

THIS honour was formerly in very high esteem; but the original institution being perverted, it is now conferred indiscriminately upon gownsmen, burghers, physicians, and others, by the sovereign's lightly touching the person, who is then kneeling, on the right shoulder with a drawn sword, and saying, "Rise, Sir —," mentioning the Christian name.

This honour has lost much of its ancient dignity, which once was very eminent; and the qualifications for it were such, that no trader could be created, nor any one of a servile condition. It was then requisite that he should be brave, expert, well-behaved, and of good morals. A candidate for knighthood being approved of, he presented himself in the church, confessed his sins, had absolution

given him ; he heard mass, watched his arms all night, placed his sword on the altar, which was returned by the priest, who gave him his benediction ; the sacrament was administered to him, and, having bathed, he was dressed in rich robes, and his spurs and sword put on. He then appeared before his chief, who dubbed him a knight, after the same manner, in fact, as the knights bachelors are at this time made. The whole ceremony then concluded with feasting and rejoicing.

Knighthood is not hereditary, but acquired. It does not come into the world with a man, like nobility ; nor can it be revoked. It was anciently the custom to knight every man of rank and fortune, that he might be qualified to give challenges, to fight in the lists, and to perform feats of arms. The sons of kings, and kings themselves, with all other sovereigns, in former days had knighthood conferred on them as a mark of honour. They were usually knighted at their baptism, or marriage, at their coronation, or before battle.

## ESQUIRE.

A TITLE of honour above a gentleman and below a knight. This appellation, termed in Latin *armiger*, or *scutarius*, served anciently to denote such as were bearers of arms, or carried the shield ; and was accordingly considered as a title of office only, until the reign of Richard II. ; though little mention is made of this, or the addition of gentleman, in ancient deeds, till the time of Henry V., when, by a statute in the first year of that monarch, it was enacted, that in all cases where process of outlawry lay, the additions of the estate, degree, or profession of the defendant should be inserted.

This statute having made it necessary to ascertain who was entitled to this degree, it was laid down as a general rule, that there were seven sorts of esquires ; viz. :—

1st, Esquires of the king's body, limited to the number of four ; who kept the door of the king's bedchamber, when he pleased to go to bed, walked at a coronation, and

had precedence of all knights' younger sons. They are now *disused*.

2dly, The eldest sons of knights, and their eldest sons successively.

3dly, The eldest sons of the youngest sons of barons, and others of the greater nobility.

4thly, Such as the sovereign invests with collars of SS, as the kings at arms, heralds, &c., or shall grant silver or white spurs to ; the eldest sons of those last-mentioned may also bear the title.

5thly, Esquires to the knights of the Bath, being their attendants on their installation ; these must bear coat-armour, according to the law of arms, are esquires for life, and also their eldest sons, and have the same privileges as the esquires of the king's body.

6thly, Sheriffs of counties and justices of peace (with this distinction, that a sheriff, in regard to the dignity of the office, is an esquire for life, but a justice of the peace only so long as he continues in the commission), and all those who bear special office in the royal household, as gentlemen of the privy chamber, carvers, sewers, cup-bearers, pensioners, serjeants-at-arms, and all that have any near or especial dependence on the royal person, and are not knighted ; also captains in the wars, recorded in the official lists.

7thly, Counsellors at law ; bachelors of divinity, law, and physic ; mayors of towns are reputed esquires, or equal to esquires (though not really so) ; also the pennon-bearer to the sovereign, who carries the flag or banner, whereon the royal arms, either at war, or at a funeral, are painted.

Besides, this degree of esquire is a special privilege to any of the king's ordinary and nearest attendants ; for being his birth gentle or base, if he serve in the place of an esquire, he is an esquire by that service ; for it is the place that dignifies the person, and not the person the place : so if any gentleman or esquire shall take upon him the place of a yeoman of the king's guard, he immediately

loses all his titles of honour, and is no more than a yeoman.

There is a general opinion, that every gentleman of landed property, that has 300*l.* a year, is an esquire; which is a vulgar error, for no money or landed property will give a man properly this title, unless he come within one of the above rules.

## GENTLEMAN.

GENTLEMAN, *Generosus*, seems to be compounded of two words, the one French (*Gentil*), *honestus vel honesta parente natus*; the other Saxon (*man*), as if one said, a man well born. Under this name are comprised all that are above yeomen and artificers; so that nobles may with strict propriety be called gentlemen. But by the custom of England, nobility is either major or minor. Major contains all titles and degrees from knighthood upwards: minor, all from knights downwards.

Gentlemen have their beginning either of blood, as being born of worshipful parents, or from having achieved, in peace or war, some honourable action, whereby they have acquired the right to bear arms. But in these days whoever studies the laws of the realm, or professes a liberal science, or who can live without manual labour, is commonly taken for a gentleman: and a king at arms may grant him a patent for a new coat, if there is none that of right appertains to him from his ancestors.

If a gentleman be bound apprentice to a merchant or other trade, he does not thereby lose his degree of gentility; but if a man be a gentleman by office only, and loses his office, in that case he also loses his gentility.

By the statute 5 Eliz. cap. 4, entitled an "Act touching orders for artificers, labourers, servants of husbandry, and apprentices," amongst other things it is declared, "That a gentleman born, &c., shall not be compelled to serve in husbandry." And in time still more ancient, the gentry of England had many advantages and privileges above the vulgar:—

1. *Pro honore sustinendo*; if a churle or peasant detracted from the honour of a gentleman, he had a remedy in law, *actione injuriarum*; but if one gentleman defamed another, the combat was anciently allowed.
2. In equal crimes a gentleman was punishable with more favour than the churle, provided the crime were not heresy, treason, or excessive contumacy.
3. With many observances and ceremonial respects a gentleman was honoured by the churle or ungentle.
4. In giving evidence, the testimony of a gentleman was deemed more authentic than a clown's.
5. In election of magistrates and officers by vote, the suffrage of a gentleman took place of an ignoble person.
6. A gentleman was excused from base services, impositions, and duties, both real and personal.
7. A gentleman condemned to death was not to be hanged, but beheaded, and his examination taken without torture.
8. To take down the coat-armour of any gentleman, to deface his monument, or offer violence to any ensign of a deceased noble, was deemed an insult to the person of the dead, and punishment was due accordingly.
9. A clown might not challenge a gentleman to combat, *quia conditiones impares*.

For the protection and defence of this civil dignity there were three laws: the first, *jus agnitionis*, the right or law of descent for the kindred of the father's side: the second, *jus stirpis*, for the family in general: the third, *jus gentilitatis*, a law for the descent in noble families; by which law a gentleman of blood and coat-armour only was privileged.

To make perfection in blood, a lineal descent from *Atavus*, *Proavus*, *Avus*, and *Pater*, (the great-grandfather's grandfather, the great-grandfather, the grandfather, and the father) on the father's side, was required; and as much on the mother's side; then was a gentleman not only of perfect blood, but of ancestry also.

Anciently, none were admitted into the inns of court

but such as were gentlemen of blood ; nor were the church dignities and preferments bestowed indifferently among the vulgar. The Russians, and some other nations, admit none to the study of the law but gentlemen's younger sons. The decayed families in France are supported and receive new life from the court, camp, law, and ecclesiastical preferments, by which means their church and state are in esteem and reverence, being filled most commonly with the best blood and noblest by birth amongst them.

The achievement of a gentleman hath no difference from that of an esquire, both their helmets being close and sideways.

## YEOMEN.

YEOMEN are so called of the Saxon word *zemen*, which signifies common, and are properly such as have some lands of their own to live upon ; for a carv of land, or a plough-land, was in ancient time of the yearly value of five nobles, and this was the qualification of a sokeman or yeoman. In our law they are called *legales homines*, a word familiar in writs and inquests.

It appears from Lambarde's Perambulation of Kent, p. 367, that the Saxon word *telphioneman* was given to the theyne or gentleman, because his life was valued at one thousand two hundred shillings, (in those days the lives of all men were rated at certain sums of money;) while the term *twyhind* was applied to the churle or yeoman, because the price of his head was taxed at two hundred shillings. Which facts may be found in the etymology of the words themselves, the one called a *telphioneman*, or twelve-hundred-man, and the other a *twyhind*, or a man of two hundred. " And in this estate they pleased themselves, insomuch that a man might (as he even now may) find sundry yeomen, though otherwise comparable for wealth with many of the gentle sort, that will not yet for that change their condition, nor desire to be apparelled with the title of gentry."

As in ancient times the senators of Rome were elected

*a censu*; and as with us, in conferring nobility, respect is had to revenue, by which dignity and nobility may be supported and maintained; so the wisdom of this realm hath of ancient time provided, that none shall pass upon juries for the trial of any matter real or personal, or upon any criminal cause, but such as, besides their moveables, have lands for estate of life, at the least to a competent value: lest from need or poverty such jurors might be corrupted or suborned.

And in all cases the law hath conceived a better opinion of those that have lands and tenements, or otherwise are of worth in moveable goods, than it hath of artificers, retailers, labourers, or the like.

By the statute of 2 Hen. IV. cap. 27, amongst other things it is enacted, "That no yeoman should take or wear any livery of any lord upon pain of imprisonment, and to make fine at the king's will and pleasure."

As the nobility, gentry, and clergy, have certain privileges peculiar to themselves, so have the commonalty of England, beyond the subjects of other monarchs.

No freeman of England can be imprisoned, ousted of his possession, or disseised of his freehold, without order of law, and just cause shown.

To him that is imprisoned may not be denied a *habeas corpus*, if it be desired; and if no just cause be alleged, and the same be not returned upon a *habeas corpus*, the prisoner is to be set at liberty. By *Magna Charta*, 9 Hen. III., no soldier can be quartered in any house except inns, and other public victualling-houses, in time of peace, without the owner's consent. By the petition of rights, 3 Car. I., no taxes, loans, or benevolences, can be imposed but by act of parliament.

The yeomanry are not to be pressed to serve as soldiers in the wars, unless bound by tenure, which is now abolished; nor are the train-bands compellable to march out of the kingdom, or be transported beyond sea: nor is any one compelled to bear his own arms, if he find a sufficient man as his substitute, qualified according to the act

before-mentioned ; and no freeman is to be tried but by his equals, nor condemned but by the laws of the land.

The yeomen of England were famous in our forefathers' days for archery and manhood ; our infantry, which so often conquered the French, and repulsed the Scots, were composed of them, as are our militia at present.

---

### Precedency.

PERSONS of every degree of honour or dignity take place according to the seniority of their creation, and not of years, unless descended of the blood royal, in which case they have place of all of the same degree not of the blood royal.

The younger sons of the preceding rank take place of the eldest sons of the next degree, viz. the younger sons of dukes of the eldest sons of earls ; the younger sons of earls of the eldest sons of barons, &c.

There have been some alterations made as to precedence, whereby all the sons of viscounts and barons are allowed to precede baronets. And the eldest sons and daughters of baronets have place given them before the eldest sons and daughters of any knights, of what degree or order soever, though superior to that of a baronet (these being but temporary dignities, whereas that of baronet is hereditary) ; and the younger sons of baronets are to have place next after the eldest sons of knights.

As, also, there are some great officers of state who take place (although they are not noblemen) above the nobility of higher degree ; so there are some persons who, for their dignities in the church, degrees in the universities, and inns of court, offices in the state or army (although they are neither knights nor gentlemen born), yet take place amongst them. Thus all colonels and field-officers (who are honourable) as also master of the artillery, and

quarter-master-general ; doctors of divinity, law, physic, and music ; deans, chancellors, prebendaries, heads of colleges in the universities, and serjeants-at-law, are, by courtesy, allowed place before ordinary esquires. And all bachelors of divinity, law, physic and music ; masters of arts, barristers in the inns of courts ; lieutenant-colonels, majors, captains, and other commissioned military officers ; and divers patent officers in the king's household ; may equal, if not precede, gentlemen who have none of these qualifications.

In towns corporate, the inhabitants of cities (and herein those of the capital or metropolitan city are the first ranked) are preferred to those of boroughs, and those who have borne magistracy to all others. And here a younger alderman or bailey takes not precedence from his senior by being knighted, or as being the elder knight, as was the case of Alderman Craven, who (though no knight) had place, as senior alderman, before all the rest who were knights, at the coronation of King James. This is to be understood as to public meetings relative to the town ; for it is doubted whether it will hold good in any neutral place. It has also been determined in the Heralds' Office, that all who have been lords mayor of London shall everywhere take place of all knights-bachelors, because they have been the king's lieutenants.

It was likewise adjudged in the case of Sir John Crook, serjeant-at-law, by the judges in court, that such serjeants as were his seniors, though not knighted, should have preference, notwithstanding his knighthood.

All colonels, says Gwillim, are honourable, and by the law of arms ought to precede simple knights.

Women before marriage have precedence by their father ; but there is this difference between them and the male children, that the same precedence is due to all the daughters that is due to the eldest, whereas it is not so among the sons.

By marriage, a woman participates of her husband's dignities ; but none of the wife's dignities can come by

marriage to her husband, but are to descend to her next heir.

If a woman have precedence by creation, descent, or birth, she retains the same, though she marries an inferior. But it is observable, that if a woman nobly born marry any nobleman, as a baron, she shall take place according to the degree of her husband, though she be a duke's daughter.

A woman privileged by marriage with one of noble degree, shall retain the privilege due to her by her husband, though he should be degraded by forfeiture, &c.; for crimes are personal.

The wife of the eldest son of any degree takes place of the daughters of the same degree (who always have place immediately after the wives of such eldest sons); and both of them take place of the younger sons of the preceding degree. Thus the lady of the eldest son of an earl takes place of an earl's daughter, and both of them precede the wife of the younger son of a marquis; also the wife of any degree precedes the wife of the eldest son of the preceding degree. Thus the wife of a marquis precedes the wife of the eldest son of a duke. This holds, not only in comparing degrees, but also families of the same degree among themselves; for instance, the daughter of a senior earl yields place to the wife of a junior earl's son: though, if such daughter be an heiress, she will then be allowed place before the wives of the eldest sons of all younger earls.

## Table of Precedency among Men.

---

**The King, or the Consort of the reigning Queen\*.**

The Prince of Wales.

King's or Queen-regnant's other sons.

Grandsons.

Brothers.

Uncles.

Nephews.

Sons-in-law.

Brothers' or sisters' sons.

Leopold, King of the Belgians†.

Archbishop of Canterbury.

Lord High Chancellor, or Lord Keeper.

Archbishop of York.

‡ Lord High Treasurer.

‡ Lord President of the Privy Council.

‡ Lord Privy Seal.

‡ Lord Great Chamberlain.

Lord High Constable.

§ Earl Marshal.

§ Lord High Admiral.

§ Lord Steward of the Household.

§ Lord Chamberlain of the Household.

Dukes.

Eldest sons of Dukes of the Blood Royal.

Marquises.

---

\* By the official Gazette, under date 20th March, 1840, it was ordered that H. R. H. Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg and Gotha, consort of her Majesty, should take rank next the Queen.

† By special statute.

‡ Being of the degree of Barons, by stat. 31 Hen. VIII.

§ Above all of their degree, viz., Dukes to precede Dukes, Earls above Earls, &c. Stat. 31 Hen. VIII.

The eldest sons of Dukes.

Earls.

The eldest sons of Marquisses of Blood Royal.

The eldest sons of Marquisses.

The younger sons of Dukes.

Viscounts.

The eldest sons of Earls.

The younger sons of Marquisses.

Bishop of London.

Bishop of Durham.

Bishop of Winchester.

*All other Bishops according to seniority of consecration.*

\* Barons according to their patents of creation.

Speaker of the House of Commons.

The Treasurer of the Household.

The Comptroller of the Household.

The Vice Chamberlain.

Secretary of State, *Being under the degree of Baron.*

The eldest sons of Viscounts.

The younger sons of Earls.

The eldest sons of Barons.

Knights of the Garter (*if not nobles*).

Privy Councillors (*ditto*).

Chancellor of the Exchequer.

\* Any peer, being principal secretary of state, shall take precedence of all other peers of his degree. But the priority of signing treaties, or instruments, by public ministers, is always enjoyed by rank of place, and not by title.

It was confirmed by stat. 5 Anne, chap. 8, That all peers of Scotland shall be peers of Great Britain, and have rank next after the peers of the same degree in England, at the date of the union, May 1, 1707. By act 39 and 40 Geo. III. cap. 67, it is enacted, That the lords of Parliament on the part of Ireland shall have the same privileges as the lords of Great Britain; and all the lords spiritual of Ireland shall rank next after the lords spiritual of Great Britain, and shall enjoy the same privileges, except that of sitting in the House of Lords. The temporal peers of Ireland have rank next after the peers of the same rank in Great Britain created before the union. All peerages of Ireland and Great Britain, created since the union, have rank according to creation, and are considered in all respects as peerages of the United Kingdom, and enjoy the same privileges, excepting those peers of Ireland who have not sittings in the House of Lords.

- Chancellor of the duchy of Lancaster.  
 Lord Chief Justice of the King's Bench.  
     Master of the Rolls.  
     Vice Chancellor.  
 Lord Chief Justice of the Common Pleas.  
     Lord Chief Baron of the Exchequer.  
 Judges and Barons of the degree of the *Coif* of the said Courts  
     according to seniority.  
 Bannerets made under the King's banner or standard, displayed  
     in an army royal, in open war, and the King personally  
     present.  
     The younger sons of Viscounts.  
     The younger sons of Barons.  
     Baronets.  
 Bannerets not made by the King himself in person.  
     Knights of the Thistle.  
     Knights Grand Crosses of the Bath.  
     Knights of St. Patrick.  
     Knights Commanders of the Bath.  
     Knights Bachelors.  
     Masters in Chancery.  
 Eldest sons of the younger sons of Peers.  
 The eldest sons of Knights of the Garter.  
     The eldest sons of Bannerets.  
     The eldest sons of Baronets.  
     Companions of the Bath.  
 The eldest sons of the Knights of the Bath.  
 The eldest sons of Knights Bachelors.  
     The younger sons of Baronets.  
 Esquires of the King's Body, or Gentlemen of the Privy-chamber.  
     Esquires of the Knights of the Bath.  
     Esquires by creation.  
     Esquires by office.  
     Younger sons of Knights of the Garter.  
     Younger sons of Bannerets of both kinds.  
     Younger sons of Knights of the Bath.  
     Younger sons of Knights Bachelors.  
     Gentlemen entitled to bear arms.  
 Clergymen, Barristers at Law, Officers in the Navy and Army,  
     who are Gentlemen by profession.  
         Citizens.  
         Burgesses, &c.

## Table of Precedency among Women.

---

THE QUEEN (Regnant or Consort, as the case may be).

The Queen Dowager.

Princess of Wales.

Princesses, daughters of the King or Queen Regnant.

Princesses and Duchesses, wives of the King's or Queen Regnant's sons.

Wives of the King's or Queen Regnant's brothers.

Mother of the (present) Queen Regnant\*.

Wives of the King's or Queen Regnant's uncles.

Wives of the eldest sons of Dukes of the Blood Royal.

Daughters of Dukes of the Blood Royal.

Wives of the King's or Queen Regnant's brothers' or sisters' sons.

Wife of Leopold, King of the Belgians.

Duchesses.

Marchionesses.

Wives of the eldest sons of Dukes.

Daughters of Dukes.

Countesses.

Wives of the eldest sons of Marquisses.

Daughters of Marquisses.

Wives of the younger sons of Dukes.

Viscountesses.

Wives of the younger sons of Marquisses.

Baronesses.

Wives of the eldest sons of Viscounts.

Daughters of Viscounts.

Wives of the younger sons of Earls.

Wives of the eldest sons of Barons.

Daughters of Barons.

Maids of Honour.

---

\* H. R. H. the Duchess of Kent precedes the wives of the present Queen's uncles.—EDITOR.

Wives of the younger sons of Viscounts.

Wives of the younger sons of Barons.

Wives of Baronets.

Wives of the Knights of the Garter.

Wives of Bannerets of each kind.

Wives of the Knights of the Bath.

Wives of Knights Bachelors.

Wives of the eldest sons of the younger sons of Peers.

Wives of the eldest sons of Baronets.

Daughters of Baronets.

Wives of the eldest sons of Knights of the Garter.

Daughters of Knights of the Garter.

Wives of the eldest sons of Bannerets.

Daughters of Bannerets.

Wives of the eldest sons of Knights of the Bath.

Daughters of Knights of the Bath.

Wives of the eldest sons of Knights Bachelors.

Daughters of Knights Bachelors.

Wives of the younger sons of Baronets.

Daughters of Knights.

Wives of Esquires of the Sovereign's Body.

Wives of Esquires to the Knights of the Bath.

Wives of Esquires by creation.

Wives of Esquires by office.

Wives of the younger sons of Knights of the Garter.

Wives of the younger sons of Bannerets.

Wives of the younger sons of Knights of the Bath.

Wives of the younger sons of Knights Bachelors.

Wives of Gentlemen.

Daughters of Esquires.

Daughters of Gentlemen.

Wives of Clergymen, Barristers at Law, and Officers in the

Navy and Army.

Wives of Citizens.

Wives of Burgesses, &c.

## The Great Officers of State, and of the Royal Household.

---

### THE LORD HIGH STEWARD.

THE power and influence of the lord high steward, anciently the first great officer of state, were in former times so exorbitant, that after the elevation of Henry of Bolingbroke, Duke of Lancaster, to the throne, when the office came into the hands of the crown, it was not thought prudent to entrust it again in the person of a subject. Since that time, therefore, there has not been any lord high steward in England, except to officiate pro tempore at a coronation, or for the arraignment of a peer or peeress for a capital crime.

### THE LORD HIGH CHANCELLOR.

FORMERLY the second, now the first, great officer of the crown, is the lord high chancellor, or keeper of the great seal, which are the same in authority, power, and precedence. They are appointed by the sovereign's delivery of the great seal to them, and by taking the oath of office. They differ only in this point, that the lord chancellor hath also letters patent, whereas the lord keeper hath none. He is an officer of very great power, no patents, writs, or grants, being valid, until he affixes the great seal thereto.

Among the many great prerogatives of his office, he has a power to judge according to equity, conscience, and reason, where he finds the law of the land defective: to collate to all ecclesiastical benefices rated under 20*l.* a year; and to perform all matters which appertain to the speaker of the House of Lords.

In ancient times this great office was most usually filled by an ecclesiastic. The first upon record after the

Conquest, is Maurice, in 1067, who was afterwards bishop of London.

There is no instance of the elevation of any chancellor to the peerage until the year 1603, when King James I. delivered a new great seal to Sir Thomas Egerton, and soon after created him baron of Ellesmere, and constituted him lord high chancellor of England. But until of late years, the custom never prevailed, that the lord high chancellor of England should be made an hereditary peer of the realm.

#### THE LORD HIGH TREASURER.

THIS was anciently the third great office of the crown. It was then conferred by the delivery of the golden keys of the treasury : but it is now executed by five persons, who are called lords commissioners for executing the office of lord high treasurer, viz., one who is called the first lord of the treasury, and four others, who are styled lords of the treasury only, of whom one is also denominated chancellor and under-treasurer of the exchequer, although not unfrequently the offices of first lord of the treasury, and of chancellor of the exchequer, have been united in the same person.

#### THE LORD PRESIDENT OF THE COUNCIL.

FORMERLY the fourth, now the third great officer of state, is appointed by the crown by letters patent under the great seal, durante bene placito (during pleasure). His duty is to attend the royal person, and to manage the debates in council ; to propose matters from the sovereign at the council-table, and to report the resolutions taken thereon.

#### THE LORD PRIVY-SEAL.

THE lord privy-seal is a place of great trust, honour, and antiquity. In the time of Edward III., and long after, this officer was called keeper of the privy-seal (or

private seal) to distinguish him from the other, called keeper of the great seal. He is appointed now by letters patent, is a privy councillor by his office, and takes place next after the president of the council. He is now the fourth great officer of state, and has the custody of the privy-seal, which he must not put to any grant without good warrant under the royal signet. This seal is used by the sovereign to all charters, grants, and pardons, before they come to the great seal; but may also be affixed to other things that never pass the great seal; as, to cancel a recognizance to the crown, or to discharge a debt.

#### THE LORD CHAMBERLAIN.

THIS high office was for many successions enjoyed by the noble family of De Vere, earls of Oxford, (having been granted to them by Henry I.), until the death of Henry de Vere, the eighteenth earl, without issue; when Mary, sister and heir of Edward, father of the said Henry, having married Peregrine Bertie, Lord Willoughby of Eresby, was mother by him of Robert Lord Willoughby of Eresby, who made claim to the earldom of Oxford, as also to the office of lord great chamberlain of England; whereupon, after much dispute, the House of Lords gave judgment that he had made good his claim to the office, but not to the earldom (which was decided in favour of the heir-male collateral); and he was accordingly on the 22d of November, the 2d of Charles I., admitted into the House of Lords with his staff; and his descendants continued to enjoy the same until the death of Robert Bertie, fourth duke of Ancaster, marquis and earl of Lindsey, Lord Willoughby of Eresby, and lord great chamberlain of England, in 1779; who dying unmarried, was succeeded in the dukedom, marquisate, and earldom, by his uncle, Lord Brownlow Bertie; but the barony of Willoughby fell into abeyance; and for the great chamberlainship there were several candidates, viz., the Lord Brownlow Bertie, then duke of Ancaster; earl

Percy, eldest son of the duke of Northumberland ; the duchess dowager of Athol, baroness Strange, of Knockyn, and the ladies Priscilla Barbara, and Georgiana Charlotte Bertie, sisters and co-heirs of Robert, fourth duke of Lancaster, deceased ; when, after hearing all parties in support of their respective pretensions, the House of Peers desired the opinion of the twelve judges, who gave it as their opinions, that the office devolved to the ladies Priscilla Barbara, and Georgiana Charlotte Bertie, as heirs to their brother, the aforesaid duke Robert, deceased ; and that they had powers to appoint a deputy to act for them, not under the degree of a knight, who, if his Majesty approved of him, might officiate accordingly ; and agreeably to this opinion, the House gave judgment. Whereupon, Peter Burrel, Esq., husband of the said lady Priscilla Barbara, was appointed, and received the honour of knighthood from his Majesty ; after which appointment he was created lord Gwydir.

To this officer belong very many perquisites, privileges, &c., but which usually, on a coronation, are compromised for a certain sum.

When the king or queen goes to parliament, he disposes of the sword of state to be carried by what lord he pleases, at which time he goes himself before on the right hand of the sword, next the king or queen's person, and the earl marshal on the left.

Upon all solemn occasions the keys of Westminster Hall\*, the court of wards, and the court of requests, are delivered to him ; and the gentleman-usher of the black rod, yeoman-usher, and the door-keepers, are then under his command.

To him also belongs the fitting up of Westminster Hall for a coronation, or the trial of a peer or peers, or any public solemnity.

---

\* By the search made by the Lord Chamberlain in the cellars under the Parliament-house, Guy Vaux (or Faux) was discovered and taken.

He has likewise certain fees from every archbishop or bishop, when they do homage or fealty to the crown: and from all peers on their creation, or doing homage or fealty.

## THE LORD HIGH CONSTABLE.

THIS office was for many ages held by grand serjeantry. The lord high constable and the earl marshal were formerly judges of the court of chivalry, called, in the time of Henry IV., *curia militaris*, and after, the court of honour. The power of the high constable was so great, and so improper a use was oftentimes made of it, that, so early as the 13th of Richard II., a statute passed for regulating and abridging the same, together with the power of the earl marshal. The office went with inheritance, and by the tenure of the manors of Harlefield, Newman, and Whitenhurst, in the county of Gloucester,\* in the family of the Bohuns, earls of Hereford, Essex, and Northampton, and passed from the Bohuns upon the death of Humphrey, the last earl, to Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloucester; and from him to the issue of Edmund, earl of Stafford, whose son, Humphrey Stafford, was created duke of Buckingham, with whose great-grandson, Edward Stafford, duke of Buckingham, beheaded by Henry VIII. on Tower Hill, this office terminated. It has never since been granted to any person, otherwise than *pro tempore* for a coronation, or trial by combat.+

## EARL MARSHAL OF ENGLAND.

THIS office is of great antiquity, and is not said to have been holden by tenure or serjeantry, as the offices of lord steward and high constable were.

\* The castle of Caldecot, near Chepstow, in the county of Monmouth, was the residence of the lord high constables of England, and holden by them in virtue thereof.

+ The only instance that occurs of a trial by combat being ordered since the cessation of the office of lord high constable, is between Lord Reay, and David Ramsay, Esq., 28th November, 1631: the king prevented this trial. On this occasion, Robert Bertie, earl of Lindsey, was appointed lord high constable.

Yet, in the time of Henry I., Sir William Dugdale recites, that Robert de Venvis, and William de Hastings, impleaded Gilbert Mareschall, and John his son, for the office of mareschal \* to the king, but without success ; which John in the 10th of Henry II., being the king's marshal, upon the difference between that king and Thomas à Becket, archbishop of Canterbury, laid claim for the king to one of the archbishop's manors, which had been long enjoyed by his predecessors. Unto John, son of this said John, King Henry II. confirmed his office of marshal; and as such, at the coronation of Richard I., he bore the great gilt spurs, and afterwards died without issue. William Mareschall † earl of Pembroke, was his brother and heir, whose five sons, successively earls of Pembroke, dying without issue male, his five daughters became his heirs ; of whom Maude, the eldest, married Hugh Bigod, earl of Norfolk, whose son, Roger Bigod, earl of Norfolk, after frequent solicitations, obtained the office and honour of marshal, in right of his mother, the 32d of Henry III.; when the king solemnly gave the marshal's rod into her hands, in regard of her seniority in the inheritance of the Mareschals, earls of Pembroke, which she thereupon delivered to Earl Roger, her son, whose homage the king received for the same ; but he dying without issue, the inheritance devolved upon Roger, his nephew and heir, who, in the 30th of Edward I., having no issue, constituted the king his heir, delivered unto him the marshal's rod, upon condition to be rendered back in case of having children, and other certain terms ; and, after dying without issue, the office thereby fell into his Majesty's hands. Afterwards, King Edward II. granted the same unto

---

\* According to Camden, this office of mareschal appears to mean the office of marshal of the king's house ; an office distinct from that afterwards known by the name of earl-marshal of England.

† These earls of Pembroke were oftentimes called also mareschals, according to Matthew Paris, and other historians ; but it does not appear that any one had this title by creation till the time of Richard II., who conferred it on Thomas Mowbray, earl of Nottingham.

Thomas de Brotherton, his brother. Brotherton died, leaving Margery, his daughter and heir, Countess of Norfolk, during whose life King Edward III., and Richard II., disposed of this office to divers others; sometimes for life, sometimes during pleasure: until at last, king Richard II. gave it by patent to Thomas Mowbray, earl of Nottingham, who was the grandchild of the said Margaret, who was then created earl marshal, being the first time that the title of earl was affixed to the office of marshal; at the same time he had power given, that he and his successors in the office should bear in their hands a gold truncheon, enamelled with black at each end; at the upper end having the king's arms engraven thereon, and at the lower end his own arms. But, by reason of the judgment given against Mowbray, duke of Norfolk, not long before the 21st of Richard II., this honour and office were forfeited during his life. His posterity, however, had them restored; which they held till the 15th of Edward IV., when the issue male failed, and the honour, of course, expired. But Richard III. revived it in Sir John Howard, son of Sir Robert Howard, who had married Margaret, one of the daughters and co-heirs of the aforesaid Thomas Mowbray, earl-marshall and duke of Norfolk; whom he also created duke of Norfolk, and who, adhering to his master and benefactor, was slain with him at Bosworth field. By an attainder in parliament, the honour and office were again forfeited, and granted to William Berkely, earl of Nottingham, in tail; who deceasing soon after, issueless, Henry VIII. gave the same for life to Henry, earl of Surrey, afterwards duke of Norfolk, and his issue male, whence for many years it was held for life only. King James I., at his coronation, granted it to the earl of Worcester for that occasion, and at other times it was executed by commission. But at length King James I. was pleased, by letters patent, dated 29th August, 1622, to constitute Thomas Howard, earl of Arundel, earl marshal for life; and the next year (with the advice of the privy council) granted letters patent, wherein it was declared that, during the

vacancy of the office of lord high constable of England, the earl marshal had the like jurisdiction in the court of chivalry, as both constable and marshal jointly ever possessed. And on the 19th of October, 1672, King Charles II. was pleased to grant to Henry lord Howard, and the heirs male of his body lawfully begotten (with a long entail to divers others of the Howard family), the office and dignity of earl marshal of England, with power to execute the same by deputy or deputies, in as full and ample a manner as the same was heretofore executed by Henry Howard, late earl of Arundel, grandfather to the said Henry lord Howard, or by Thomas Howard, duke of Norfolk ; or by John Mowbray, duke of Norfolk, or any other earl marshal of England, with an allowance of 20*l.* each year, payable out of the hanaper offices.

The earl marshal's court is the fountain of the law of arms, and is usually holden in the hall of the college of arms, or heralds' office; where his jurisdiction is to determine upon descents, pedigrees, escutcheons, and the like. Attendant on his court are the kings of arms, heralds, and pursuivants, who are (or ought to be) persons of learning, skilled in the modern and ancient languages, good historians, and conversant in the genealogies of the nobility and gentry.

They publish all royal proclamations, marshal all the royal solemnities of coronations, marriages, christenings, funerals, &c.

They grant coats armorial and supporters to the same, to such as are properly authorised to bear them; and, where no hereditary arms are known to belong to the party applying for a grant, they invent devices, and emblazon them in the most applicable manner, so as to reflect credit upon their own fertility of knowledge, and to afford satisfaction to the anxious wearer of these types of gentility.

The *College of Arms*, commonly called the *Heralds' College*, is situate on the east side of St. Bennet's Hill, Doctors' Commons, at the south-west end of St. Paul's

Churchyard. It was destroyed by the dreadful fire in 1666, but rebuilt about three years after. It is a spacious brick edifice, having an arched gateway in front, leading into a handsome quadrangle. The society was incorporated by Richard III., and consists of thirteen members ; viz. three kings of arms, six heralds, and four pursuivants, all nominated by the earl marshal, and holding their places by patent during good behaviour.

The kings of arms are styled respectively *Garter*, *Clarendieux*, and *Norroy*.

*Garter*, king-of-arms, was instituted as before mentioned (see Knights of the Garter, *ante*, p. 224,) by King Henry V., and made sovereign of all the other officers of arms in England. To him belongs the correction of arms, and ensigns of arms, usurped or borne unjustly ; and the power of granting arms to deserving persons, and supporters to the nobility and knights of the Bath.

It is the office also of *Garter* king-of-arms "to go next before the sword in solemn processions, none interposing except the Marshal ; to administer the oath to all the officers of arms : to have a habit like the register of the order, with baron's service in the court, and lodgings in Windsor Castle ; he bears his white rod, with the banner of the ensign of the order thereon, before the sovereign ; when any lord enters the parliament chamber, it is his part to assign him his place, according to his dignity and degree ; to carry the ensign of the order to foreign princes, and to do, or procure to be done, what the sovereign shall enjoin, relating to the order."\*

*Clarendieux* and *Norroy* are the provincial kings-of-arms ; the jurisdiction of the former comprehending all England to the south of the river Trent, and that of *Norroy* all to the north of that river.

*Clarendieux* is thus named from the Duke of Clarence, the third son of King Edward III. It is his duty, according to his commission, to visit his province, to survey

\* History of the Order, &c., by S. M. Leake, Esq., Garter.

the arms of all persons, &c., and to register descents, marriages, &c.; to marshal the funerals of all persons within his province, not under the direction of Garter; and in his province to grant arms, with the consent of the Earl Marshal.

The duty of Norroy, or North Roy, i. e. North King, is the same on the north of the Trent, as that of Clarendieux on the south.

The six Heralds are *Windsor, Chester, Lancaster, York, Richmond, and Somerset*. They are created with the same ceremonies as the kings, and are esquires by virtue of their office.

The four pursuivants are denominated respectively *Rouge-croix, Blue-mantle, Rouge-dragon, and Portcullis*.

It is the duty of the Heralds and Pursuivants to attend in the Public Office, one of each class together, in monthly rotation. Beside these particular duties of the several classes, the general duties both of the Kings, Heralds, and Pursuivants, are to attend the sovereign at the House of Peers, and upon certain high festivals, to the Chapel Royal; to make proclamations; to marshal the proceedings at all public processions: to attend the installation of the knights of the Garter, &c.

Besides the Heralds' College at London, there is the *Lord Lyon* king-of-arms for Scotland, who is second king-of-arms for Great Britain; and also *Ulster* king-of-arms for Ireland.

#### LORD HIGH ADMIRAL.

THE ninth great officer of state is the lord high admiral. He has the management of all maritime affairs, and the power of decision in all maritime cases, civil and criminal. By him all naval officers, from an admiral to a lieutenant, are commissioned; all deputies for particular coasts, and judges for his court of admiralty, are appointed.

After the union with Scotland, Prince George of Denmark was the first lord high admiral of Great Britain.

He died, 29th of October, 1708, and Queen Anne acted by secretary Burchet, until November 29, 1708; when Thomas, earl of Pembroke, was appointed to the office, with a fee of three hundred marks per annum; and he seems to have been the last person intrusted with this high post (which since his time has been constantly in commission), until the reign of George IV., when his late Majesty William IV., then duke of Clarence, was constituted lord high admiral, which he held during the administration of the late Mr. Canning.

#### SECRETARIES OF STATE.

THE principal secretaries of state have been, by virtue of their office, members of the privy council ever since the reign of Queen Elizabeth; whereas before, they only prepared business for the council board. Until towards the end of the reign of Henry VIII. there was but one secretary of state; when his Majesty thought fit to increase the number to two, both of equal rank and authority. Since then, the multiplicity of public affairs has rendered necessary the addition of a third secretary. The three secretaries of state, viz., the secretary of state for foreign affairs (the war department), the secretary of state for the home department, and the secretary of state for the colonies, have divided among them the management of all foreign and domestic affairs, with powers of the most extensive and comprehensive nature.

#### THE PRIVY COUNCIL.

THIS noble and honourable assembly is a court of great antiquity, composed of the most eminent persons in the kingdom, to advise the sovereigns upon all emergencies; and upon their wisdom, vigilance, courage, and integrity, depend in a great measure the honour and prosperity of the nation. By their advice the crown issues proclamations, and declarations for war and peace. All the

peerage are hereditary privy councillors ; but of their number the sovereign has a select council, commonly called the cabinet council, and consisting of certain great officers of state, (who by virtue of their office are members of it,) by whom are determined such affairs as are most important, and require secrecy.

#### LORD STEWARD OF THE HOUSEHOLD.

THE chief officer for the civil government of the king's or queen's court is the lord steward of the household. His authority is very great, and extends over many other officers. He has the sole direction of the household below stairs ; is always a member of the privy council ; and at the meeting of every new parliament, all the members must take the oaths by law appointed before the lord steward of the household, or some one deputed by him. He has no formal grant of his office, but receives his charge from the sovereign in person, by delivery of a white staff or wand, the symbol of his office. In the time of Henry VIII. his title was great master of the king's household. But from the first of Mary he was called *magnus seneschalus hospitii regis*, or the lord high steward of the king's house.

#### LORD CHAMBERLAIN OF THE HOUSEHOLD.

THERE are two offices distinguished by the name of chamberlain ; the one called lord great chamberlain (already spoken of) and the other the lord chamberlain of the household.

The last has the oversight, in the royal household, of all the offices above stairs, except the precinct of the bed-chamber, which is under the government of the groom of the stole. He has the supervision of the chaplains, although he be a layman ; also of the officers of the standing and removing wardrobes, beds, tents, revels, music, comedians, &c. ; of all physicians, apothecaries, surgeons, messengers, trumpeters, drummers, tradesmen, and artisans,

retained in the royal service. To him also belongs the oversight of the charges of coronations, marriages, cavalcades, funerals; of all furniture in the parliament-house, and in the rooms for addresses to the king or queen.

He carries a white staff in his hand as a badge of his office, and wears a gold key tied with a blue riband above his pocket. He is always a member of the privy council. Under him is a vice-chamberlain, who in his absence supplies his place.

#### MASTER OF THE HORSE.

THE third great officer of the court is reckoned the master of the horse, a place of honour and antiquity, and always filled by a nobleman of the highest rank. He has authority over the equerries, pages, coachmen, footmen, grooms, farriers, smiths, &c.; and appoints all the tradesmen who work for the royal stables; he has also the management and disposal of all the king's or queen's coaches, horses, pages, footmen, and attendants, which are used by himself, with the royal arms and livery; and at any solemn cavalcade, he has the honour to ride next the king or queen.

#### GROOM OF THE STOLE.

THIS officer is first lord of the bedchamber, and has the custody of the long robe or vestment worn by the sovereign on solemn occasions, and called the *stole*. He wears a gold key as the emblem of his office, and is usually a nobleman of the highest rank. Yet there is one instance of the office being in the hands of a female, viz., Sarah, duchess of Marlborough, anno 1702, in the reign of Queen Anne.

#### TREASURER OF THE HOUSEHOLD.

HE is an officer in the lord steward's department, next in rank to the lord steward himself. He bears a white staff, and is a privy councillor.

## COMPTROLLER OF THE HOUSEHOLD,

Is the second officer under the lord high steward, and next to the treasurer of the household. He also bears a white staff, and is a privy councillor.

## LORD ALMONER.

He disposes of what is termed the almonry, or royal alms ; and, by an ancient custom, on Maundy Thursday (being the Thursday in Passion-week), performs the ceremony of washing the feet of a certain number of poor persons, which was anciently done by kings themselves, in imitation of our Saviour's pattern of humility.

The charity bestowed upon this occasion to each lazarus (or poor person) admitted to partake of this ceremony, is woollen cloth for one suit, linen for two shifts, six penny loaves of bread, fish in wooden platters, a quart bottle of wine, and two red leathern purses, one containing as many silver pennies as the king or queen is years old, the other as many shillings as the reign has lasted.

## YEOMEN OF THE GUARD.

THESE were first instituted by King Henry VII., anno 1486, as a body-guard to him, and their number at that time was fifty men ; but they have since undergone several alterations, and their present establishment is 100. Eight of them are styled ushers, four superannuated yeomen, six yeomen hangers, two yeomen bed-goers. Their officers are a captain, who is generally a nobleman, a lieutenant, an ensign, a clerk of the cheque, and four exons.

The yeomen of the guard wait in the first room above stairs, forty by day, and twenty by night. They bring up the dishes for the royal table, and deliver them to the servers, who place them on the table. On all occasions of

solemnities, or the sovereign's going publicly abroad by land or water, they attend. They still retain the ancient dress assigned them by Henry VII.

#### BAND OF GENTLEMEN PENSIONERS.

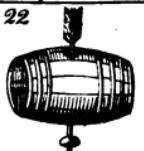
THIS honourable band was first instituted by King Henry VIII. in 1539. Their office is to attend the royal person upon all occasions of public solemnities ; as at court, on coronations, St. George's feasts, public audiences of ambassadors, at the going to parliament, royal funerals, &c. They are properly considered as a troop of guards attendant on the king's and queen's person. They wait one-half at a time; but on certain days, and extraordinary occasions, they are all obliged to attend under the penalty of the cheque.

At the coronation, or instalment of the sovereign as a knight of the garter, and celebration of St. George's feast, they have the honour of carrying up the sovereign's dinner ; at which time the king or queen usually confers the honour of knighthood on two such gentlemen of the band as their captain presents ; and this honour is conferred without the payment of the accustomed fees.

THE END.

LONDON :  
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

Pl. I.

1 	2 	3 	4 
5 	6 	7 	8 
9 	10 	11 	12 
13 	14 	15 	16 
17 	18 	19 	20 
21 	22 	23 	24 





CHARGES AND THEIR NAMES. Pl. 2.

Morillion	Indian Goat	Pike Staff	Lymphad	Catherine Wheel
Laver Pot	Teazel	Narcissus	Brogue	Hemp Break
Phummel	Weel	Wharrow Spindle	Fusil	Iron Ring
Beacon	Swepe	Slay	Cronel	Pegasus
Gauntlet	Trundle	Mill-Clack	Shackbolt	Javelin
Bird bolt	Bird bolt	Gorfanno	Manicles	Cutting Iron
Mortcours	Rapier Conjunct	Soldering Iron	Vambraced	Barnacles





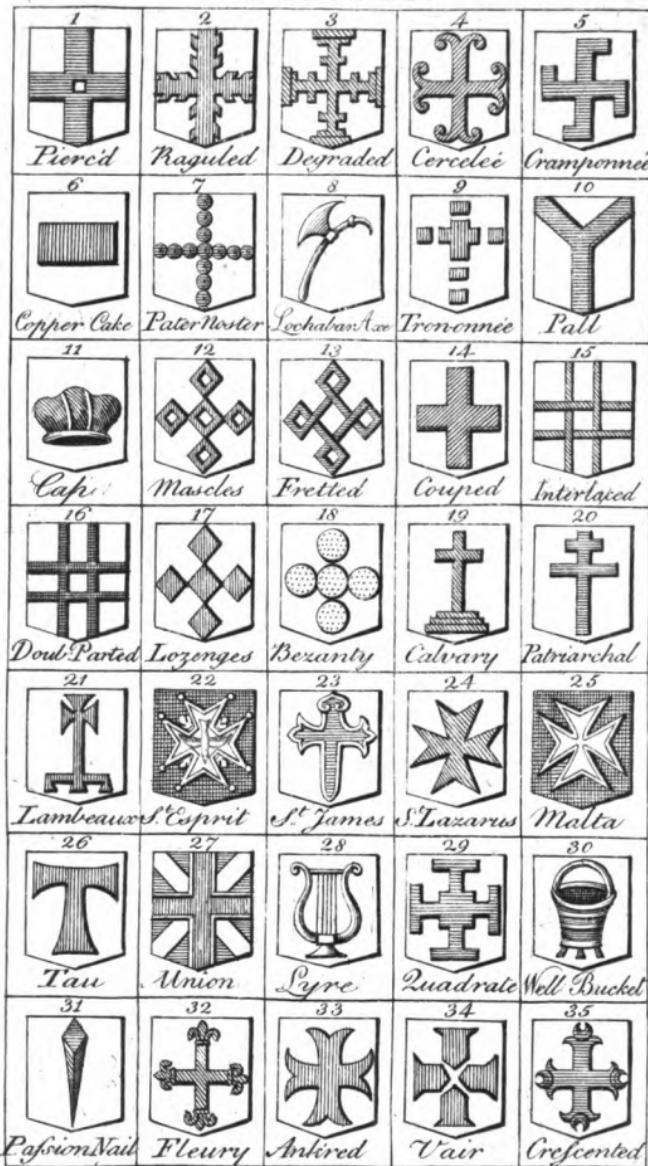
BORDURES, COUNTER CHANGES & LINES. Pl. 3.

Madder Bag	Couped Close	Couped	Ers. Close	Erased
Circular Wreath	Bewen Knot	Fire Beacon	Enaluron	Enurny
Vannet.	Verdoy	Entoyre	Diaperid	Bendy
Couch'd	Contr'point	Chev.Rompu	Barry Indented	Barry Bendy
Poly Poisneis	Poly Bendy	Trussing	Whales Head	Papellione
Cockatrice	Masonry	Fusilly	Wing	P'Pise & Pale
Pale & Chevrons	P'r Pale & Base	P'r Pile Transposed	P'r Pile in Point	P'r de Traverse



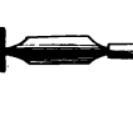


CROSSES.





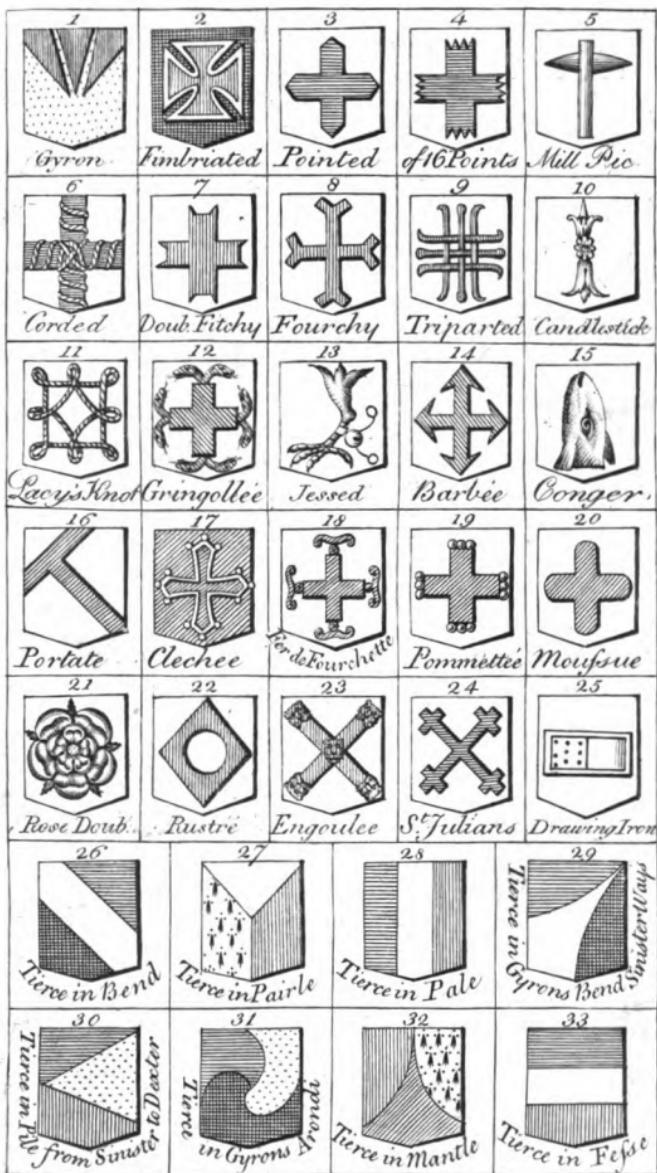
Pl. 5

			
<i>Banner</i>	<i>Camelopard</i>	<i>Burgonet</i>	<i>Columbine</i>
			
<i>Burling Iron</i>	<i>Gong</i>	<i>Harpoon</i>	<i>Playing Table</i>
			
<i>Habergeon</i>	<i>Falchion</i>	<i>Barnacle</i>	<i>Match Lock</i>
			
<i>Basilisk</i>	<i>Distillatory</i>	<i>Fetlock</i>	<i>Half Spade</i>
			
<i>Basket</i>	<i>Curriers Shave</i>	<i>Bottom</i>	<i>Blue Bottle</i>
			
<i>Broad Arrow</i>	<i>Quill of Yarn</i>	<i>Pewit</i>	





CROSSES & PARTITION LINES. . Pl. 6.





ORDINARIES CHARGES AND THEIR TERMS. Pl. 7.

Paly Bendy	Male Griffin	Palmer's Staffs	in Orle	Stilt
Flesques	Vorderis	Well	Well	Pilgrim's Staff
in his Pride	Trevet	Segreant	Dismembered	Icicle
Vole	Noued	Vulned	Grid Iron	Entrailed
Leopard's face	Leop. Head	Cornet	Demy Fleur de lis	Weare
Naisant	Fire Brand	Battled Embattled	Bord Enhanced	Chev Braced
Semee of	Dexter H'd	Sinister H'd	Scythe	Imbru'd





FOREIGN CROWNS.

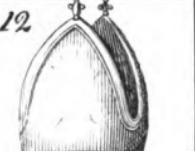
Pl. 8.

Celestial	Eastern	Imperial	Pope
Charlemain	Grand Seignior	France	Spain
Portugal	Denmark	Russia	Prussia
Poland	Poma	Electoral	Arch Duke
Duke of Tuscany	Dauphin	Brunswick	Doge of Venice
Vallery	Naval	Mural	Civick
Triumphal	Olsudional	Chaplet	Wreath





CROWNS, CORONETS, MITRES, &c.

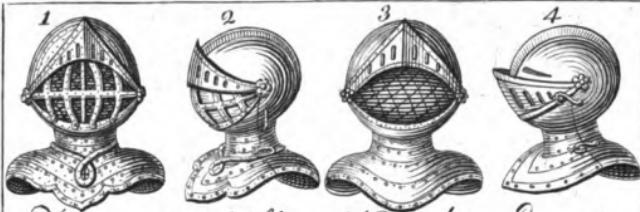
 <p><i>Crown of State</i></p>		
2	3	4
		
<i>Prince of Wales</i>	<i>Younger Sons or Brothers</i>	<i>Nephews of the Blood Royal</i>
5	6	7
		
<i>Princess Royal</i>	<i>Duke</i>	<i>Marquis</i>
8	9	10
		
<i>Earl</i>	<i>Viscount</i>	<i>Baron</i>
11	12	13
		
<i>Bishop of Durham</i>	<i>Bishop</i>	<i>Cap of Dignity</i>





## HELMETS.

Pl. 10.



*King Nobility Knight Esquire*

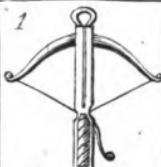
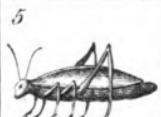
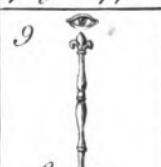
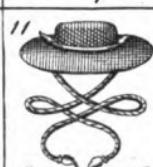
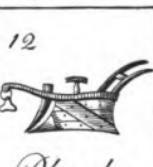
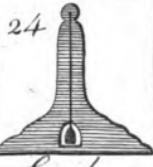
## DISTINCTIONS of HOUSES.

		First House					
1	2	Second House				5	6
1	2					5	6
1	2	Third House				5	6
1	2	Fourth House				5	6
1	2	Fifth House				5	6
1	2	Sixth House				5	6
	7			8		9	





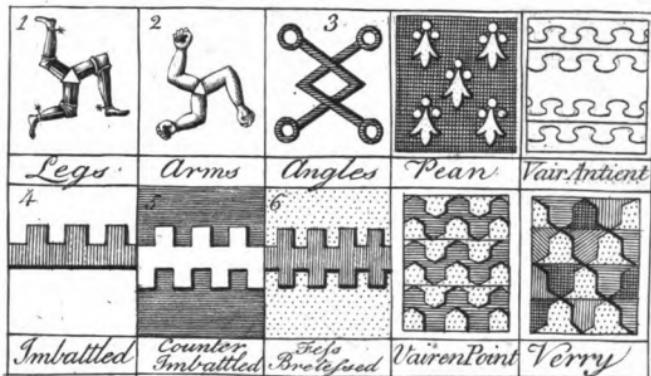
Pl. 12.

			
<i>Cross-bow</i>	<i>Escallop</i>	<i>Pillar</i>	<i>Fire Beacon</i>
			
<i>Grasshopper</i>	<i>Pomegranate</i>	<i>Scrip</i>	<i>Crosier</i>
			
<i>Scyphate</i>	<i>Anchor</i>	<i>Cardinal's Hat</i>	<i>Plough</i>
			
<i>Snail</i>	<i>Fire Ball</i>	<i>Flesh Pot</i>	<i>Penny-Yard penny</i>
			
<i>Harp</i>	<i>Mound</i>	<i>Fleur-de-lis</i>	<i>Thunderbolt</i>
			
<i>Battle-axe</i>	<i>Shuttle</i>	<i>Bugle-Horn</i>	<i>Level</i>

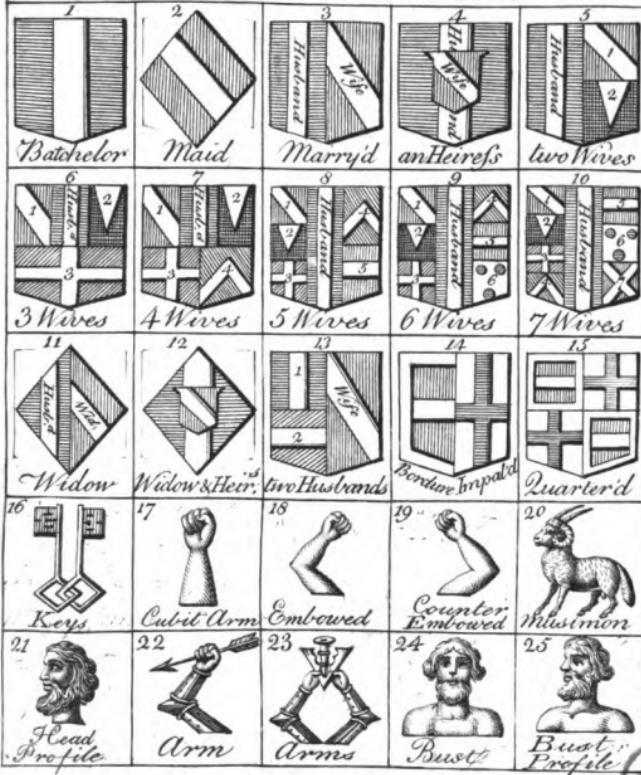




*Pl. 13.*



ATCHIEVMENTS & CHARGES.



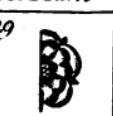
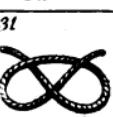
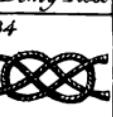


Pl. 14.

				
Sagittarius	Spina	Sea Horse	Mermaid	Unicorn
				
Apis	Panther	Horse	Bear	Wolf
				
Elephant	Bull	Cento Tripping	Cock	Asignet
				
Owl	Cormorant	Rere mouse	Stork	Boar
				
Rhinoceros	Goat	Camel	Ostrich	Holy Lamb
				
Falbot	Calveshead	Fretted	Sea Lion	Leopard
				
Spread Eagle	Lobster	Attire	Lure	Hawks Bell



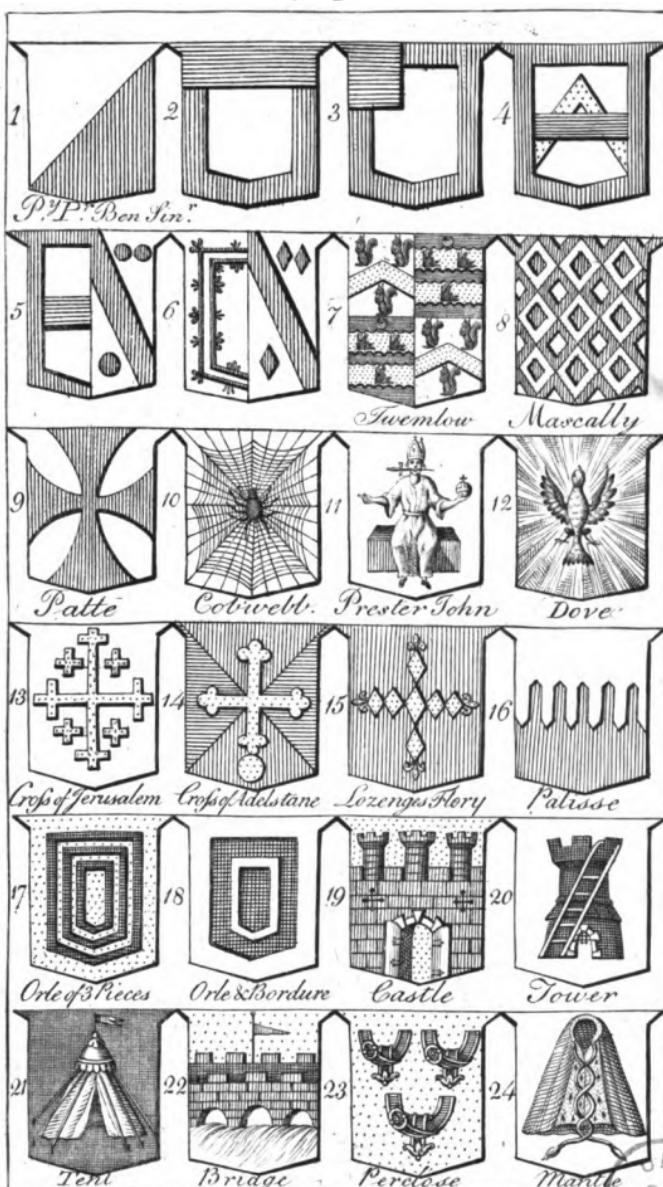
Pl. 15.

				
<i>Shoveller</i>	<i>Scaax</i>	<i>Sea Pie</i>	<i>Ibox</i>	<i>Rein Deer</i>
				
<i>Opiniclus</i>	<i>Sea Dog</i>	<i>a Plume</i>	<i>Double Plume</i>	<i>Triple Plume</i>
				
<i>Danish Axx</i>	<i>Bread Axe</i>	<i>Coward</i>	<i>Defand</i>	<i>Baillorre</i>
				
<i>Trincorporated</i>	<i>Debruised</i>	<i>Double Tailed</i>	<i>Double Headed</i>	<i>Lyon Poison</i>
				
<i>Lion</i>	<i>Dragon</i>	<i>Conjoined</i>	<i>Contourne</i>	<i>Spade Iron</i>
				
<i>Salt</i>	<i>Shack bolts</i>	<i>Grappling Iron</i>	<i>Demy Rose</i>	<i>Wheel</i>
				
<i>Stafford Knot</i>	<i>Bourdier Knot</i>	<i>Herring Knot</i>	<i>Wake's Knot</i>	<i>Dares Knot</i>





*Pl. 16.*





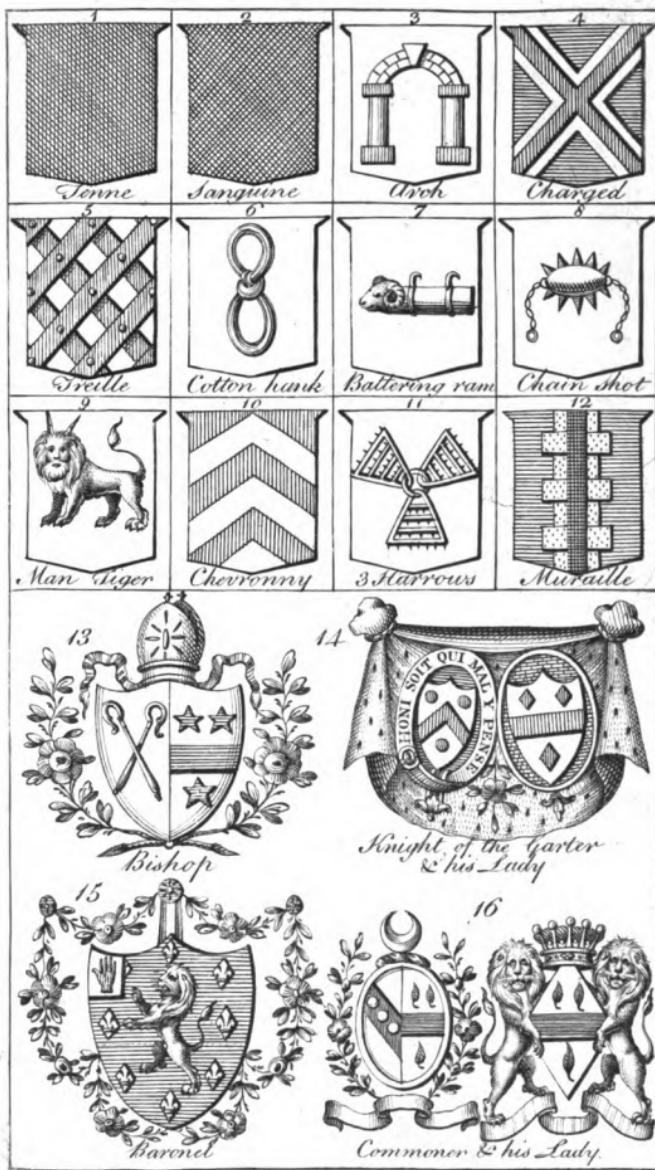
Pl. 17.

			
Breast plate	Dolphin	Salamander	Match
			
Sun	Lizard	Parrot	Hay Fork
			
Buckles	Griffin	Turnstile	Lamp
			
Trout	Trestle	Cushion	Pinces
			
Milpeck	Tapul	Scorpion	Proboscis
			
Ed Spear	Stirrup	Bell	Morion



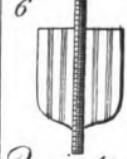
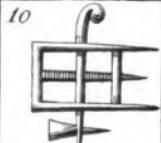
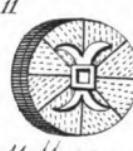
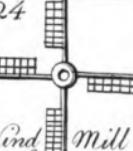


*Pl. 18.*





Pl. 19.

			
<i>Seraph</i>	<i>Cherub</i>	<i>Chess Rook</i>	<i>Glaziers Nippers</i>
			
<i>Leather Bottle</i>	<i>Quintain</i>	<i>Gleame</i>	<i>Flying Fish</i>
			
<i>Seals Paw</i>	<i>Turnpike</i>	<i>Millstone</i>	<i>Limbech</i>
			
<i>Bustard</i>	<i>Buffalo</i>	<i>Camelion</i>	<i>Cormorant</i>
			
<i>Sea Gull</i>	<i>Heath Cock</i>	<i>Sling</i>	<i>Grain Tree</i>
			
<i>Spancelled</i>	<i>Cuttle Fish</i>	<i>Still</i>	<i>Wind mill</i>





Pl. 20.

			
<i>Wool Card</i>	<i>Jersey Comb</i>	<i>Tillage Rake</i>	<i>Thatch Rake</i>
			
<i>Prongs</i>	<i>Anvil</i>	<i>Square</i>	<i>Gamble Rings</i>
			
<i>Bellows</i>	<i>Tombstone</i>	<i>Jewsharp</i>	<i>Ball Tasselled</i>
			
<i>Badger</i>	<i>Silk Hank</i>	<i>Fish Hook</i>	<i>Sail</i>
			
<i>Falchion</i>	<i>Water Bags</i>	<i>Scotch Spur</i>	<i>Fire Bucket</i>
			
<i>Hotland</i>	<i>Chain</i>	<i>Morter</i>	<i>Mallet</i>





FOREIGN CROWNS. Pl. 21.

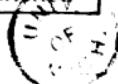
Bohemia	Sardinia	Sicily	Holland
Orange	Hanover	Palatine	Cologne
Waldeck	Mecklenburgh	Genoa	Lorrain
Guelderland	Mentz	Catalonia	Parma
Guastalla	Baden	Modena	Holstein
Hungary	Sweden	Mantua	Valence





PL. 22.

			
<i>Tyger</i>	<i>Palm Tree</i>	<i>Turret</i>	<i>Olive Crown</i>
			
<i>Fang Tooth</i>	<i>Danish Hatchet</i>	<i>Luc.v</i>	<i>Tilting Spear</i>
			
<i>Chimera</i>	<i>Quintal</i>	<i>Turkey Cock</i>	<i>Cherubim</i>
			
<i>Pelican Natural</i>	<i>Long Bow</i>	<i>Trumpet</i>	<i>Water Bouget</i>
			
<i>Horse Shoe</i>	<i>Lockaber Arms</i>	<i>Hand</i>	<i>Grey Hound</i>
			
<i>Heart</i>	<i>Morion</i>	<i>Swallow</i>	<i>Gauntlet</i>













Filmed by Preservation 1987

BOUN

JUN 2 1930

UNIV. OF MICH.  
LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



3 9015 01085 1668

